

BF

## (12) INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(19) World Intellectual Property Organization  
International Bureau(43) International Publication Date  
14 February 2002 (14.02.2002)

PCT

(10) International Publication Number  
**WO 02/12502 A2**(51) International Patent Classification<sup>7</sup>: C12N 15/13, (74) Agents: JOHNSON, Philip, S. et al.; One Johnson & C07K 16/24, C12N 15/79, 5/10, A61K 39/395, C07K 16/42, G01N 33/50, 33/577, A61P 37/00 Johnson Plaza, New Brunswick, NJ 08933 (US).

(21) International Application Number: PCT/US01/24785

(81) Designated States (national): AE, AG, AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, BZ, CA, CH, CN, CO, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM, DZ, EC, EE, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MA, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, MZ, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, UZ, VN, YU, ZA, ZW.

(22) International Filing Date: 7 August 2001 (07.08.2001)

(25) Filing Language: English

(26) Publication Language: English

(30) Priority Data:

|            |                                |    |
|------------|--------------------------------|----|
| 60/223,360 | 7 August 2000 (07.08.2000)     | US |
| 60/236,826 | 29 September 2000 (29.09.2000) | US |
| 09/920,137 | 1 August 2001 (01.08.2001)     | US |

(71) Applicant: CENTOCOR, INC. [US/US]; 200 Great Valley Parkway, Malvern, PA 19355 (US).

(84) Designated States (regional): ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, MZ, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE, TR), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GQ, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

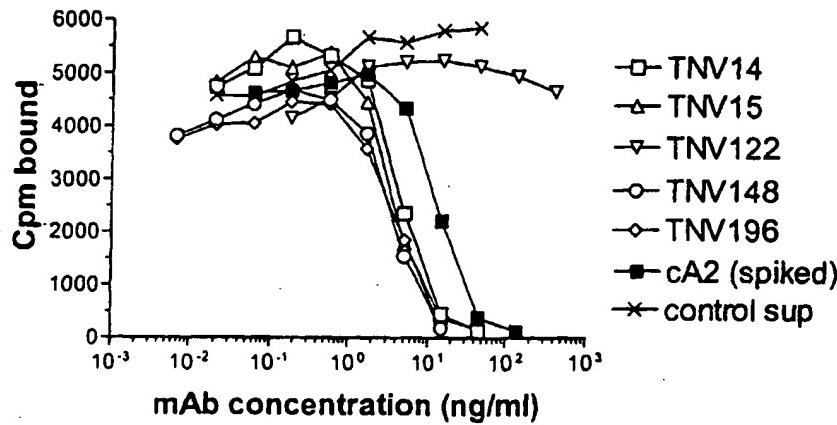
(72) Inventors: GILES-KOMAR, Jill; 31 Blakely Road, Downingtown, PA 19355 (US). KNIGHT, David, M.; 2430 Whitehorse Road, Berwyn, PA 19312 (US). HEAVNER, George; 6 Oak Glen Drive, Malvern, PA 19355 (US). SCALLON, Bernard; 139 Hemlock Drive, Collegeville, PA 19426 (US). SHEALY, David; 1351 Penns Ridge Place, Downingtown, PA 19355 (US).

**Published:**

— without international search report and to be republished upon receipt of that report

For two-letter codes and other abbreviations, refer to the "Guidance Notes on Codes and Abbreviations" appearing at the beginning of each regular issue of the PCT Gazette.

(54) Title: ANTI-TNF ANTIBODIES, COMPOSITIONS, METHODS AND USES



(57) Abstract: The present invention relates to at least one novel anti-TNF antibodies, including isolated nucleic acids that encode at least one anti-TNF antibody, TNF, vectors, host cells, transgenic animals or plants, and methods of making and using thereof, including therapeutic compositions, methods and devices.

**ANTI- TNF ANTIBODIES, COMPOSITIONS, METHODS AND USES****BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION****FIELD OF THE INVENTION**

This application is based in part on, and claims priority to, U.S. Provisional 60/223,360 filed August 7, 2000 and 60/236,826 filed September 29, 2000, each of which is entirely incorporated herein by reference.

The present invention relates to antibodies, including specified portions or variants, specific for at least one tumor necrosis factor alpha (TNF) protein or fragment thereof, as well as nucleic acids encoding such anti-TNF antibodies, complementary nucleic acids, vectors, host cells, and methods of making and using thereof, including therapeutic formulations, administration and devices.

**RELATED ART**

TNF alpha is a soluble homotrimer of 17 kD protein subunits (Smith et al., J. Biol. Chem. 262:6951-6954 (1987)). A membrane-bound 26 kD precursor form of TNF also exists (Kriegler et al., Cell 53:45-53 (1988)). For reviews of TNF, see Beutler et al., Nature 320:584 (1986); Old, Science 230:630 (1986); and Le et al., Lab. Invest. 56:234 (1987).

Cells other than monocytes or macrophages also produce TNF alpha. For example, human non-monocytic tumor cell lines produce TNF alpha (Rubin et al., J. Exp. Med. 164:1350 (1986); Spriggs et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 84:6563 (1987)). CD4+ and CD8+ peripheral blood T lymphocytes and some cultured T and B cell lines (Cuturi et al., J. Exp. Med. 165:1581 (1987); Sung et al., J. Exp. Med. 168:1539 (1988); Turner et al., Eur. J. Immunol. 17:1807-1814 (1987)) also produce TNF alpha.

TNF alpha causes pro-inflammatory actions which result in tissue injury, such as degradation of cartilage and bone (Saklatvala, Nature 322:547-549 (1986); Bertolini, Nature 319:516-518 (1986)), induction of adhesion molecules, inducing procoagulant activity on vascular endothelial cells (Pober et al., J. Immunol. 136:1680 (1986)), increasing the adherence of neutrophils and lymphocytes (Pober et al., J. Immunol. 138:3319 (1987)), and stimulating the release of platelet activating factor from macrophages, neutrophils and vascular endothelial cells (Camussi et al., J. Exp. Med. 166:1390 (1987)).

Recent evidence associates TNF alpha with infections (Cerami et al., Immunol. Today 9:28 (1988)), immune disorders, neoplastic pathologies (Oliff et al., Cell 50:555 (1987)), autoimmune pathologies and graft-versus-host pathologies (Piguet et al., J. Exp. Med. 166:1280 (1987)). The association of TNF alpha with cancer and infectious pathologies is

often related to the host's catabolic state. Cancer patients suffer from weight loss, usually associated with anorexia.

The extensive wasting which is associated with cancer, and other diseases, is known as "cachexia" (Kern et al., J. Parent. Enter. Nutr. 12:286-298 (1988)). Cachexia includes progressive weight loss, anorexia, and persistent erosion of lean body mass in response to a malignant growth. The cachectic state causes much cancer morbidity and mortality. There is evidence that TNF alpha is involved in cachexia in cancer, infectious pathology, and other catabolic states (see, e.g., Beutler and Cerami, Ann. Rev. Immunol. 7:625-655 (1989)).

TNF alpha is believed to play a central role in gram-negative sepsis and endotoxic shock (Michie et al., Br. J. Surg. 76:670-671 (1989); Debets et al., Second Vienna Shock Forum, p. 463-466 (1989); Simpson et al., Crit. Care Clin. 5:27-47 (1989)), including fever, malaise, anorexia, and cachexia. Endotoxin strongly activates monocyte/macrophage production and secretion of TNF alpha and other cytokines (Kornbluth et al., J. Immunol. 137:2585-2591 (1986)). TNF alpha and other monocyte-derived cytokines mediate the metabolic and neurohormonal responses to endotoxin (Michie et al., New Engl. J. Med. 318:1481-1486 (1988)). Endotoxin administration to human volunteers produces acute illness with flu-like symptoms including fever, tachycardia, increased metabolic rate and stress hormone release (Revhaug et al., Arch. Surg. 123:162-170 (1988)). Circulating TNF alpha increases in patients suffering from Gram-negative sepsis (Waage et al., Lancet 1:355-357 (1987); Hammerle et al., Second Vienna Shock Forum, p. 715-718 (1989); Debets et al., Crit. Care Med. 17:489-497 (1989); Calandra et al., J. Infect. Dis. 161:982-987 (1990)).

Thus, TNF alpha has been implicated in inflammatory diseases, autoimmune diseases, viral, bacterial and parasitic infections, malignancies, and/or neurogenerative diseases and is a useful target for specific biological therapy in diseases, such as rheumatoid arthritis and Crohn's disease. Beneficial effects in open-label trials with a chimeric monoclonal antibody to TNF alpha (cA2) have been reported with suppression of inflammation and with successful retreatment after relapse in rheumatoid arthritis (Elliott et al., Arthritis Rheum. 36:1681-1690 (1993); and Elliott et al., Lancet 344:1125-1127 (1994)) and in Crohn's disease (Van Dullemen et al., Gastroenterology 109:129-135 (1995)). Beneficial results in a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial with cA2 have also been reported in rheumatoid arthritis with suppression of inflammation (Elliott et al., Lancet 344:1105-1110 (1994)). Antibodies to a "modulator" material which was characterized as cachectin (later found to be identical to TNF) were disclosed by Cerami et al. (EPO Patent Publication 0212489, March 4, 1987). Such antibodies were said to be useful in diagnostic immunoassays and in therapy of shock in bacterial infections. Rubin et al. (EPO Patent Publication 0218868, April 22, 1987) disclosed

monoclonal antibodies to human TNF, the hybridomas secreting such antibodies, methods of producing such antibodies, and the use of such antibodies in immunoassay of TNF. Yone et al. (EPO Patent Publication 0288088, October 26, 1988) disclosed anti-TNF antibodies, including mAbs, and their utility in immunoassay diagnosis of pathologies, in particular Kawasaki's pathology and bacterial infection. The body fluids of patients with Kawasaki's pathology (infantile acute febrile mucocutaneous lymph node syndrome; Kawasaki, T., Allergy 16:178 (1967); Kawasaki, T., Shonica (Pediatrics) 26:935 (1985)) were said to contain elevated TNF levels which were related to progress of the pathology (Yone et al., *supra*).

Other investigators have described mAbs specific for recombinant human TNF which had neutralizing activity in vitro (Liang, C-M. et al. (*Biochem. Biophys. Res. Comm.* 137:847-854 (1986); Meager, A. et al., *Hybridoma* 6:305-311 (1987); Fendly et al., *Hybridoma* 6:359-369 (1987); Bringman, T.S. et al., *Hybridoma* 6:489-507 (1987); Hirai, M. et al., *J. Immunol. Meth.* 96:57-62 (1987); Moller, A. et al. (*Cytokine* 2:162-169 (1990)). Some of these mAbs were used to map epitopes of human TNF and develop enzyme immunoassays (Fendly et al., *supra*; Hirai et al., *supra*; Moller et al., *supra*) and to assist in the purification of recombinant TNF (Bringman et al., *supra*). However, these studies do not provide a basis for producing TNF neutralizing antibodies that can be used for in vivo diagnostic or therapeutic uses in humans, due to immunogenicity, lack of specificity and/or pharmaceutical suitability.

Neutralizing antisera or mAbs to TNF have been shown in mammals other than man to abrogate adverse physiological changes and prevent death after lethal challenge in experimental endotoxemia and bacteremia. This effect has been demonstrated, e.g., in rodent lethality assays and in primate pathology model systems (Mathison, J.C. et al., *J. Clin. Invest.* 81:1925-1937 (1988); Beutler, B. et al., *Science* 229:869-871 (1985); Tracey, K.J. et al., *Nature* 330:662-664 (1987); Shimamoto, Y. et al., *Immunol. Lett.* 17:311-318 (1988); Silva, A.T. et al., *J. Infect. Dis.* 162:421-427 (1990); Opal, S.M. et al., *J. Infect. Dis.* 161:1148-1152 (1990); Hinshaw, L.B. et al., *Circ. Shock* 30:279-292 (1990)).

Putative receptor binding loci of hTNF has been disclosed by Eck and Sprang (*J. Biol. Chem.* 264(29), 17595-17605 (1989), who identified the receptor binding loci of TNF- $\alpha$  as consisting of amino acids 11-13, 37-42, 49-57 and 155-157. PCT application WO91/02078 (priority date of August 7, 1989) discloses TNF ligands which can bind to monoclonal antibodies having the following epitopes: at least one of 1-20, 56-77, and 108-127; at least two of 1-20, 56-77, 108-127 and 138-149; all of 1-18, 58-65; 115-125 and 138-149; all of 1-18, and 108-128; all of 56-79, 110-127 and 135- or 136-155; all of 1-30, 117-128 and 141-153; all of 1-26, 117-128 and 141-153; all of 22-40, 49-96 or -97, 110-127 and 136-153; all of 12-22, 36-45, 96-105 and 132-157; all of both of 1-20 and 76-90; all of 22-40, 69-97, 105-128 and 135-

155; all of 22-31 and 146-157; all of 22-40 and 49-98; at least one of 22-40, 49-98 and 69-97, both of 22-40 and 70-87.

Non-human mammalian, chimeric, polyclonal (e.g., anti-sera) and/or monoclonal antibodies (Mabs) and fragments (e.g., proteolytic digestion or fusion protein products thereof) 5 are potential therapeutic agents that are being investigated in some cases to attempt to treat certain diseases. However, such antibodies or fragments can elicit an immune response when administered to humans. Such an immune response can result in an immune complex-mediated clearance of the antibodies or fragments from the circulation, and make repeated administration unsuitable for therapy, thereby reducing the therapeutic benefit to the patient 10 and limiting the readministration of the antibody or fragment. For example, repeated administration of antibodies or fragments comprising non-human portions can lead to serum sickness and/or anaphylaxis. In order to avoid these and other problems, a number of approaches have been taken to reduce the immunogenicity of such antibodies and portions thereof, including chimerization and humanization, as well known in the art. These and other 15 approaches, however, still can result in antibodies or fragments having some immunogenicity, low affinity, low avidity, or with problems in cell culture, scale up, production, and/or low yields. Thus, such antibodies or fragments can be less than ideally suited for manufacture or use as therapeutic proteins.

Accordingly, there is a need to provide anti-TNF antibodies or fragments that 20 overcome one or more of these problems, as well as improvements over known antibodies or fragments thereof.

#### SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The present invention provides isolated human, primate, rodent, mammalian, chimeric, 25 humanized and/or CDR-grafted anti-TNF antibodies, immunoglobulins, cleavage products and other specified portions and variants thereof, as well as anti-TNF antibody compositions, encoding or complementary nucleic acids, vectors, host cells, compositions, formulations, devices, transgenic animals, transgenic plants, and methods of making and using thereof, as described and enabled herein, in combination with what is known in the art.

30 The present invention also provides at least one isolated anti-TNF antibody as described herein. An antibody according to the present invention includes any protein or peptide containing molecule that comprises at least a portion of an immunoglobulin molecule, such as but not limited to at least one complementarity determining region (CDR) of a heavy or light chain or a ligand binding portion thereof, a heavy chain or light chain variable region, a 35 heavy chain or light chain constant region, a framework region, or any portion thereof, that can be incorporated into an antibody of the present invention. An antibody of the invention can

include or be derived from any mammal, such as but not limited to a human, a mouse, a rabbit, a rat, a rodent, a primate, or any combination thereof, and the like.

The present invention provides, in one aspect, isolated nucleic acid molecules comprising, complementary, or hybridizing to, a polynucleotide encoding specific anti-TNF antibodies, comprising at least one specified sequence, domain, portion or variant thereof. The present invention further provides recombinant vectors comprising said anti-TNF antibody nucleic acid molecules, host cells containing such nucleic acids and/or recombinant vectors, as well as methods of making and/or using such antibody nucleic acids, vectors and/or host cells.

At least one antibody of the invention binds at least one specified epitope specific to at least one TNF protein, subunit, fragment, portion or any combination thereof. The at least one epitope can comprise at least one antibody binding region that comprises at least one portion of said protein, which epitope is preferably comprised of at least 1-5 amino acids of at least one portion thereof, such as but not limited to, at least one functional, extracellular, soluble, hydrophilic, external or cytoplasmic domain of said protein, or any portion thereof.

The at least one antibody can optionally comprise at least one specified portion of at least one complementarity determining region (CDR) (e.g., CDR1, CDR2 or CDR3 of the heavy or light chain variable region) and/or at least one constant or variable framework region or any portion thereof. The at least one antibody amino acid sequence can further optionally comprise at least one specified substitution, insertion or deletion as described herein or as known in the art.

The present invention also provides at least one isolated anti-TNF antibody as described herein, wherein the antibody has at least one activity, such as, but not limited to inhibition of TNF-induced cell adhesion molecules, inhibition of TNF binding to receptor, Arthritic index improvement in mouse model, (see, e.g., Examples 3-7). A(n) anti-TNF antibody can thus be screened for a corresponding activity according to known methods, such as but not limited to, at least one biological activity towards a TNF protein.

The present invention further provides at least one TNF anti-idiotype antibody to at least one TNF antibody of the present invention. The anti-idiotype antibody includes any protein or peptide containing molecule that comprises at least a portion of an immunoglobulin molecule, such as but not limited to at least one complementarity determining region (CDR) of a heavy or light chain or a ligand binding portion thereof, a heavy chain or light chain variable region, a heavy chain or light chain constant region, a framework region, or any portion thereof, that can be incorporated into an antibody of the present invention. An antibody of the invention can include or be derived from any mammal, such as but not limited to a human, a mouse, a rabbit, a rat, a rodent, a primate, and the like.

The present invention provides, in one aspect, isolated nucleic acid molecules comprising, complementary, or hybridizing to, a polynucleotide encoding at least one TNF anti-idiotype antibody, comprising at least one specified sequence, domain, portion or variant thereof. The present invention further provides recombinant vectors comprising said TNF 5 anti-idiotype antibody encoding nucleic acid molecules, host cells containing such nucleic acids and/or recombinant vectors, as well as methods of making and/or using such anti-idiotype antibody nucleic acids, vectors and/or host cells.

The present invention also provides at least one method for expressing at least one anti-TNF antibody, or TNF anti-idiotype antibody, in a host cell, comprising culturing a host 10 cell as described herein under conditions wherein at least one anti-TNF antibody is expressed in detectable and/or recoverable amounts.

The present invention also provides at least one composition comprising (a) an isolated anti-TNF antibody encoding nucleic acid and/or antibody as described herein; and (b) a suitable carrier or diluent. The carrier or diluent can optionally be pharmaceutically 15 acceptable, according to known carriers or diluents. The composition can optionally further comprise at least one further compound, protein or composition.

The present invention further provides at least one anti-TNF antibody method or composition, for administering a therapeutically effective amount to modulate or treat at least one TNF related condition in a cell, tissue, organ, animal or patient and/or, prior to, subsequent 20 to, or during a related condition, as known in the art and/or as described herein.

The present invention also provides at least one composition, device and/or method of delivery of a therapeutically or prophylactically effective amount of at least one anti-TNF antibody, according to the present invention.

The present invention further provides at least one anti-TNF antibody method or 25 composition, for diagnosing at least one TNF related condition in a cell, tissue, organ, animal or patient and/or, prior to, subsequent to, or during a related condition, as known in the art and/or as described herein.

The present invention also provides at least one composition, device and/or method of delivery for diagnosing of at least one anti-TNF antibody, according to the present invention.

30

## DESCRIPTION OF THE FIGURES

**Figure 1** shows a graphical representation showing an assay for ability of TNV mAbs in hybridoma cell supernatants to inhibit TNF $\alpha$  binding to recombinant TNF receptor.

Varying amounts of hybridoma cell supernatants containing known amounts of TNV mAb were preincubated with a fixed concentration (5 ng/ml) of  $^{125}\text{I}$ -labeled TNF $\alpha$ . The mixture 35 was transferred to 96-well Optiplates that had been previously coated with p55-sf2, a recombinant TNF receptor/IgG fusion protein. The amount of TNF $\alpha$  that bound to the p55

receptor in the presence of the mAbs was determined after washing away the unbound material and counting using a gamma counter. Although eight TNV mAb samples were tested in these experiments, for simplicity three of the mAbs that were shown by DNA sequence analyses to be identical to one of the other TNV mAbs (see Section 5.2.2) are not shown here. Each 5 sample was tested in duplicate. The results shown are representative of two independent experiments.

Figure 2 shows DNA sequences of the TNV mAb heavy chain variable regions. The germline gene shown is the DP-46 gene. 'TNVs' indicates that the sequence shown is the sequence of TNV14, TNV15, TNV148, and TNV196. The first three nucleotides in the TNV 10 sequence define the translation initiation Met codon. Dots in the TNV mAb gene sequences indicate the nucleotide is the same as in the germline sequence. The first 19 nucleotides (underlined) of the TNV sequences correspond to the oligonucleotide used to PCR-amplify the variable region. An amino acid translation (single letter abbreviations) starting with the mature mAb is shown only for the germline gene. The three CDR domains in the germline 15 amino acid translation are marked in bold and underlined. Lines labeled TNV148(B) indicate that the sequence shown pertains to both TNV148 and TNV148B. Gaps in the germline DNA sequence (CDR3) are due to the sequence not being known or not existing in the germline gene. The TNV mAb heavy chains use the J6 joining region.

Figure 3 shows DNA sequences of the TNV mAb light chain variable regions. The 20 germline gene shown is a representative member of the Vg/38K family of human kappa germline variable region genes. Dots in the TNV mAb gene sequences indicate the nucleotide is the same as in the germline sequence. The first 16 nucleotides (underlined) of the TNV sequences correspond to the oligonucleotide used to PCR-amplify the variable region. An amino acid translation of the mature mAb (single letter abbreviations) is shown only for the 25 germline gene. The three CDR domains in the germline amino acid translation are marked in bold and underlined. Lines labeled TNV148(B) indicate that the sequence shown pertains to both TNV148 and TNV148B. Gaps in the germline DNA sequence (CDR3) are due to the sequence not being known or not existing in the germline gene. The TNV mAb light chains use the J3 joining sequence.

30 Figure 4 shows deduced amino acid sequences of the TNV mAb heavy chain variable regions. The amino acid sequences shown (single letter abbreviations) were deduced from DNA sequence determined from both uncloned PCR products and cloned PCR products. The amino sequences are shown partitioned into the secretory signal sequence (signal), framework (FW), and complementarity determining region (CDR) domains. The amino acid sequence for 35 the DP-46 germline gene is shown on the top line for each domain. Dots indicate that the

amino acid in the TNV mAb is identical to the germline gene. TNV148(B) indicates that the sequence shown pertains to both TNV148 and TNV148B. 'TNVs' indicates that the sequence shown pertains to all TNV mAbs unless a different sequence is shown. Dashes in the germline sequence (CDR3) indicate that the sequences are not known or do not exist in the germline 5 gene.

Figure 5 shows deduced amino acid sequences of the TNV mAb light chain variable regions. The amino acid sequences shown (single letter abbreviations) were deduced from DNA sequence determined from both uncloned PCR products and cloned PCR products. The amino sequences are shown partitioned into the secretory signal sequence (signal), framework 10 (FW), and complementarity determining region (CDR) domains. The amino acid sequence for the Vg/38K-type light chain germline gene is shown on the top line for each domain. Dots indicate that the amino acid in the TNV mAb is identical to the germline gene. TNV148(B) indicates that the sequence shown pertains to both TNV148 and TNV148B. 'All' indicates that the sequence shown pertains to TNV14, TNV15, TNV148, TNV148B, and TNV186.

Figure 6 shows schematic illustrations of the heavy and light chain expression plasmids used to make the rTNV148B-expressing C466 cells. p1783 is the heavy chain plasmid and p1776 is the light chain plasmid. The rTNV148B variable and constant region coding domains are shown as black boxes. The immunoglobulin enhancers in the J-C introns are shown as gray boxes. Relevant restriction sites are shown. The plasmids are shown 15 oriented such that transcription of the Ab genes proceeds in a clockwise direction. Plasmid p1783 is 19.53 kb in length and plasmid p1776 is 15.06 kb in length. The complete nucleotide sequences of both plasmids are known. The variable region coding sequence in p1783 can be easily replaced with another heavy chain variable region sequence by replacing the BsiWI/BstBI restriction fragment. The variable region coding sequence in p1776 can be 20 replaced with another variable region sequence by replacing the SalI/AflII restriction fragment. 25

Figure 7 shows graphical representation of growth curve analyses of five rTNV148B-producing cell lines. Cultures were initiated on day 0 by seeding cells into T75 flasks in ISQ+MHX media to have a viable cell density of  $1.0 \times 10^5$  cells/ml in a 30 ml volume. The cell cultures used for these studies had been in continuous culture since transfections and 30 subclonings were performed. On subsequent days, cells in the T flasks were thoroughly resuspended and a 0.3 ml aliquot of the culture was removed. The growth curve studies were terminated when cell counts dropped below  $1.5 \times 10^5$  cells/ml. The number of live cells in the aliquot was determined by typan blue exclusion and the remainder of the aliquot stored for later mAb concentration determination. An ELISA for human IgG was performed on all 35 sample aliquots at the same time.

Figure 8 shows a graphical representation of the comparison of cell growth rates in the presence of varying concentrations of MHX selection. Cell subclones C466A and C466B were thawed into MHX-free media (IMDM, 5% FBS, 2 mM glutamine) and cultured for two additional days. Both cell cultures were then divided into three cultures that contained either no MHX, 0.2X MHX, or 1X MHX. One day later, fresh T75 flasks were seeded with the cultures at a starting density of  $1 \times 10^5$  cells/ml and cells counted at 24 hour intervals for one week. Doubling times during the first 5 days were calculated using the formula in SOP PD32.025 and are shown above the bars.

Figure 9 shows graphical representations of the stability of mAb production over time from two rTNV148B-producing cell lines. Cell subclones that had been in continuous culture since performing transfections and subclonings were used to start long-term serial cultures in 24-well culture dishes. Cells were cultured in ISQ media with and without MHX selection. Cells were continually passaged by splitting the cultures every 4 to 6 days to maintain new viable cultures while previous cultures were allowed to go spent. Aliquots of spent cell supernatant were collected shortly after cultures were spent and stored until the mAb concentrations were determined. An ELISA for human IgG was performed on all sample aliquots at the same time.

Figure 10 shows arthritis mouse model mice Tg 197 weight changes in response to anti-TNF antibodies of the present invention as compared to controls in Example 4. At approximately 4 weeks of age the Tg197 study mice were assigned, based on gender and body weight, to one of 9 treatment groups and treated with a single intraperitoneal bolus dose of Dulbecco's PBS (D-PBS) or an anti-TNF antibody of the present invention (TNV14, TNV148 or TNV196) at either 1 mg/kg or 10 mg/kg. When the weights were analyzed as a change from pre-dose, the animals treated with 10 mg/kg cA2 showed consistently higher weight gain than the D-PBS-treated animals throughout the study. This weight gain was significant at weeks 3-7. The animals treated with 10 mg/kg TNV148 also achieved significant weight gain at week 7 of the study.

Figures 11A-C represent the progression of disease severity based on the arthritic index as presented in Example 4. The 10 mg/kg cA2-treated group's arthritic index was lower than the D-PBS control group starting at week 3 and continuing throughout the remainder of the study (week 7). The animals treated with 1 mg/kg TNV14 and the animals treated with 1 mg/kg cA2 failed to show significant reduction in AI after week 3 when compared to the D-PBS-treated Group. There were no significant differences between the 10 mg/kg treatment groups when each was compared to the others of similar dose (10 mg/kg cA2 compared to 10 mg/kg TNV14, 148 and 196). When the 1 mg/kg treatment groups were compared, the 1

mg/kg TNV148 showed a significantly lower AI than 1 mg/kg cA2 at 3, 4 and 7 weeks. The 1 mg/kg TNV148 was also significantly lower than the 1 mg/kg TNV14-treated Group at 3 and 4 weeks. Although TNV196 showed significant reduction in AI up to week 6 of the study (when compared to the D-PBS-treated Group), TNV148 was the only 1 mg/kg treatment that remained significant at the conclusion of the study.

Figure 12 shows arthritis mouse model mice Tg 197 weight changes in response to anti-TNF antibodies of the present invention as compared to controls in Example 5. At approximately 4 weeks of age the Tg197 study mice were assigned, based on body weight, to one of 8 treatment groups and treated with a intraperitoneal bolus dose of control article (D-PBS) or antibody (TNV14, TNV148) at 3 mg/kg (week 0). Injections were repeated in all animals at weeks 1, 2, 3, and 4. Groups 1-6 were evaluated for test article efficacy. Serum samples, obtained from animals in Groups 7 and 8 were evaluated for immune response induction and pharmacokinetic clearance of TNV14 or TNV148 at weeks 2, 3 and 4.

Figures 13A-C are graphs representing the progression of disease severity in Example 5 based on the arthritic index. The 10 mg/kg cA2-treated group's arthritic index was significantly lower than the D-PBS control group starting at week 2 and continuing throughout the remainder of the study (week 5). The animals treated with 1 mg/kg or 3 mg/kg of cA2 and the animals treated with 3 mg/kg TNV14 failed to achieve any significant reduction in AI at any time throughout the study when compared to the d-PBS control group. The animals treated with 3 mg/kg TNV148 showed a significant reduction when compared to the d-PBS-treated group starting at week 3 and continuing through week 5. The 10 mg/kg cA2-treated animals showed a significant reduction in AI when compared to both the lower doses (1 mg/kg and 3 mg/kg) of cA2 at weeks 4 and 5 of the study and was also significantly lower than the TNV14-treated animals at weeks 3-5. Although there appeared to be no significant differences between any of the 3mg/kg treatment groups, the AI for the animals treated with 3 mg/kg TNV14 were significantly higher at some time points than the 10 mg/kg whereas the animals treated with TNV148 were not significantly different from the animals treated with 10 mg/kg of cA2.

Figure 14 shows arthritis mouse model mice Tg 197 weight changes in response to anti-TNF antibodies of the present invention as compared to controls in Example 6. At approximately 4 weeks of age the Tg197 study mice were assigned, based on gender and body weight, to one of 6 treatment groups and treated with a single intraperitoneal bolus dose of antibody (cA2, or TNV148) at either 3 mg/kg or 5 mg/kg. This study utilized the D-PBS and 10 mg/kg cA2 control Groups.

Figure 15 represents the progression of disease severity based on the arthritic index as presented in Example 6. All treatment groups showed some protection at the earlier time

points, with the 5 mg/kg cA2 and the 5 mg/kg TNV148 showing significant reductions in AI at weeks 1-3 and all treatment groups showing a significant reduction at week 2. Later in the study the animals treated with 5 mg/kg cA2 showed some protection, with significant reductions at weeks 4, 6 and 7. The low dose (3 mg/kg) of both the cA2 and the TNV148 showed significant reductions at 6 and all treatment groups showed significant reductions at week 7. None of the treatment groups were able to maintain a significant reduction at the conclusion of the study (week 8). There were no significant differences between any of the treatment groups (excluding the saline control group) at any time point.

Figure 16 shows arthritis mouse model mice Tg 197 weight changes in response to anti-TNF antibodies of the present invention as compared to controls in Example 7. To compare the efficacy of a single intraperitoneal dose of TNV148 (derived from hybridoma cells) and rTNV148B (derived from transfected cells). At approximately 4 weeks of age the Tg197 study mice were assigned, based on gender and body weight, to one of 9 treatment groups and treated with a single intraperitoneal bolus dose of Dulbecco's PBS (D-PBS) or antibody (TNV148, rTNV148B) at 1 mg/kg.

Figure 17 represents the progression of disease severity based on the arthritic index as presented in Example 7. The 10 mg/kg cA2-treated group's arthritic index was lower than the D-PBS control group starting at week 4 and continuing throughout the remainder of the study (week 8). Both of the TNV148-treated Groups and the 1 mg/kg cA2-treated Group showed a significant reduction in AI at week 4. Although a previous study (P-099-017) showed that TNV148 was slightly more effective at reducing the Arthritic Index following a single 1 mg/kg intraperitoneal bolus, this study showed that the AI from both versions of the TNV antibody-treated groups was slightly higher. Although (with the exception of week 6) the 1 mg/kg cA2-treated Group was not significantly increased when compared to the 10 mg/kg cA2 group and the TNV148-treated Groups were significantly higher at weeks 7 and 8, there were no significant differences in AI between the 1 mg/kg cA2, 1 mg/kg TNV148 and 1 mg/kg TNV148B at any point in the study.

#### DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

The present invention provides isolated, recombinant and/or synthetic anti-TNF human, primate, rodent, mammalian, chimeric, humanized or CDR-grafted, antibodies and TNF anti-idiotype antibodies thereto, as well as compositions and encoding nucleic acid molecules comprising at least one polynucleotide encoding at least one anti-TNF antibody or anti-idiotype antibody. The present invention further includes, but is not limited to, methods

of making and using such nucleic acids and antibodies and anti-idiotype antibodies, including diagnostic and therapeutic compositions, methods and devices.

As used herein, an "anti-tumor necrosis factor alpha antibody," "anti-TNF antibody," "anti-TNF antibody portion," or "anti-TNF antibody fragment" and/or "anti-TNF antibody variant" and the like include any protein or peptide containing molecule that comprises at least a portion of an immunoglobulin molecule, such as but not limited to at least one complementarity determining region (CDR) of a heavy or light chain or a ligand binding portion thereof, a heavy chain or light chain variable region, a heavy chain or light chain constant region, a framework region, or any portion thereof, or at least one portion of an TNF receptor or binding protein, which can be incorporated into an antibody of the present invention. Such antibody optionally further affects a specific ligand, such as but not limited to where such antibody modulates, decreases, increases, antagonizes, agonizes, mitigates, alleviates, blocks, inhibits, abrogates and/or interferes with at least one TNF activity or binding, or with TNF receptor activity or binding, *in vitro*, *in situ* and/or *in vivo*. As a non-limiting example, a suitable anti-TNF antibody, specified portion or variant of the present invention can bind at least one TNF, or specified portions, variants or domains thereof. A suitable anti-TNF antibody, specified portion, or variant can also optionally affect at least one of TNF activity or function, such as but not limited to, RNA, DNA or protein synthesis, TNF release, TNF receptor signaling, membrane TNF cleavage, TNF activity, TNF production and/or synthesis.

The term "antibody" is further intended to encompass antibodies, digestion fragments, specified portions and variants thereof, including antibody mimetics or comprising portions of antibodies that mimic the structure and/or function of an antibody or specified fragment or portion thereof, including single chain antibodies and fragments thereof. Functional fragments include antigen-binding fragments that bind to a mammalian TNF. For example, antibody fragments capable of binding to TNF or portions thereof, including, but not limited to Fab (e.g., by papain digestion), Fab' (e.g., by pepsin digestion and partial reduction) and F(ab')<sub>2</sub> (e.g., by pepsin digestion), fabc (e.g., by plasmin digestion), pFc' (e.g., by pepsin or plasmin digestion), Fd (e.g., by pepsin digestion, partial reduction and reaggregation), Fv or scFv (e.g., by molecular biology techniques) fragments, are encompassed by the invention (see, e.g., Colligan, Immunology, supra).

Such fragments can be produced by enzymatic cleavage, synthetic or recombinant techniques, as known in the art and/or as described herein. Antibodies can also be produced in a variety of truncated forms using antibody genes in which one or more stop codons have been introduced upstream of the natural stop site. For example, a combination gene encoding a F(ab')<sub>2</sub> heavy chain portion can be designed to include DNA sequences encoding the CH<sub>1</sub> domain and/or hinge region of the heavy chain. The various portions of antibodies can be

joined together chemically by conventional techniques, or can be prepared as a contiguous protein using genetic engineering techniques.

- As used herein, the term "human antibody" refers to an antibody in which substantially every part of the protein (e.g., CDR, framework, C<sub>L</sub>, C<sub>H</sub> domains (e.g., C<sub>H</sub>1, C<sub>H</sub>2, C<sub>H</sub>3), hinge, 5 (V<sub>L</sub>, V<sub>H</sub>)) is substantially non-immunogenic in humans, with only minor sequence changes or variations. Similarly, antibodies designated primate (monkey, baboon, chimpanzee, etc.), rodent (mouse, rat, rabbit, guinea pig, hamster, and the like) and other mammals designate such species, sub-genus, genus, sub-family, family specific antibodies. Further, chimeric antibodies include any combination of the above. Such changes or variations optionally and 10 preferably retain or reduce the immunogenicity in humans or other species relative to non-modified antibodies. Thus, a human antibody is distinct from a chimeric or humanized antibody. It is pointed out that a human antibody can be produced by a non-human animal or prokaryotic or eukaryotic cell that is capable of expressing functionally rearranged human immunoglobulin (e.g., heavy chain and/or light chain) genes. Further, when a human antibody 15 is a single chain antibody, it can comprise a linker peptide that is not found in native human antibodies. For example, an Fv can comprise a linker peptide, such as two to about eight glycine or other amino acid residues, which connects the variable region of the heavy chain and the variable region of the light chain. Such linker peptides are considered to be of human origin.
- 20 Bispecific, heterospecific, heteroconjugate or similar antibodies can also be used that are monoclonal, preferably human or humanized, antibodies that have binding specificities for at least two different antigens. In the present case, one of the binding specificities is for at least one TNF protein, the other one is for any other antigen. Methods for making bispecific antibodies are known in the art. Traditionally, the recombinant production of bispecific 25 antibodies is based on the co-expression of two immunoglobulin heavy chain-light chain pairs, where the two heavy chains have different specificities (Milstein and Cuello, Nature 305:537 (1983)). Because of the random assortment of immunoglobulin heavy and light chains, these hybridomas (quadromas) produce a potential mixture of 10 different antibody molecules, of which only one has the correct bispecific structure. The purification of the correct molecule, 30 which is usually done by affinity chromatography steps, is rather cumbersome, and the product yields are low. Similar procedures are disclosed, e.g., in WO 93/08829, US Patent Nos, 6210668, 6193967, 6132992, 6106833, 6060285, 6037453, 6010902, 5989530, 5959084, 5959083, 5932448, 5833985, 5821333, 5807706, 5643759, 5601819, 5582996, 5496549, 4676980, WO 91/00360, WO 92/00373, EP 03089, Traunecker et al., EMBO J. 10:3655 35 (1991), Suresh et al., Methods in Enzymology 121:210 (1986), each entirely incorporated herein by reference.

Anti-TNF antibodies (also termed TNF antibodies) useful in the methods and compositions of the present invention can optionally be characterized by high affinity binding to TNF and optionally and preferably having low toxicity. In particular, an antibody, specified fragment or variant of the invention, where the individual components, such as the variable 5 region, constant region and framework, individually and/or collectively, optionally and preferably possess low immunogenicity, is useful in the present invention. The antibodies that can be used in the invention are optionally characterized by their ability to treat patients for extended periods with measurable alleviation of symptoms and low and/or acceptable toxicity. Low or acceptable immunogenicity and/or high affinity, as well as other suitable properties, 10 can contribute to the therapeutic results achieved. "Low immunogenicity" is defined herein as raising significant HAHA, HACA or HAMA responses in less than about 75%, or preferably less than about 50% of the patients treated and/or raising low titres in the patient treated (less than about 300, preferably less than about 100 measured with a double antigen enzyme immunoassay) (Elliott *et al.*, *Lancet* 344:1125-1127 (1994), entirely incorporated herein by 15 reference).

#### *Utility*

The isolated nucleic acids of the present invention can be used for production of at least one anti-TNF antibody or specified variant thereof, which can be used to measure or effect in an cell, tissue, organ or animal (including mammals and humans), to diagnose, monitor, 20 modulate, treat, alleviate, help prevent the incidence of, or reduce the symptoms of, at least one TNF condition, selected from, but not limited to, at least one of an immune disorder or disease, a cardiovascular disorder or disease, an infectious, malignant, and/or neurologic disorder or disease.

Such a method can comprise administering an effective amount of a composition or a 25 pharmaceutical composition comprising at least one anti-TNF antibody to a cell, tissue, organ, animal or patient in need of such modulation, treatment, alleviation, prevention, or reduction in symptoms, effects or mechanisms. The effective amount can comprise an amount of about 0.001 to 500 mg/kg per single (e.g., bolus), multiple or continuous administration, or to achieve a serum concentration of 0.01-5000 µg/ml serum concentration per single, multiple, or 30 continuous administration, or any effective range or value therein, as done and determined using known methods, as described herein or known in the relevant arts.

#### *Citations*

All publications or patents cited herein are entirely incorporated herein by reference as they show the state of the art at the time of the present invention and/or to provide description 35 and enablement of the present invention. Publications refer to any scientific or patent

publications, or any other information available in any media format, including all recorded, electronic or printed formats. The following references are entirely incorporated herein by reference: Ausubel, et al., ed., Current Protocols in Molecular Biology, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., NY, NY (1987-2001); Sambrook, et al., Molecular Cloning: A Laboratory Manual, 2<sup>nd</sup> Edition, Cold Spring Harbor, NY (1989); Harlow and Lane, antibodies, a Laboratory Manual, Cold Spring Harbor, NY (1989); Colligan, et al., eds., Current Protocols in Immunology, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., NY (1994-2001); Colligan et al., Current Protocols in Protein Science, John Wiley & Sons, NY, NY, (1997-2001).

*Antibodies of the Present Invention*

10 At least one anti-TNF antibody of the present invention can be optionally produced by a cell line, a mixed cell line, an immortalized cell or clonal population of immortalized cells, as well known in the art. See, e.g., Ausubel, et al., ed., Current Protocols in Molecular Biology, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., NY, NY (1987-2001); Sambrook, et al., Molecular Cloning: A Laboratory Manual, 2<sup>nd</sup> Edition, Cold Spring Harbor, NY (1989); Harlow and Lane, 15 antibodies, a Laboratory Manual, Cold Spring Harbor, NY (1989); Colligan, et al., eds., Current Protocols in Immunology, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., NY (1994-2001); Colligan et al., Current Protocols in Protein Science, John Wiley & Sons, NY, NY, (1997-2001), each entirely incorporated herein by reference.

Human antibodies that are specific for human TNF proteins or fragments thereof can 20 be raised against an appropriate immunogenic antigen, such as isolated and/or TNF protein or a portion thereof (including synthetic molecules, such as synthetic peptides). Other specific or general mammalian antibodies can be similarly raised. Preparation of immunogenic antigens, and monoclonal antibody production can be performed using any suitable technique.

In one approach, a hybridoma is produced by fusing a suitable immortal cell line (e.g., 25 a myeloma cell line such as, but not limited to, Sp2/0, Sp2/0-AG14, NSO, NS1, NS2, AE-1, L.5, >243, P3X63Ag8.653, Sp2 SA3, Sp2 MA1, Sp2 SS1, Sp2 SA5, U937, MLA 144, ACT IV, MOLT4, DA-1, JURKAT, WEHI, K-562, COS, RAJI, NIH 3T3, HL-60, MLA 144, NAMAIWA, NEURO 2A, or the like, or heteromyomas, fusion products thereof, or any cell 30 or fusion cell derived therefrom, or any other suitable cell line as known in the art. See, e.g., www.atcc.org, www.lifetech.com., and the like, with antibody producing cells, such as, but not limited to, isolated or cloned spleen, peripheral blood, lymph, tonsil, or other immune or B cell containing cells, or any other cells expressing heavy or light chain constant or variable or framework or CDR sequences, either as endogenous or heterologous nucleic acid, as recombinant or endogenous, viral, bacterial, algal, prokaryotic, amphibian, insect, reptilian, 35 fish, mammalian, rodent, equine, ovine, goat, sheep, primate, eukaryotic, genomic DNA, cDNA, rDNA, mitochondrial DNA or RNA, chloroplast DNA or RNA, hnRNA, mRNA,

tRNA, single, double or triple stranded, hybridized, and the like or any combination thereof. See, e.g., Ausubel, *supra*, and Colligan, *Immunology, supra*, chapter 2, entirely incorporated herein by reference.

antibody producing cells can also be obtained from the peripheral blood or, preferably  
5 the spleen or lymph nodes, of humans or other suitable animals that have been immunized with the antigen of interest. Any other suitable host cell can also be used for expressing heterologous or endogenous nucleic acid encoding an antibody, specified fragment or variant thereof, of the present invention. The fused cells (hybridomas) or recombinant cells can be isolated using selective culture conditions or other suitable known methods, and cloned by  
10 limiting dilution or cell sorting, or other known methods. Cells which produce antibodies with the desired specificity can be selected by a suitable assay (e.g., ELISA).

Other suitable methods of producing or isolating antibodies of the requisite specificity can be used, including, but not limited to, methods that select recombinant antibody from a peptide or protein library (e.g., but not limited to, a bacteriophage, ribosome, oligonucleotide,  
15 RNA, cDNA, or the like, display library; e.g., as available from Cambridge antibody Technologies, Cambridgeshire, UK; MorphoSys, Martinsreid/Planegg, DE; Biovation, Aberdeen, Scotland, UK; BioInvent, Lund, Sweden; Dyax Corp., Enzon, Affymax/Biosite; Xoma, Berkeley, CA; Ixsys. See, e.g., EP 368,684, PCT/GB91/01134; PCT/GB92/01755; PCT/GB92/002240; PCT/GB92/00883; PCT/GB93/00605; US 08/350260(5/12/94);  
20 PCT/GB94/01422; PCT/GB94/02662; PCT/GB97/01835; (CAT/MRC); WO90/14443; WO90/14424; WO90/14430; PCT/US94/1234; WO92/18619; WO96/07754; (Scripps); EP 614 989 (MorphoSys); WO95/16027 (BioInvent); WO88/06630; WO90/3809 (Dyax); US 4,704,692 (Enzon); PCT/US91/02989 (Affymax); WO89/06283; EP 371 998; EP 550 400; (Xoma); EP 229 046; PCT/US91/07149 (Ixsys); or stochastically generated peptides or  
25 proteins - US 5723323, 5763192, 5814476, 5817483, 5824514, 5976862, WO 86/05803, EP 590 689 (Ixsys, now Applied Molecular Evolution (AME), each entirely incorporated herein by reference) or that rely upon immunization of transgenic animals (e.g., SCID mice, Nguyen et al., *Microbiol. Immunol.* 41:901-907 (1997); Sandhu et al., *Crit. Rev. Biotechnol.* 16:95-118 (1996); Eren et al., *Immunol.* 93:154-161 (1998), each entirely incorporated by reference as  
30 well as related patents and applications) that are capable of producing a repertoire of human antibodies, as known in the art and/or as described herein. Such techniques, include, but are not limited to, ribosome display (Hanes et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 94:4937-4942 (May 1997); Hanes et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 95:14130-14135 (Nov. 1998)); single cell antibody producing technologies (e.g., selected lymphocyte antibody method ("SLAM") (US pat. No. 5,627,052, Wen et al., *J. Immunol.* 17:887-892 (1987); Babcock et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 93:7843-7848 (1996)); gel microdroplet and flow cytometry (Powell et al.,

Biotechnol. 8:333-337 (1990); One Cell Systems, Cambridge, MA; Gray et al., J. Imm. Meth. 182:155-163 (1995); Kenny et al., Bio/Technol. 13:787-790 (1995)); B-cell selection (Steenbakkers et al., Molec. Biol. Reports 19:125-134 (1994); Jonak et al., Progress Biotech, Vol. 5, In Vitro Immunization in Hybridoma Technology, Borrebaeck, ed., Elsevier Science Publishers B.V., Amsterdam, Netherlands (1988)).

Methods for engineering or humanizing non-human or human antibodies can also be used and are well known in the art. Generally, a humanized or engineered antibody has one or more amino acid residues from a source which is non-human, e.g., but not limited to mouse, rat, rabbit, non-human primate or other mammal. These human amino acid residues are often referred to as "import" residues, which are typically taken from an "import" variable, constant or other domain of a known human sequence. Known human Ig sequences are disclosed, e.g., www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/entrez/query.fcgi; www.atcc.org/phage/hdb.html; www.sciquest.com/; www.abcam.com/; www.antibodyresource.com/onlinecomp.html; www.public.iastate.edu/~pedro/research\_tools.html; www.mgen.uni-heidelberg.de/SD/IT/IT.html; www.whfreeman.com/immunology/CH05/kuby05.htm; www.library.thinkquest.org/12429/Immune/Antibody.html; www.hhmi.org/grants/lectures/1996/vlab/; www.path.cam.ac.uk/~mrc7/mikeimages.html; www.antibodyresource.com/; mcb.harvard.edu/BioLinks/Immunology.html; www.immunologylink.com/; pathbox.wustl.edu/~hcenter/index.html; www.biotech.ufl.edu/~hcl/; www.pebio.com/pa/340913/340913.html; www.nal.usda.gov/awic/pubs/antibody/; www.m.ehime-u.ac.jp/~yasuhito/Elisa.html; www.biodesign.com/table.asp; www.icnet.uk/axp/facs/davies/links.html; www.biotech.ufl.edu/~fccl/protocol.html; www.isac-net.org/sites\_geo.html; aximt1.imt.uni-marburg.de/~rek/AEPStart.html; baserv.uci.kun.nl/~jraats/links1.html; www.recab.uni-hd.de/immuno.brne.nwu.edu/; www.mrc-cpe.cam.ac.uk/imt-doc/public/INTRO.html; www.ibt.unam.mx/vir/V\_mice.html; imgt.cnusc.fr:8104/; www.biochem.ucl.ac.uk/~martin/abs/index.html; antibody.bath.ac.uk/; abgen.cvm.tamu.edu/lab/wwwabgen.html; www.unizh.ch/~honegger/AHOseminar/Slide01.html; www.cryst.bbk.ac.uk/~ubcg07s/; www.nimr.mrc.ac.uk/CC/ccaewg/ccaewg.htm; www.path.cam.ac.uk/~mrc7/humanisation/TAHHP.html; www.ibt.unam.mx/vir/structure/stat\_aim.html; www.biosci.missouri.edu/smithgp/index.html; www.cryst.bioc.cam.ac.uk/~fmolina/Web-pages/Pept/spottech.html; www.jerini.de/fr\_products.htm; www.patents.ibm.com/ibm.html.Kabat et al., Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest, U.S. Dept. Health (1983), each entirely incorporated herein by reference.

Such imported sequences can be used to reduce immunogenicity or reduce, enhance or modify binding, affinity, on-rate, off-rate, avidity, specificity, half-life, or any other suitable characteristic, as known in the art. Generally part or all of the non-human or human CDR sequences are maintained while the non-human sequences of the variable and constant regions are replaced with human or other amino acids. Antibodies can also optionally be humanized with retention of high affinity for the antigen and other favorable biological properties. To achieve this goal, humanized antibodies can be optionally prepared by a process of analysis of the parental sequences and various conceptual humanized products using three-dimensional models of the parental and humanized sequences. Three-dimensional immunoglobulin models are commonly available and are familiar to those skilled in the art. Computer programs are available which illustrate and display probable three-dimensional conformational structures of selected candidate immunoglobulin sequences. Inspection of these displays permits analysis of the likely role of the residues in the functioning of the candidate immunoglobulin sequence, i.e., the analysis of residues that influence the ability of the candidate immunoglobulin to bind its antigen. In this way, FR residues can be selected and combined from the consensus and import sequences so that the desired antibody characteristic, such as increased affinity for the target antigen(s), is achieved. In general, the CDR residues are directly and most substantially involved in influencing antigen binding. Humanization or engineering of antibodies of the present invention can be performed using any known method, such as but not limited to those described in, Winter (Jones et al., Nature 321:522 (1986); Riechmann et al., Nature 332:323 (1988); Verhoeyen et al., Science 239:1534 (1988)), Sims et al., J. Immunol. 151: 2296 (1993); Chothia and Lesk, J. Mol. Biol. 196:901 (1987), Carter et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 89:4285 (1992); Presta et al., J. Immunol. 151:2623 (1993), US patent Nos: 5723323, 5976862, 5824514, 5817483, 5814476, 5763192, 5723323, 5,766886, 5714352, 6204023, 20 6180370, 5693762, 5530101, 5585089, 5225539; 4816567, PCT/ US98/16280, US96/18978, 25 US91/09630, US91/05939, US94/01234, GB89/01334, GB91/01134, GB92/01755; WO90/14443, WO90/14424, WO90/14430, EP 229246, each entirely incorporated herein by reference, included references cited therein.

The anti-TNF antibody can also be optionally generated by immunization of a transgenic animal (e.g., mouse, rat, hamster, non-human primate, and the like) capable of producing a repertoire of human antibodies, as described herein and/or as known in the art. Cells that produce a human anti-TNF antibody can be isolated from such animals and immortalized using suitable methods, such as the methods described herein.

Transgenic mice that can produce a repertoire of human antibodies that bind to human antigens can be produced by known methods (e.g., but not limited to, U.S. Pat. Nos: 5,770,428, 35 5,569,825, 5,545,806, 5,625,126, 5,625,825, 5,633,425, 5,661,016 and 5,789,650 issued to

Lonberg *et al.*; Jakobovits *et al.* WO 98/50433, Jakobovits *et al.* WO 98/24893, Lonberg *et al.* WO 98/24884, Lonberg *et al.* WO 97/13852, Lonberg *et al.* WO 94/25585, Kucherlapate *et al.* WO 96/34096, Kucherlapate *et al.* EP 0463 151 B1, Kucherlapate *et al.* EP 0710 719 A1, Surani *et al.* US. Pat. No. 5,545,807, Bruggemann *et al.* WO 90/04036, Bruggemann *et al.* EP 5 0438 474 B1, Lonberg *et al.* EP 0814 259 A2, Lonberg *et al.* GB 2 272 440 A, Lonberg *et al.* *Nature* 368:856-859 (1994), Taylor *et al.*, *Int. Immunol.* 6(4)579-591 (1994), Green *et al.*, *Nature Genetics* 7:13-21 (1994), Mendez *et al.*, *Nature Genetics* 15:146-156 (1997), Taylor *et al.*, *Nucleic Acids Research* 20(23):6287-6295 (1992), Tuailon *et al.*, *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 90(8)3720-3724 (1993), Lonberg *et al.*, *Int Rev Immunol* 13(1):65-93 (1995) and Fishwald *et al.*, *Nat Biotechnol* 14(7):845-851 (1996), which are each entirely incorporated herein by reference). Generally, these mice comprise at least one transgene comprising DNA from at least one human immunoglobulin locus that is functionally rearranged, or which can undergo functional rearrangement. The endogenous immunoglobulin loci in such mice can be disrupted or deleted to eliminate the capacity of the animal to produce antibodies encoded by 10 endogenous genes.

Screening antibodies for specific binding to similar proteins or fragments can be conveniently achieved using peptide display libraries. This method involves the screening of large collections of peptides for individual members having the desired function or structure. antibody screening of peptide display libraries is well known in the art. The displayed peptide 20 sequences can be from 3 to 5000 or more amino acids in length, frequently from 5-100 amino acids long, and often from about 8 to 25 amino acids long. In addition to direct chemical synthetic methods for generating peptide libraries, several recombinant DNA methods have been described. One type involves the display of a peptide sequence on the surface of a bacteriophage or cell. Each bacteriophage or cell contains the nucleotide sequence encoding the particular 25 displayed peptide sequence. Such methods are described in PCT Patent Publication Nos. 91/17271, 91/18980, 91/19818, and 93/08278. Other systems for generating libraries of peptides have aspects of both in vitro chemical synthesis and recombinant methods. See, PCT Patent Publication Nos. 92/05258, 92/14843, and 96/19256. See also, U.S. Patent Nos. 5,658,754; and 5,643,768. Peptide display libraries, vector, and screening kits are commercially available from 30 such suppliers as Invitrogen (Carlsbad, CA), and Cambridge antibody Technologies (Cambridgeshire, UK). See, e.g., U.S. Pat. Nos. 4704692, 4939666, 4946778, 5260203, 5455030, 5518889, 5534621, 5656730, 5763733, 5767260, 5856456, assigned to Enzon; 5223409, 5403484, 5571698, 5837500, assigned to Dyax, 5427908, 5580717, assigned to Affymax; 5885793, assigned to Cambridge antibody Technologies; 5750373, assigned to 35 Genentech, 5618920, 5595898, 5576195, 5698435, 5693493, 5698417, assigned to Xoma,

Colligan, *supra*; Ausubel, *supra*; or Sambrook, *supra*, each of the above patents and publications entirely incorporated herein by reference.

Antibodies of the present invention can also be prepared using at least one anti-TNF antibody encoding nucleic acid to provide transgenic animals or mammals, such as goats,

5 cows, horses, sheep, and the like, that produce such antibodies in their milk. Such animals can be provided using known methods. See, e.g., but not limited to, US patent nos. 5,827,690; 5,849,992; 4,873,316; 5,849,992; 5,994,616; 5,565,362; 5,304,489, and the like, each of which is entirely incorporated herein by reference.

Antibodies of the present invention can additionally be prepared using at least one  
10 anti-TNF antibody encoding nucleic acid to provide transgenic plants and cultured plant cells (e.g., but not limited to tobacco and maize) that produce such antibodies, specified portions or variants in the plant parts or in cells cultured therefrom. As a non-limiting example, transgenic tobacco leaves expressing recombinant proteins have been successfully used to provide large amounts of recombinant proteins, e.g., using an inducible promoter. See, e.g., Cramer et al.,  
15 *Curr. Top. Microbiol. Immunol.* 240:95-118 (1999) and references cited therein. Also, transgenic maize have been used to express mammalian proteins at commercial production levels, with biological activities equivalent to those produced in other recombinant systems or purified from natural sources. See, e.g., Hood et al., *Adv. Exp. Med. Biol.* 464:127-147 (1999)  
and references cited therein. antibodies have also been produced in large amounts from  
20 transgenic plant seeds including antibody fragments, such as single chain antibodies (scFv's), including tobacco seeds and potato tubers. See, e.g., Conrad et al., *Plant Mol. Biol.* 38:101-109 (1998) and reference cited therein. Thus, antibodies of the present invention can also be produced using transgenic plants, according to know methods. See also, e.g., Fischer et al., *Biotechnol. Appl. Biochem.* 30:99-108 (Oct., 1999), Ma et al., *Trends Biotechnol.* 13:522-7  
25 (1995); Ma et al., *Plant Physiol.* 109:341-6 (1995); Whitelam et al., *Biochem. Soc. Trans.* 22:940-944 (1994); and references cited therein. See, also generally for plant expression of antibodies, but not limited to, Each of the above references is entirely incorporated herein by reference.

The antibodies of the invention can bind human TNF with a wide range of affinities (K<sub>D</sub>). In a preferred embodiment, at least one human mAb of the present invention can optionally bind human TNF with high affinity. For example, a human mAb can bind human TNF with a K<sub>D</sub> equal to or less than about 10<sup>-7</sup> M, such as but not limited to, 0.1-9.9 (or any range or value therein) X 10<sup>-7</sup>, 10<sup>-8</sup>, 10<sup>-9</sup>, 10<sup>-10</sup>, 10<sup>-11</sup>, 10<sup>-12</sup>, 10<sup>-13</sup> or any range or value therein.

The affinity or avidity of an antibody for an antigen can be determined experimentally  
35 using any suitable method. (See, for example, Berzofsky, *et al.*, "Antibody-Antigen Interactions," In *Fundamental Immunology*, Paul, W. E., Ed., Raven Press: New York, NY

(1984); Kuby, Janis *Immunology*, W. H. Freeman and Company: New York, NY (1992); and methods described herein). The measured affinity of a particular antibody-antigen interaction can vary if measured under different conditions (e.g., salt concentration, pH). Thus, measurements of affinity and other antigen-binding parameters (e.g.,  $K_D$ ,  $K_a$ ,  $K_d$ ) are preferably made with standardized solutions of antibody and antigen, and a standardized buffer, such as the buffer described herein.

#### Nucleic Acid Molecules

Using the information provided herein, such as the nucleotide sequences encoding at least 70-100% of the contiguous amino acids of at least one of SEQ ID NOS:1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 10, 8, specified fragments, variants or consensus sequences thereof, or a deposited vector comprising at least one of these sequences, a nucleic acid molecule of the present invention encoding at least one anti-TNF antibody can be obtained using methods described herein or as known in the art.

Nucleic acid molecules of the present invention can be in the form of RNA, such as mRNA, hnRNA, tRNA or any other form, or in the form of DNA, including, but not limited to, cDNA and genomic DNA obtained by cloning or produced synthetically, or any combinations thereof. The DNA can be triple-stranded, double-stranded or single-stranded, or any combination thereof. Any portion of at least one strand of the DNA or RNA can be the coding strand, also known as the sense strand, or it can be the non-coding strand, also referred to as 20 the anti-sense strand.

Isolated nucleic acid molecules of the present invention can include nucleic acid molecules comprising an open reading frame (ORF), optionally with one or more introns, e.g., but not limited to, at least one specified portion of at least one CDR, as CDR1, CDR2 and/or CDR3 of at least one heavy chain (e.g., SEQ ID NOS:1-3) or light chain (e.g., SEQ ID NOS: 25 4-6); nucleic acid molecules comprising the coding sequence for an anti-TNF antibody or variable region (e.g., SEQ ID NOS:7,8); and nucleic acid molecules which comprise a nucleotide sequence substantially different from those described above but which, due to the degeneracy of the genetic code, still encode at least one anti-TNF antibody as described herein and/or as known in the art. Of course, the genetic code is well known in the art. Thus, it 30 would be routine for one skilled in the art to generate such degenerate nucleic acid variants that code for specific anti-TNF antibodies of the present invention. See, e.g., Ausubel, et al., *supra*, and such nucleic acid variants are included in the present invention. Non-limiting examples of isolated nucleic acid molecules of the present invention include SEQ ID NOS:10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, corresponding to non-limiting examples of a nucleic acid encoding, 35 respectively, HC CDR1, HC CDR2, HC CDR3, LC CDR1, LC CDR2, LC CDR3, HC variable region and LC variable region.

In another aspect, the invention provides isolated nucleic acid molecules encoding a(n) anti-TNF antibody having an amino acid sequence as encoded by the nucleic acid contained in the plasmid deposited as designated clone names \_\_\_\_\_ and ATCC Deposit Nos. \_\_\_\_\_, respectively, deposited  
5 on \_\_\_\_\_.

As indicated herein, nucleic acid molecules of the present invention which comprise a nucleic acid encoding an anti-TNF antibody can include, but are not limited to, those encoding the amino acid sequence of an antibody fragment, by itself; the coding sequence for the entire antibody or a portion thereof; the coding sequence for an antibody, fragment or portion, as well  
10 as additional sequences, such as the coding sequence of at least one signal leader or fusion peptide, with or without the aforementioned additional coding sequences, such as at least one intron, together with additional, non-coding sequences, including but not limited to, non-coding 5' and 3' sequences, such as the transcribed, non-translated sequences that play a role in transcription, mRNA processing, including splicing and polyadenylation signals (for  
15 example - ribosome binding and stability of mRNA); an additional coding sequence that codes for additional amino acids, such as those that provide additional functionalities. Thus, the sequence encoding an antibody can be fused to a marker sequence, such as a sequence encoding a peptide that facilitates purification of the fused antibody comprising an antibody fragment or portion.

**20 Polynucleotides Which Selectively Hybridize to a Polynucleotide as Described Herein**

The present invention provides isolated nucleic acids that hybridize under selective hybridization conditions to a polynucleotide disclosed herein. Thus, the polynucleotides of this embodiment can be used for isolating, detecting, and/or quantifying nucleic acids comprising  
25 such polynucleotides. For example, polynucleotides of the present invention can be used to identify, isolate, or amplify partial or full-length clones in a deposited library. In some embodiments, the polynucleotides are genomic or cDNA sequences isolated, or otherwise complementary to, a cDNA from a human or mammalian nucleic acid library.

Preferably, the cDNA library comprises at least 80% full-length sequences, preferably at  
30 least 85% or 90% full-length sequences, and more preferably at least 95% full-length sequences. The cDNA libraries can be normalized to increase the representation of rare sequences. Low or moderate stringency hybridization conditions are typically, but not exclusively, employed with sequences having a reduced sequence identity relative to complementary sequences. Moderate and high stringency conditions can optionally be employed for sequences of greater identity.  
35 Low stringency conditions allow selective hybridization of sequences having about 70% sequence identity and can be employed to identify orthologous or paralogous sequences.

Optionally, polynucleotides of this invention will encode at least a portion of an antibody encoded by the polynucleotides described herein. The polynucleotides of this invention embrace nucleic acid sequences that can be employed for selective hybridization to a polynucleotide encoding an antibody of the present invention. See, e.g., Ausubel, *supra*; Colligan, *supra*, each entirely incorporated herein by reference.

#### **Construction of Nucleic Acids**

The isolated nucleic acids of the present invention can be made using (a) recombinant methods, (b) synthetic techniques, (c) purification techniques, or combinations thereof, as well-known in the art.

10 The nucleic acids can conveniently comprise sequences in addition to a polynucleotide of the present invention. For example, a multi-cloning site comprising one or more endonuclease restriction sites can be inserted into the nucleic acid to aid in isolation of the polynucleotide. Also, translatable sequences can be inserted to aid in the isolation of the translated polynucleotide of the present invention. For example, a hexa-histidine marker sequence provides a convenient 15 means to purify the proteins of the present invention. The nucleic acid of the present invention - excluding the coding sequence - is optionally a vector, adapter, or linker for cloning and/or expression of a polynucleotide of the present invention.

Additional sequences can be added to such cloning and/or expression sequences to optimize their function in cloning and/or expression, to aid in isolation of the polynucleotide, or 20 to improve the introduction of the polynucleotide into a cell. Use of cloning vectors, expression vectors, adapters, and linkers is well known in the art. (See, e.g., Ausubel, *supra*; or Sambrook, *supra*)

#### **Recombinant Methods for Constructing Nucleic Acids**

The isolated nucleic acid compositions of this invention, such as RNA, cDNA, genomic 25 DNA, or any combination thereof, can be obtained from biological sources using any number of cloning methodologies known to those of skill in the art. In some embodiments, oligonucleotide probes that selectively hybridize, under stringent conditions, to the polynucleotides of the present invention are used to identify the desired sequence in a cDNA or genomic DNA library. The isolation of RNA, and construction of cDNA and genomic libraries, is well known to those of 30 ordinary skill in the art. (See, e.g., Ausubel, *supra*; or Sambrook, *supra*)

#### **Nucleic Acid Screening and Isolation Methods**

A cDNA or genomic library can be screened using a probe based upon the sequence of a polynucleotide of the present invention, such as those disclosed herein. Probes can be used to hybridize with genomic DNA or cDNA sequences to isolate homologous genes in the same or 35 different organisms. Those of skill in the art will appreciate that various degrees of stringency of hybridization can be employed in the assay; and either the hybridization or the wash medium can

be stringent. As the conditions for hybridization become more stringent, there must be a greater degree of complementarity between the probe and the target for duplex formation to occur. The degree of stringency can be controlled by one or more of temperature, ionic strength, pH and the presence of a partially denaturing solvent such as formamide. For example, the stringency of hybridization is conveniently varied by changing the polarity of the reactant solution through, for example, manipulation of the concentration of formamide within the range of 0% to 50%. The degree of complementarity (sequence identity) required for detectable binding will vary in accordance with the stringency of the hybridization medium and/or wash medium. The degree of complementarity will optimally be 100%, or 70-100%, or any range or value therein. However, it should be understood that minor sequence variations in the probes and primers can be compensated for by reducing the stringency of the hybridization and/or wash medium.

Methods of amplification of RNA or DNA are well known in the art and can be used according to the present invention without undue experimentation, based on the teaching and guidance presented herein.

Known methods of DNA or RNA amplification include, but are not limited to, polymerase chain reaction (PCR) and related amplification processes (see, e.g., U.S. Patent Nos. 4,683,195, 4,683,202, 4,800,159, 4,965,188, to Mullis, et al.; 4,795,699 and 4,921,794 to Tabor, et al; 5,142,033 to Innis; 5,122,464 to Wilson, et al.; 5,091,310 to Innis; 5,066,584 to Gyllensten, et al; 4,889,818 to Gelfand, et al; 4,994,370 to Silver, et al; 4,766,067 to Biswas; 4,656,134 to Ringold) and RNA mediated amplification that uses anti-sense'RNA to the target sequence as a template for double-stranded DNA synthesis (U.S. Patent No. 5,130,238 to Malek, et al, with the tradename NASBA), the entire contents of which references are incorporated herein by reference. (See, e.g., Ausubel, *supra*; or Sambrook, *supra*.)

For instance, polymerase chain reaction (PCR) technology can be used to amplify the sequences of polynucleotides of the present invention and related genes directly from genomic DNA or cDNA libraries. PCR and other in vitro amplification methods can also be useful, for example, to clone nucleic acid sequences that code for proteins to be expressed, to make nucleic acids to use as probes for detecting the presence of the desired mRNA in samples, for nucleic acid sequencing, or for other purposes. Examples of techniques sufficient to direct persons of skill through in vitro amplification methods are found in Berger, *supra*, Sambrook, *supra*, and Ausubel, *supra*, as well as Mullis, et al., U.S. Patent No. 4,683,202 (1987); and Innis, et al., PCR Protocols A Guide to Methods and Applications, Eds., Academic Press Inc., San Diego, CA (1990). Commercially available kits for genomic PCR amplification are known in the art. See, e.g., Advantage-GC Genomic PCR Kit (Clontech). Additionally, e.g., the T4 gene 32 protein (Boehringer Mannheim) can be used to improve yield of long PCR products.

#### Synthetic Methods for Constructing Nucleic Acids

The isolated nucleic acids of the present invention can also be prepared by direct chemical synthesis by known methods (see, e.g., Ausubel, et al., *supra*). Chemical synthesis generally produces a single-stranded oligonucleotide, which can be converted into double-stranded DNA by hybridization with a complementary sequence, or by polymerization with a 5 DNA polymerase using the single strand as a template. One of skill in the art will recognize that while chemical synthesis of DNA can be limited to sequences of about 100 or more bases, longer sequences can be obtained by the ligation of shorter sequences.

#### Recombinant Expression Cassettes

The present invention further provides recombinant expression cassettes comprising a 10 nucleic acid of the present invention. A nucleic acid sequence of the present invention, for example a cDNA or a genomic sequence encoding an antibody of the present invention, can be used to construct a recombinant expression cassette that can be introduced into at least one desired host cell. A recombinant expression cassette will typically comprise a polynucleotide of the present invention operably linked to transcriptional initiation regulatory sequences that will 15 direct the transcription of the polynucleotide in the intended host cell. Both heterologous and non-heterologous (i.e., endogenous) promoters can be employed to direct expression of the nucleic acids of the present invention.

In some embodiments, isolated nucleic acids that serve as promoter, enhancer, or other elements can be introduced in the appropriate position (upstream, downstream or in intron) of a 20 non-heterologous form of a polynucleotide of the present invention so as to up or down regulate expression of a polynucleotide of the present invention. For example, endogenous promoters can be altered *in vivo* or *in vitro* by mutation, deletion and/or substitution.

#### Vectors And Host Cells

The present invention also relates to vectors that include isolated nucleic acid 25 molecules of the present invention, host cells that are genetically engineered with the recombinant vectors, and the production of at least one anti-TNF antibody by recombinant techniques, as is well known in the art. See, e.g., Sambrook, et al., *supra*; Ausubel, et al., *supra*, each entirely incorporated herein by reference.

The polynucleotides can optionally be joined to a vector containing a selectable 30 marker for propagation in a host. Generally, a plasmid vector is introduced in a precipitate, such as a calcium phosphate precipitate, or in a complex with a charged lipid. If the vector is a virus, it can be packaged *in vitro* using an appropriate packaging cell line and then transduced into host cells.

The DNA insert should be operatively linked to an appropriate promoter. The 35 expression constructs will further contain sites for transcription initiation, termination and, in the transcribed region, a ribosome binding site for translation. The coding portion of the

mature transcripts expressed by the constructs will preferably include a translation initiating at the beginning and a termination codon (e.g., UAA, UGA or UAG) appropriately positioned at the end of the mRNA to be translated, with UAA and UAG preferred for mammalian or eukaryotic cell expression.

- 5 Expression vectors will preferably but optionally include at least one selectable marker. Such markers include, e.g., but not limited to, methotrexate (MTX), dihydrofolate reductase (DHFR, US Pat.Nos. 4,399,216; 4,634,665; 4,656,134; 4,956,288; 5,149,636; 5,179,017, ampicillin, neomycin (G418), mycophenolic acid, or glutamine synthetase (GS, US Pat.Nos. 5,122,464; 5,770,359; 5,827,739) resistance for eukaryotic cell culture, and
- 10 tetracycline or ampicillin resistance genes for culturing in *E. coli* and other bacteria or prokaryotics (the above patents are entirely incorporated hereby by reference). Appropriate culture mediums and conditions for the above-described host cells are known in the art. Suitable vectors will be readily apparent to the skilled artisan. Introduction of a vector construct into a host cell can be effected by calcium phosphate transfection, DEAE-dextran
- 15 mediated transfection, cationic lipid-mediated transfection, electroporation, transduction, infection or other known methods. Such methods are described in the art, such as Sambrook, supra, Chapters 1-4 and 16-18; Ausubel, supra, Chapters 1, 9, 13, 15, 16.

- At least one antibody of the present invention can be expressed in a modified form, such as a fusion protein, and can include not only secretion signals, but also additional heterologous functional regions. For instance, a region of additional amino acids, particularly charged amino acids, can be added to the N-terminus of an antibody to improve stability and persistence in the host cell, during purification, or during subsequent handling and storage. Also, peptide moieties can be added to an antibody of the present invention to facilitate purification. Such regions can be removed prior to final preparation of an antibody or at least 25 one fragment thereof. Such methods are described in many standard laboratory manuals, such as Sambrook, supra, Chapters 17.29-17.42 and 18.1-18.74; Ausubel, supra, Chapters 16, 17 and 18.

- Those of ordinary skill in the art are knowledgeable in the numerous expression systems available for expression of a nucleic acid encoding a protein of the present invention.
- 30 Alternatively, nucleic acids of the present invention can be expressed in a host cell by turning on (by manipulation) in a host cell that contains endogenous DNA encoding an antibody of the present invention. Such methods are well known in the art, e.g., as described in US patent Nos. 5,580,734, 5,641,670, 5,733,746, and 5,733,761, entirely incorporated herein by reference.
- 35 Illustrative of cell cultures useful for the production of the antibodies, specified portions or variants thereof, are mammalian cells. Mammalian cell systems often will be in the form of monolayers of cells although mammalian cell suspensions or bioreactors can also be used. A

number of suitable host cell lines capable of expressing intact glycosylated proteins have been developed in the art, and include the COS-1 (e.g., ATCC CRL 1650), COS-7 (e.g., ATCC CRL-1651), HEK293, BHK21 (e.g., ATCC CRL-10), CHO (e.g., ATCC CRL 1610) and BSC-1 (e.g., ATCC CRL-26) cell lines, Cos-7 cells, CHO cells, hep G2 cells, P3X63Ag8.653, SP2/0-Ag14,  
5 293 cells, HeLa cells and the like, which are readily available from, for example, American Type Culture Collection, Manassas, Va ([www.atcc.org](http://www.atcc.org)). Preferred host cells include cells of lymphoid origin such as myeloma and lymphoma cells. Particularly preferred host cells are P3X63Ag8.653 cells (ATCC Accession Number CRL-1580) and SP2/0-Ag14 cells (ATCC Accession Number CRL-1851). In a particularly preferred embodiment, the recombinant cell  
10 is a P3X63Ab8.653 or a SP2/0-Ag14 cell.

Expression vectors for these cells can include one or more of the following expression control sequences, such as, but not limited to an origin of replication; a promoter (e.g., late or early SV40 promoters, the CMV promoter (US Pat.Nos. 5,168,062; 5,385,839), an HSV tk promoter, a pgk (phosphoglycerate kinase) promoter, an EF-1 alpha promoter (US Pat.No.  
15 5,266,491), at least one human immunoglobulin promoter; an enhancer, and/or processing information sites, such as ribosome binding sites, RNA splice sites, polyadenylation sites (e.g., an SV40 large T Ag poly A addition site), and transcriptional terminator sequences. See, e.g., Ausubel et al., *supra*; Sambrook, et al., *supra*. Other cells useful for production of nucleic acids or proteins of the present invention are known and/or available, for instance, from the American  
20 Type Culture Collection Catalogue of Cell Lines and Hybridomas ([www.atcc.org](http://www.atcc.org)) or other known or commercial sources.

When eukaryotic host cells are employed, polyadenylation or transcription terminator sequences are typically incorporated into the vector. An example of a terminator sequence is the polyadenylation sequence from the bovine growth hormone gene. Sequences for accurate  
25 splicing of the transcript can also be included. An example of a splicing sequence is the VP1 intron from SV40 (Sprague, et al., *J. Virol.* 45:773-781 (1983)). Additionally, gene sequences to control replication in the host cell can be incorporated into the vector, as known in the art.

#### Purification of an Antibody

30 An anti-TNF antibody can be recovered and purified from recombinant cell cultures by well-known methods including, but not limited to, protein A purification, ammonium sulfate or ethanol precipitation, acid extraction, anion or cation exchange chromatography, phosphocellulose chromatography, hydrophobic interaction chromatography, affinity chromatography, hydroxylapatite chromatography and lectin chromatography. High  
35 performance liquid chromatography ("HPLC") can also be employed for purification. See, e.g., Colligan, *Current Protocols in Immunology*, or *Current Protocols in Protein Science*, John

Wiley & Sons, NY, NY, (1997-2001), e.g., Chapters 1, 4, 6, 8, 9, 10, each entirely incorporated herein by reference.

Antibodies of the present invention include naturally purified products, products of chemical synthetic procedures, and products produced by recombinant techniques from a eukaryotic host, including, for example, yeast, higher plant, insect and mammalian cells. Depending upon the host employed in a recombinant production procedure, the antibody of the present invention can be glycosylated or can be non-glycosylated, with glycosylated preferred. Such methods are described in many standard laboratory manuals, such as Sambrook, *supra*, Sections 17.37-17.42; Ausubel, *supra*, Chapters 10, 12, 13, 16, 18 and 20, Colligan, *Protein Science*, *supra*, Chapters 12-14, all entirely incorporated herein by reference.

#### Anti-TNF Antibodies

The isolated antibodies of the present invention comprise an antibody amino acid sequences disclosed herein encoded by any suitable polynucleotide, or any isolated or prepared antibody. Preferably, the human antibody or antigen-binding fragment binds human TNF and, thereby partially or substantially neutralizes at least one biological activity of the protein. An antibody, or specified portion or variant thereof, that partially or preferably substantially neutralizes at least one biological activity of at least one TNF protein or fragment can bind the protein or fragment and thereby inhibit activitys mediated through the binding of TNF to the TNF receptor or through other TNF-dependent or mediated mechanisms. As used herein, the term "neutralizing antibody" refers to an antibody that can inhibit an TNF-dependent activity by about 20-120%, preferably by at least about 10, 20, 30, 40, 50, 55, 60, 65, 70, 75, 80, 85, 90, 91, 92, 93, 94, 95, 96, 97, 98, 99, 100% or more depending on the assay. The capacity of an anti-TNF antibody to inhibit an TNF-dependent activity is preferably assessed by at least one suitable TNF protein or receptor assay, as described herein and/or as known in the art. A human antibody of the invention can be of any class (IgG, IgA, IgM, IgE, IgD, etc.) or isotype and can comprise a kappa or lambda light chain. In one embodiment, the human antibody comprises an IgG heavy chain or defined fragment, for example, at least one of isotypes, IgG1, IgG2, IgG3 or IgG4. Antibodies of this type can be prepared by employing a transgenic mouse or other trangenic non-human mammal comprising at least one human light chain (e.g., IgG, IgA and IgM (e.g.,  $\gamma_1$ ,  $\gamma_2$ ,  $\gamma_3$ ,  $\gamma_4$ ) transgenes as described herein and/or as known in the art. In another embodiment, the anti-human TNF human antibody comprises an IgG1 heavy chain and a IgG1 light chain.

At least one antibody of the invention binds at least one specified epitope specific to at least one TNF protein, subunit, fragment, portion or any combination thereof. The at least one

epitope can comprise at least one antibody binding region that comprises at least one portion of said protein, which epitope is preferably comprised of at least one extracellular, soluble, hydrophilic, external or cytoplasmic portion of said protein. The at least one specified epitope can comprise any combination of at least one amino acid sequence of at least 1-3 amino acids 5 to the entire specified portion of contiguous amino acids of the SEQ ID NO:9.

Generally, the human antibody or antigen-binding fragment of the present invention will comprise an antigen-binding region that comprises at least one human complementarity determining region (CDR1, CDR2 and CDR3) or variant of at least one heavy chain variable region and at least one human complementarity determining region (CDR1, CDR2 and CDR3) 10 or variant of at least one light chain variable region. As a non-limiting example, the antibody or antigen-binding portion or variant can comprise at least one of the heavy chain CDR3 having the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:3, and/or a light chain CDR3 having the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:6. In a particular embodiment, the antibody or antigen-binding fragment can have an antigen-binding region that comprises at least a portion of at least one 15 heavy chain CDR (i.e., CDR1, CDR2 and/or CDR3) having the amino acid sequence of the corresponding CDRs 1, 2 and/or 3 (e.g., SEQ ID NOS:1, 2, and/or 3). In another particular embodiment, the antibody or antigen-binding portion or variant can have an antigen-binding region that comprises at least a portion of at least one light chain CDR (i.e., CDR1, CDR2 and/or CDR3) having the amino acid sequence of the corresponding CDRs 1, 2 and/or 3 (e.g., 20 SEQ ID NOS: 4, 5, and/or 6). In a preferred embodiment the three heavy chain CDRs and the three light chain CDRs of the antibody or antigen-binding fragment have the amino acid sequence of the corresponding CDR of at least one of mAb TNV148, TNV14, TNV15, TNV196, TNV15, TNV118, TNV32, TNV86, as described herein. Such antibodies can be prepared by chemically joining together the various portions (e.g., CDRs, framework) of the 25 antibody using conventional techniques, by preparing and expressing a (i.e., one or more) nucleic acid molecule that encodes the antibody using conventional techniques of recombinant DNA technology or by using any other suitable method.

The anti-TNF antibody can comprise at least one of a heavy or light chain variable region having a defined amino acid sequence. For example, in a preferred embodiment, the 30 anti-TNF antibody comprises at least one of at least one heavy chain variable region, optionally having the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:7 and/or at least one light chain variable region, optionally having the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:8. Antibodies that bind to human TNF and that comprise a defined heavy or light chain variable region can be prepared using suitable methods, such as phage display (Katsume, Y., et al., *Int J Mol. Med.*, 35 1(5):863-868 (1998)) or methods that employ transgenic animals, as known in the art and/or as described herein. For example, a transgenic mouse, comprising a functionally rearranged

human immunoglobulin heavy chain transgene and a transgene comprising DNA from a human immunoglobulin light chain locus that can undergo functional rearrangement, can be immunized with human TNF or a fragment thereof to elicit the production of antibodies. If desired, the antibody producing cells can be isolated and hybridomas or other immortalized 5 antibody-producing cells can be prepared as described herein and/or as known in the art. Alternatively, the antibody, specified portion or variant can be expressed using the encoding nucleic acid or portion thereof in a suitable host cell.

The invention also relates to antibodies, antigen-binding fragments, immunoglobulin chains and CDRs comprising amino acids in a sequence that is substantially the same as an 10 amino acid sequence described herein. Preferably, such antibodies or antigen-binding fragments and antibodies comprising such chains or CDRs can bind human TNF with high affinity (e.g.,  $K_D$  less than or equal to about  $10^{-9}$  M). Amino acid sequences that are substantially the same as the sequences described herein include sequences comprising conservative amino acid substitutions, as well as amino acid deletions and/or insertions. A 15 conservative amino acid substitution refers to the replacement of a first amino acid by a second amino acid that has chemical and/or physical properties (e.g., charge, structure, polarity, hydrophobicity/ hydrophilicity) that are similar to those of the first amino acid. Conservative substitutions include replacement of one amino acid by another within the following groups: lysine (K), arginine (R) and histidine (H); aspartate (D) and glutamate (E); asparagine (N), 20 glutamine (Q), serine (S), threonine (T), tyrosine (Y), K, R, H, D and E; alanine (A), valine (V), leucine (L), isoleucine (I), proline (P), phenylalanine (F), tryptophan (W), methionine (M), cysteine (C) and glycine (G); F, W and Y; C, S and T.

#### Amino Acid Codes

The amino acids that make up anti-TNF antibodies of the present invention are often 25 abbreviated. The amino acid designations can be indicated by designating the amino acid by its single letter code, its three letter code, name, or three nucleotide codon(s) as is well understood in the art (see Alberts, B., et al., Molecular Biology of The Cell, Third Ed., Garland Publishing, Inc., New York, 1994):

| SINGLE LETTER CODE | THREE LETTER CODE | NAME          | THREE NUCLEOTIDE CODON(S) |
|--------------------|-------------------|---------------|---------------------------|
| A                  | Ala               | Alanine       | GCA, GCC, GCG, GCU        |
| C                  | Cys               | Cysteine      | UGC, UGU                  |
| D                  | Asp               | Aspartic acid | GAC, GAU                  |
| E                  | Glu               | Glutamic acid | GAA, GAG                  |
| F                  | Phe               | Phenylalanine | UUC, UUU                  |
| G                  | Gly               | Glycine       | GGA, GGC, GGG, GGU        |
| H                  | His               | Histidine     | CAC, CAU                  |

|   |     |            |                              |
|---|-----|------------|------------------------------|
| I | Ile | Isoleucine | AUA, AUC, AUU                |
| K | Lys | Lysine     | AAA, AAG                     |
| L | Leu | Leucine    | UUA, UUG, CUA, CUC, CUG, CUU |
| M | Met | Methionine | AUG                          |
| N | Asn | Asparagine | AAC, AAU                     |
| P | Pro | Proline    | CCA, CCC, CCG, CCU           |
| Q | Gln | Glutamine  | CAA, CAG                     |
| R | Arg | Arginine   | AGA, AGG, CGA, CGC, CGG, CGU |
| S | Ser | Serine     | AGC, AGU, UCA, UCC, UCG, UCU |
| T | Thr | Threonine  | ACA, ACC, ACG, ACU           |
| V | Val | Valine     | GUA, GUC, GUG, GUU           |
| W | Trp | Tryptophan | UGG                          |
| Y | Tyr | Tyrosine   | UAC, UAU                     |

An anti-TNF antibody of the present invention can include one or more amino acid substitutions, deletions or additions, either from natural mutations or human manipulation, as specified herein.

5 Of course, the number of amino acid substitutions a skilled artisan would make depends on many factors, including those described above. Generally speaking, the number of amino acid substitutions, insertions or deletions for any given anti-TNF antibody, fragment or variant will not be more than 40, 30, 20, 19, 18, 17, 16, 15, 14, 13, 12, 11, 10, 9, 8, 7, 6, 5, 4, 3, 2, 1, such as 1-30 or any range or value therein, as specified herein.

10 Amino acids in an anti-TNF antibody of the present invention that are essential for function can be identified by methods known in the art, such as site-directed mutagenesis or alanine-scanning mutagenesis (e.g., Ausubel, *supra*, Chapters 8, 15; Cunningham and Wells, *Science* 244:1081-1085 (1989)). The latter procedure introduces single alanine mutations at every residue in the molecule. The resulting mutant molecules are then tested for biological 15 activity, such as, but not limited to at least one TNF neutralizing activity. Sites that are critical for antibody binding can also be identified by structural analysis such as crystallization, nuclear magnetic resonance or photoaffinity labeling (Smith, et al., *J. Mol. Biol.* 224:899-904 (1992) and de Vos, et al., *Science* 255:306-312 (1992)).

20 Anti-TNF antibodies of the present invention can include, but are not limited to, at least one portion, sequence or combination selected from 5 to all of the contiguous amino acids of at least one of SEQ ID NOS:1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6.

A(n) anti-TNF antibody can further optionally comprise a polypeptide of at least one of 70-100% of the contiguous amino acids of at least one of SEQ ID NOS:7, 8.

25 In one embodiment, the amino acid sequence of an immunoglobulin chain, or portion thereof (e.g., variable region, CDR) has about 70-100% identity (e.g., 70, 71, 72, 73, 74, 75,

76, 77, 78, 79, 80, 81, 82, 83, 84, 85, 86, 87, 88, 89, 90, 91, 92, 93, 94, 95, 96, 97, 98, 99, 100 or any range or value therein) to the amino acid sequence of the corresponding chain of at least one of SEQ ID NOS:7, 8. For example, the amino acid sequence of a light chain variable region can be compared with the sequence of SEQ ID NO:8, or the amino acid sequence of a heavy chain CDR3 can be compared with SEQ ID NO:7. Preferably, 70-100% amino acid identity (i.e., 90, 91, 92, 93, 94, 95, 96, 97, 98, 99, 100 or any range or value therein) is determined using a suitable computer algorithm, as known in the art.

Exemplary heavy chain and light chain variable regions sequences are provided in SEQ ID NOS: 7, 8. The antibodies of the present invention, or specified variants thereof, can 10 comprise any number of contiguous amino acid residues from an antibody of the present invention, wherein that number is selected from the group of integers consisting of from 10-100% of the number of contiguous residues in an anti-TNF antibody. Optionally, this subsequence of contiguous amino acids is at least about 10, 20, 30, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 110, 120, 130, 140, 150, 160, 170, 180, 190, 200, 210, 220, 230, 240, 250 or more amino acids in 15 length, or any range or value therein. Further, the number of such subsequences can be any integer selected from the group consisting of from 1 to 20, such as at least 2, 3, 4, or 5.

As those of skill will appreciate, the present invention includes at least one biologically active antibody of the present invention. Biologically active antibodies have a specific activity at least 20%, 30%, or 40%, and preferably at least 50%, 60%, or 70%, and most preferably at least 20, 80%, 90%, or 95%-1000% of that of the native (non-synthetic), endogenous or related and known antibody. Methods of assaying and quantifying measures of enzymatic activity and substrate specificity, are well known to those of skill in the art.

In another aspect, the invention relates to human antibodies and antigen-binding fragments, as described herein, which are modified by the covalent attachment of an organic 25 moiety. Such modification can produce an antibody or antigen-binding fragment with improved pharmacokinetic properties (e.g., increased *in vivo* serum half-life). The organic moiety can be a linear or branched hydrophilic polymeric group, fatty acid group, or fatty acid ester group. In particular embodiments, the hydrophilic polymeric group can have a molecular weight of about 800 to about 120,000 Daltons and can be a polyalkane glycol (e.g., 30 polyethylene glycol (PEG), polypropylene glycol (PPG)), carbohydrate polymer, amino acid polymer or polyvinyl pyrrolidone, and the fatty acid or fatty acid ester group can comprise from about eight to about forty carbon atoms.

The modified antibodies and antigen-binding fragments of the invention can comprise one or more organic moieties that are covalently bonded, directly or indirectly, to the antibody. 35 Each organic moiety that is bonded to an antibody or antigen-binding fragment of the invention can independently be a hydrophilic polymeric group, a fatty acid group or a fatty

acid ester group. As used herein, the term "fatty acid" encompasses mono-carboxylic acids and di-carboxylic acids. A "hydrophilic polymeric group," as the term is used herein, refers to an organic polymer that is more soluble in water than in octane. For example, polylysine is more soluble in water than in octane. Thus, an antibody modified by the covalent attachment 5 of polylysine is encompassed by the invention. Hydrophilic polymers suitable for modifying antibodies of the invention can be linear or branched and include, for example, polyalkane glycols (e.g., PEG, monomethoxy-polyethylene glycol (mPEG), PPG and the like), carbohydrates (e.g., dextran, cellulose, oligosaccharides, polysaccharides and the like), polymers of hydrophilic amino acids (e.g., polylysine, polyarginine, polyaspartate and the 10 like), polyalkane oxides (e.g., polyethylene oxide, polypropylene oxide and the like) and polyvinyl pyrrolidone. Preferably, the hydrophilic polymer that modifies the antibody of the invention has a molecular weight of about 800 to about 150,000 Daltons as a separate molecular entity. For example PEG<sub>5000</sub> and PEG<sub>20,000</sub>, wherein the subscript is the average 15 molecular weight of the polymer in Daltons, can be used. The hydrophilic polymeric group can be substituted with one to about six alkyl, fatty acid or fatty acid ester groups. Hydrophilic polymers that are substituted with a fatty acid or fatty acid ester group can be prepared by employing suitable methods. For example, a polymer comprising an amine group can be coupled to a carboxylate of the fatty acid or fatty acid ester, and an activated carboxylate (e.g., activated with N, N-carbonyl diimidazole) on a fatty acid or fatty acid ester can be coupled to a 20 hydroxyl group on a polymer.

Fatty acids and fatty acid esters suitable for modifying antibodies of the invention can be saturated or can contain one or more units of unsaturation. Fatty acids that are suitable for modifying antibodies of the invention include, for example, n-dodecanoate (C<sub>12</sub>, laurate), n-tetradecanoate (C<sub>14</sub>, myristate), n-octadecanoate (C<sub>18</sub>, stearate), n-eicosanoate (C<sub>20</sub>, arachidate) 25 , n-docosanoate (C<sub>22</sub>, behenate), n-triacontanoate (C<sub>30</sub>), n-tetracontanoate (C<sub>40</sub>), *cis*-Δ9-octadecanoate (C<sub>18</sub>, oleate), all *cis*-Δ5,8,11,14-eicosatetraenoate (C<sub>20</sub>, arachidonate), octanedioic acid, tetradecanedioic acid, octadecanedioic acid, docosanedioic acid, and the like. Suitable fatty acid esters include mono-esters of dicarboxylic acids that comprise a linear or branched lower alkyl group. The lower alkyl group can comprise from one to about twelve, 30 preferably one to about six, carbon atoms.

The modified human antibodies and antigen-binding fragments can be prepared using suitable methods, such as by reaction with one or more modifying agents. A "modifying agent" as the term is used herein, refers to a suitable organic group (e.g., hydrophilic polymer, a fatty acid, a fatty acid ester) that comprises an activating group. An "activating group" is a 35 chemical moiety or functional group that can, under appropriate conditions, react with a second chemical group thereby forming a covalent bond between the modifying agent and the

second chemical group. For example, amine-reactive activating groups include electrophilic groups such as tosylate, mesylate, halo (chloro, bromo, fluoro, iodo), N-hydroxysuccinimidyl esters (NHS), and the like. Activating groups that can react with thiols include, for example, maleimide, iodoacetyl, acryloyl, pyridyl disulfides, 5-thiol-2-nitrobenzoic acid thiol (TNB-thiol), and the like. An aldehyde functional group can be coupled to amine- or hydrazide-containing molecules, and an azide group can react with a trivalent phosphorous group to form phosphoramidate or phosphorimide linkages. Suitable methods to introduce activating groups into molecules are known in the art (see for example, Hermanson, G. T., *Bioconjugate Techniques*. Academic Press: San Diego, CA (1996)). An activating group can be bonded directly to the organic group (e.g., hydrophilic polymer, fatty acid, fatty acid ester), or through a linker moiety, for example a divalent C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> group wherein one or more carbon atoms can be replaced by a heteroatom such as oxygen, nitrogen or sulfur. Suitable linker moieties include, for example, tetraethylene glycol, -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub>-NH-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>6</sub>-NH-, -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>-NH- and -CH<sub>2</sub>-O-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O-CH<sub>2</sub>-O-CH-NH-. Modifying agents that comprise a linker moiety can be produced, for example, by reacting a mono-Boc-alkyldiamine (e.g., mono-Boc-ethylenediamine, mono-Boc-diaminohexane) with a fatty acid in the presence of 1-ethyl-3-(3-dimethylaminopropyl) carbodiimide (EDC) to form an amide bond between the free amine and the fatty acid carboxylate. The Boc protecting group can be removed from the product by treatment with trifluoroacetic acid (TFA) to expose a primary amine that can be coupled to another carboxylate as described, or can be reacted with maleic anhydride and the resulting product cyclized to produce an activated maleimido derivative of the fatty acid. (See, for example, Thompson, *et al.*, WO 92/16221 the entire teachings of which are incorporated herein by reference.)

The modified antibodies of the invention can be produced by reacting a human antibody or antigen-binding fragment with a modifying agent. For example, the organic moieties can be bonded to the antibody in a non-site specific manner by employing an amine-reactive modifying agent, for example, an NHS ester of PEG. Modified human antibodies or antigen-binding fragments can also be prepared by reducing disulfide bonds (e.g., intra-chain disulfide bonds) of an antibody or antigen-binding fragment. The reduced antibody or antigen-binding fragment can then be reacted with a thiol-reactive modifying agent to produce the modified antibody of the invention. Modified human antibodies and antigen-binding fragments comprising an organic moiety that is bonded to specific sites of an antibody of the present invention can be prepared using suitable methods, such as reverse proteolysis (Fisch *et al.*, *Bioconjugate Chem.*, 3:147-153 (1992); Werlen *et al.*, *Bioconjugate Chem.*, 5:411-417 (1994); Kumaran *et al.*, *Protein Sci.* 6(10):2233-2241 (1997); Itoh *et al.*, *Bioorg. Chem.*, 24(1): 59-68 (1996); Capellas *et al.*, *Biotechnol. Bioeng.*, 56(4):456-463 (1997)), and the methods

described in Hermanson, G. T., *Bioconjugate Techniques*, Academic Press: San Diego, CA (1996).

#### ANTI-IDIOTYPE ANTIBODIES TO ANTI-TNF ANTIBODY COMPOSITIONS

In addition to monoclonal or chimeric anti-TNF antibodies, the present invention is also directed to an anti-idiotypic (anti-Id) antibody specific for such antibodies of the invention. An anti-Id antibody is an antibody which recognizes unique determinants generally associated with the antigen-binding region of another antibody. The anti-Id can be prepared by immunizing an animal of the same species and genetic type (e.g. mouse strain) as the source of the Id antibody with the antibody or a CDR containing region thereof. The immunized animal will recognize and respond to the idiotypic determinants of the immunizing antibody and produce an anti-Id antibody. The anti-Id antibody may also be used as an "immunogen" to induce an immune response in yet another animal, producing a so-called anti-anti-Id antibody.

#### ANTI-TNF ANTIBODY COMPOSITIONS

The present invention also provides at least one anti-TNF antibody composition comprising at least one, at least two, at least three, at least four, at least five, at least six or more anti-TNF antibodies thereof, as described herein and/or as known in the art that are provided in a non-naturally occurring composition, mixture or form. Such compositions comprise non-naturally occurring compositions comprising at least one or two full length, C- and/or N-terminally deleted variants, domains, fragments, or specified variants, of the anti-TNF antibody amino acid sequence selected from the group consisting of 70-100% of the contiguous amino acids of SEQ ID NOS:1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, or specified fragments, domains or variants thereof. Preferred anti-TNF antibody compositions include at least one or two full length, fragments, domains or variants as at least one CDR or LBR containing portions of the anti-TNF antibody sequence of 70-100% of SEQ ID NOS:1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, or specified fragments, domains or variants thereof. Further preferred compositions comprise 40-99% of at least one of 70-100% of SEQ ID NOS:1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, or specified fragments, domains or variants thereof. Such composition percentages are by weight, volume, concentration, molarity, or molality as liquid or dry solutions, mixtures, suspension, emulsions or colloids, as known in the art or as described herein.

Anti-TNF antibody compositions of the present invention can further comprise at least one of any suitable and effective amount of a composition or pharmaceutical composition comprising at least one anti-TNF antibody to a cell, tissue, organ, animal or patient in need of such modulation, treatment or therapy, optionally further comprising at least one selected from at least one TNF antagonist (e.g., but not limited to a TNF antibody or fragment, a soluble TNF receptor or fragment, fusion proteins thereof, or a small molecule TNF antagonist), an

antirheumatic (e.g., methotrexate, auranofin, aurothioglucose, azathioprine, etanercept, gold sodium thiomalate, hydroxychloroquine sulfate, leflunomide, sulfasalzine), a muscle relaxant, a narcotic, a non-steroid anti-inflammatory drug (NSAID), an analgesic, an anesthetic, a sedative, a local anesthetic, a neuromuscular blocker, an antimicrobial (e.g., aminoglycoside, an 5 antifungal, an antiparasitic, an antiviral, a carbapenem, cephalosporin, a fluroquinolone, a macrolide, a penicillin, a sulfonamide, a tetracycline, another antimicrobial), an antipsoriatic, a corticosteroid, an anabolic steroid, a diabetes related agent, a mineral, a nutritional, a thyroid agent, a vitamin, a calcium related hormone, an antidiarrheal, an antitussive, an antiemetic, an antiulcer, a laxative, an anticoagulant, an erythropoietin (e.g., epoetin alpha), a filgrastim (e.g., 10 G-CSF, Neupogen), a sargramostim (GM-CSF, Leukine), an immunization, an immunoglobulin, an immunosuppressive (e.g., basiliximab, cyclosporine, daclizumab), a growth hormone, a hormone replacement drug, an estrogen receptor modulator, a mydriatic, a cycloplegic, an alkylating agent, an antimetabolite, a mitotic inhibitor, a radiopharmaceutical, an antidepressant, antimanic agent, an antipsychotic, an anxiolytic, a hypnotic, a 15 sympathomimetic, a stimulant, donepezil, tacrine, an asthma medication, a beta agonist, an inhaled steroid, a leukotriene inhibitor, a methylxanthine, a cromolyn, an epinephrine or analog, dornase alpha (Pulmozyme), a cytokine or a cytokine antagonist. Non-limiting examples of such cytokines include, but are not limited to, any of IL-1 to IL-23. Suitable dosages are well known in the art. See, e.g., Wells et al., eds., Pharmacotherapy Handbook, 2<sup>nd</sup> 20 Edition, Appleton and Lange, Stamford, CT (2000); PDR Pharmacopoeia, Tarascon Pocket Pharmacopoeia 2000, Deluxe Edition, Tarascon Publishing, Loma Linda, CA (2000), each of which references are entirely incorporated herein by reference.

Such anti-cancer or anti-infectives can also include toxin molecules that are associated, bound, co-formulated or co-administered with at least one antibody of the present invention. The toxin can optionally act to selectively kill the pathologic cell or tissue. The pathologic cell can be a cancer or other cell. Such toxins can be, but are not limited to,

5 purified or recombinant toxin or toxin fragment comprising at least one functional cytotoxic domain of toxin, e.g., selected from at least one of ricin, diphtheria toxin, a venom toxin, or a bacterial toxin. The term toxin also includes both endotoxins and exotoxins produced by any naturally occurring, mutant or recombinant bacteria or viruses which may cause any pathological condition in humans and other mammals, including toxin shock, which can result

10 in death. Such toxins may include, but are not limited to, enterotoxigenic *E. coli* heat-labile enterotoxin (LT), heat-stable enterotoxin (ST), *Shigella* cytotoxin, *Aeromonas* enterotoxins, toxic shock syndrome toxin-1 (TSST-1), Staphylococcal enterotoxin A (SEA), B (SEB), or C (SEC), Streptococcal enterotoxins and the like. Such bacteria include, but are not limited to, strains of a species of enterotoxigenic *E. coli* (ETEC), enterohemorrhagic *E. coli* (e.g., strains

15 of serotype 0157:H7), *Staphylococcus* species (e.g., *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Staphylococcus pyogenes*), *Shigella* species (e.g., *Shigella dysenteriae*, *Shigella flexneri*, *Shigella boydii*, and *Shigella sonnei*), *Salmonella* species (e.g., *Salmonella typhi*, *Salmonella cholera-suis*, *Salmonella enteritidis*), *Clostridium* species (e.g., *Clostridium perfringens*, *Clostridium difficile*, *Clostridium botulinum*), *Camphlobacter* species (e.g., *Camphlobacter jejuni*, *Camphlobacter fetus*), *Helicobacter* species, (e.g., *Helicobacter pylori*), *Aeromonas* species (e.g., *Aeromonas sobria*, *Aeromonas hydrophila*, *Aeromonas caviae*), *Plesiomonas shigelloides*, *Yersina enterocolitica*, *Vibrios* species (e.g., *Vibrios cholerae*, *Vibrios parahemolyticus*), *Klebsiella* species, *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, and *Streptococci*. See, e.g., Stein, ed., INTERNAL MEDICINE, 3rd ed., pp 1-13, Little, Brown and Co., Boston, (1990); Evans et al.,  
20 eds., Bacterial Infections of Humans: Epidemiology and Control, 2d. Ed., pp 239-254, Plenum Medical Book Co., New York (1991); Mandell et al, Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases, 3d. Ed., Churchill Livingstone, New York (1990); Berkow et al, eds., *The Merck Manual*, 16th edition, Merck and Co., Rahway, N.J., 1992; Wood et al, FEMS Microbiology Immunology, 76:121-134 (1991); Marrack et al, Science, 248:705-711 (1990), the contents of  
25 which references are incorporated entirely herein by reference.

30

Anti-TNF antibody compounds, compositions or combinations of the present invention can further comprise at least one of any suitable auxiliary, such as, but not limited to, diluent, binder, stabilizer, buffers, salts, lipophilic solvents, preservative, adjuvant or the like. Pharmaceutically acceptable auxiliaries are preferred. Non-limiting examples of, and methods of preparing such sterile solutions are well known in the art, such as, but limited to, Gennaro, Ed., *Remington's Pharmaceutical Sciences*, 18<sup>th</sup> Edition, Mack Publishing Co. (Easton, PA) 1990. Pharmaceutically acceptable carriers can be routinely selected that are suitable for the mode of administration, solubility and/or stability of the anti-TNF antibody, fragment or variant composition as well known in the art or as described herein.

10 Pharmaceutical excipients and additives useful in the present composition include but are not limited to proteins, peptides, amino acids, lipids, and carbohydrates (e.g., sugars, including monosaccharides, di-, tri-, tetra-, and oligosaccharides; derivatized sugars such as alditols, aldonic acids, esterified sugars and the like; and polysaccharides or sugar polymers), which can be present singly or in combination, comprising alone or in combination 1-99.99% by weight or volume. Exemplary protein excipients include serum albumin such as human serum albumin (HSA), recombinant human albumin (rHA), gelatin, casein, and the like. Representative amino acid/antibody components, which can also function in a buffering capacity, include alanine, glycine, arginine, betaine, histidine, glutamic acid, aspartic acid, cysteine, lysine, leucine, isoleucine, valine, methionine, phenylalanine, aspartame, and the like. One preferred amino acid is glycine.

Carbohydrate excipients suitable for use in the invention include, for example, monosaccharides such as fructose, maltose, galactose, glucose, D-mannose, sorbose, and the like; disaccharides, such as lactose, sucrose, trehalose, cellobiose, and the like; polysaccharides, such as raffinose, melezitose, maltodextrins, dextrans, starches, and the like; 25 and alditols, such as mannitol, xylitol, maltitol, lactitol, xylitol sorbitol (glucitol), myoinositol and the like. Preferred carbohydrate excipients for use in the present invention are mannitol, trehalose, and raffinose.

Anti-TNF antibody compositions can also include a buffer or a pH adjusting agent; typically, the buffer is a salt prepared from an organic acid or base. Representative buffers 30 include organic acid salts such as salts of citric acid, ascorbic acid, gluconic acid, carbonic acid, tartaric acid, succinic acid, acetic acid, or phthalic acid; Tris, tromethamine hydrochloride, or phosphate buffers. Preferred buffers for use in the present compositions are organic acid salts such as citrate.

Additionally, anti-TNF antibody compositions of the invention can include polymeric 35 excipients/additives such as polyvinylpyrrolidones, ficolls (a polymeric sugar), dextrates (e.g.,

cyclodextrins, such as 2-hydroxypropyl- $\beta$ -cyclodextrin), polyethylene glycols, flavoring agents, antimicrobial agents, sweeteners, antioxidants, antistatic agents, surfactants (e.g., polysorbates such as "TWEEN 20" and "TWEEN 80"), lipids (e.g., phospholipids, fatty acids), steroids (e.g., cholesterol), and chelating agents (e.g., EDTA).

5 These and additional known pharmaceutical excipients and/or additives suitable for use in the anti-TNF antibody, portion or variant compositions according to the invention are known in the art, e.g., as listed in "Remington: The Science & Practice of Pharmacy", 19<sup>th</sup> ed., Williams & Williams, (1995), and in the "Physician's Desk Reference", 52<sup>nd</sup> ed., Medical Economics, Montvale, NJ (1998), the disclosures of which are entirely incorporated herein by  
10 reference. Preferred carrier or excipient materials are carbohydrates (e.g., saccharides and alditols) and buffers (e.g., citrate) or polymeric agents.

### Formulations

As noted above, the invention provides for stable formulations, which is preferably a phosphate buffer with saline or a chosen salt, as well as preserved solutions and  
15 formulations containing a preservative as well as multi-use preserved formulations suitable for pharmaceutical or veterinary use, comprising at least one anti-TNF antibody in a pharmaceutically acceptable formulation. Preserved formulations contain at least one known preservative or optionally selected from the group consisting of at least one phenol, m-cresol, p-cresol, o-cresol, chlorocresol, benzyl alcohol, phenylmercuric nitrite, phenoxyethanol,  
20 formaldehyde, chlorobutanol, magnesium chloride (e.g., hexahydrate), alkylparaben (methyl, ethyl, propyl, butyl and the like), benzalkonium chloride, benzethonium chloride, sodium dehydroacetate and thimerosal, or mixtures thereof in an aqueous diluent. Any suitable concentration or mixture can be used as known in the art, such as 0.001-5%, or any range or value therein, such as, but not limited to 0.001, 0.003, 0.005, 0.009, 0.01, 0.02, 0.03, 0.05,  
25 0.09, 0.1, 0.2, 0.3, 0.4, 0.5, 0.6, 0.7, 0.8, 0.9, 1.0, 1.1, 1.2, 1.3, 1.4, 1.5, 1.6, 1.7, 1.8, 1.9, 2.0, 2.1, 2.2, 2.3, 2.4, 2.5, 2.6, 2.7, 2.8, 2.9, 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.3, 3.4, 3.5, 3.6, 3.7, 3.8, 3.9, 4.0, 4.3, 4.5, 4.6, 4.7, 4.8, 4.9, or any range or value therein. Non-limiting examples include, no  
30 preservative, 0.1-2% m-cresol (e.g., 0.2, 0.3, 0.4, 0.5, 0.9, 1.0%), 0.1-3% benzyl alcohol (e.g., 0.5, 0.9, 1.1, 1.5, 1.9, 2.0, 2.5%), 0.001-0.5% thimerosal (e.g., 0.005, 0.01), 0.001-2.0% phenol (e.g., 0.05, 0.25, 0.28, 0.5, 0.9, 1.0%), 0.0005-1.0% alkylparaben(s) (e.g., 0.00075, 0.0009, 0.001, 0.002, 0.005, 0.0075, 0.009, 0.01, 0.02, 0.05, 0.075, 0.09, 0.1, 0.2, 0.3, 0.5, 0.75, 0.9, 1.0%), and the like.

As noted above, the invention provides an article of manufacture, comprising packaging material and at least one vial comprising a solution of at least one anti-TNF  
35 antibody with the prescribed buffers and/or preservatives, optionally in an aqueous diluent, wherein said packaging material comprises a label that indicates that such solution can be held

over a period of 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 9, 12, 18, 20, 24, 30, 36, 40, 48, 54, 60, 66, 72 hours or greater. The invention further comprises an article of manufacture, comprising packaging material, a first vial comprising lyophilized at least one anti-TNF antibody, and a second vial comprising an aqueous diluent of prescribed buffer or preservative, wherein said packaging material 5 comprises a label that instructs a patient to reconstitute the at least one anti-TNF antibody in the aqueous diluent to form a solution that can be held over a period of twenty-four hours or greater.

The at least one anti-TNF antibody used in accordance with the present invention can be produced by recombinant means, including from mammalian cell or transgenic 10 preparations, or can be purified from other biological sources, as described herein or as known in the art.

The range of at least one anti-TNF antibody in the product of the present invention includes amounts yielding upon reconstitution, if in a wet/dry system, concentrations from about 1.0 µg/ml to about 1000 mg/ml, although lower and higher concentrations are operable 15 and are dependent on the intended delivery vehicle, e.g., solution formulations will differ from transdermal patch, pulmonary, transmucosal, or osmotic or micro pump methods.

Preferably, the aqueous diluent optionally further comprises a pharmaceutically acceptable preservative. Preferred preservatives include those selected from the group consisting of phenol, m-cresol, p-cresol, o-cresol, chlorocresol, benzyl alcohol, alkylparaben 20 (methyl, ethyl, propyl, butyl and the like), benzalkonium chloride, benzethonium chloride, sodium dehydroacetate and thimerosal, or mixtures thereof. The concentration of preservative used in the formulation is a concentration sufficient to yield an anti-microbial effect. Such concentrations are dependent on the preservative selected and are readily determined by the skilled artisan.

Other excipients, e.g. isotonicity agents, buffers, antioxidants, preservative enhancers, can be optionally and preferably added to the diluent. An isotonicity agent, such as glycerin, is commonly used at known concentrations. A physiologically tolerated buffer is preferably added to provide improved pH control. The formulations can cover a wide range of pHs, such as from about pH 4 to about pH 10, and preferred ranges from about pH 5 to about pH 9, and a 30 most preferred range of about 6.0 to about 8.0. Preferably the formulations of the present invention have pH between about 6.8 and about 7.8. Preferred buffers include phosphate buffers, most preferably sodium phosphate, particularly phosphate buffered saline (PBS).

Other additives, such as a pharmaceutically acceptable solubilizers like Tween 20 (polyoxyethylene (20) sorbitan monolaurate), Tween 40 (polyoxyethylene (20) sorbitan 35 monopalmitate), Tween 80 (polyoxyethylene (20) sorbitan monooleate), Pluronic F68 (polyoxyethylene polyoxypropylene block copolymers), and PEG (polyethylene glycol) or

non-ionic surfactants such as polysorbate 20 or 80 or poloxamer 184 or 188, Pluronic® polyols, other block co-polymers, and chelators such as EDTA and EGTA can optionally be added to the formulations or compositions to reduce aggregation. These additives are particularly useful if a pump or plastic container is used to administer the formulation. The presence of 5 pharmaceutically acceptable surfactant mitigates the propensity for the protein to aggregate.

The formulations of the present invention can be prepared by a process which comprises mixing at least one anti-TNF antibody and a preservative selected from the group consisting of phenol, m-cresol, p-cresol, o-cresol, chlorocresol, benzyl alcohol, alkylparaben, (methyl, ethyl, propyl, butyl and the like), benzalkonium chloride, benzethonium chloride, 10 sodium dehydroacetate and thimerosal or mixtures thereof in an aqueous diluent. Mixing the at least one anti-TNF antibody and preservative in an aqueous diluent is carried out using conventional dissolution and mixing procedures. To prepare a suitable formulation, for example, a measured amount of at least one anti-TNF antibody in buffered solution is combined with the desired preservative in a buffered solution in quantities sufficient to provide 15 the protein and preservative at the desired concentrations. Variations of this process would be recognized by one of ordinary skill in the art. For example, the order the components are added, whether additional additives are used, the temperature and pH at which the formulation is prepared, are all factors that can be optimized for the concentration and means of administration used.

20 The claimed formulations can be provided to patients as clear solutions or as dual vials comprising a vial of lyophilized at least one anti-TNF antibody that is reconstituted with a second vial containing water, a preservative and/or excipients, preferably a phosphate buffer and/or saline and a chosen salt, in an aqueous diluent. Either a single solution vial or dual vial requiring reconstitution can be reused multiple times and can suffice for a single or 25 multiple cycles of patient treatment and thus can provide a more convenient treatment regimen than currently available.

The present claimed articles of manufacture are useful for administration over a period of immediately to twenty-four hours or greater. Accordingly, the presently claimed articles of manufacture offer significant advantages to the patient. Formulations of the 30 invention can optionally be safely stored at temperatures of from about 2 to about 40°C and retain the biologically activity of the protein for extended periods of time, thus, allowing a package label indicating that the solution can be held and/or used over a period of 6, 12, 18, 24, 36, 48, 72, or 96 hours or greater. If preserved diluent is used, such label can include use up to 1-12 months, one-half, one and a half, and/or two years.

35 The solutions of at least one anti-TNF antibody in the invention can be prepared by a process that comprises mixing at least one antibody in an aqueous diluent.

Mixing is carried out using conventional dissolution and mixing procedures. To prepare a suitable diluent, for example, a measured amount of at least one antibody in water or buffer is combined in quantities sufficient to provide the protein and optionally a preservative or buffer at the desired concentrations. Variations of this process would be recognized by one of ordinary skill in the art. For example, the order the components are added, whether additional additives are used, the temperature and pH at which the formulation is prepared, are all factors that can be optimized for the concentration and means of administration used.

The claimed products can be provided to patients as clear solutions or as dual vials comprising a vial of lyophilized at least one anti-TNF antibody that is reconstituted with a second vial containing the aqueous diluent. Either a single solution vial or dual vial requiring reconstitution can be reused multiple times and can suffice for a single or multiple cycles of patient treatment and thus provides a more convenient treatment regimen than currently available.

The claimed products can be provided indirectly to patients by providing to pharmacies, clinics, or other such institutions and facilities, clear solutions or dual vials comprising a vial of lyophilized at least one anti-TNF antibody that is reconstituted with a second vial containing the aqueous diluent. The clear solution in this case can be up to one liter or even larger in size, providing a large reservoir from which smaller portions of the at least one antibody solution can be retrieved one or multiple times for transfer into smaller vials and provided by the pharmacy or clinic to their customers and/or patients.

Recognized devices comprising these single vial systems include those pen-injector devices for delivery of a solution such as BD Pens, BD Autojector®, Humaject®, NovoPen®, B-D®Pen, AutoPen®, and OptiPen®, GenotropinPen®, Genotronorm Pen®, Humatro Pen®, Reco-Pen®, Roferon Pen®, Biojector®, iject®, J-tip Needle-Free Injector®, Inraject®, Medi-Ject®, e.g., as made or developed by Becton Dickensen (Franklin Lakes, NJ, [www.bectondickenson.com](http://www.bectondickenson.com)), Disetronic (Burgdorf, Switzerland, [www.disetronic.com](http://www.disetronic.com); Bioject, Portland, Oregon ([www.bioject.com](http://www.bioject.com)); National Medical Products , Weston Medical (Peterborough, UK, [www.weston-medical.com](http://www.weston-medical.com)), Medi-Ject Corp (Minneapolis, MN, [www.mediject.com](http://www.mediject.com)). Recognized devices comprising a dual vial system include those pen-injector systems for reconstituting a lyophilized drug in a cartridge for delivery of the reconstituted solution such as the HumatroPen®.

The products presently claimed include packaging material. The packaging material provides, in addition to the information required by the regulatory agencies, the conditions under which the product can be used. The packaging material of the present invention provides instructions to the patient to reconstitute the at least one anti-TNF antibody in the aqueous diluent to form a solution and to use the solution over a period of 2-24 hours or

greater for the two vial, wet/dry, product. For the single vial, solution product, the label indicates that such solution can be used over a period of 2-24 hours or greater. The presently claimed products are useful for human pharmaceutical product use.

The formulations of the present invention can be prepared by a process that  
5 comprises mixing at least one anti-TNF antibody and a selected buffer, preferably a phosphate buffer containing saline or a chosen salt. Mixing the at least one antibody and buffer in an aqueous diluent is carried out using conventional dissolution and mixing procedures. To prepare a suitable formulation, for example, a measured amount of at least one antibody in water or buffer is combined with the desired buffering agent in water in quantities sufficient to  
10 provide the protein and buffer at the desired concentrations. Variations of this process would be recognized by one of ordinary skill in the art. For example, the order the components are added, whether additional additives are used, the temperature and pH at which the formulation is prepared, are all factors that can be optimized for the concentration and means of administration used.

15 The claimed stable or preserved formulations can be provided to patients as clear solutions or as dual vials comprising a vial of lyophilized at least one anti-TNF antibody that is reconstituted with a second vial containing a preservative or buffer and excipients in an aqueous diluent. Either a single solution vial or dual vial requiring reconstitution can be reused multiple times and can suffice for a single or multiple cycles of patient treatment and  
20 thus provides a more convenient treatment regimen than currently available.

At least one anti-TNF antibody in either the stable or preserved formulations or  
solutions described herein, can be administered to a patient in accordance with the present  
invention via a variety of delivery methods including SC or IM injection; transdermal,  
pulmonary, transmucosal, implant, osmotic pump, cartridge, micro pump, or other means  
25 appreciated by the skilled artisan, as well-known in the art.

#### **Therapeutic Applications**

The present invention also provides a method for modulating or treating at least one TNF related disease, in a cell, tissue, organ, animal, or patient, as known in the art or as described herein, using at least one dual integrin antibody of the present invention.

30 The present invention also provides a method for modulating or treating at least one TNF related disease, in a cell, tissue, organ, animal, or patient including, but not limited to, at least one of obesity, an immune related disease, a cardiovascular disease, an infectious disease, a malignant disease or a neurologic disease.

35 The present invention also provides a method for modulating or treating at least one immune related disease, in a cell, tissue, organ, animal, or patient including, but not limited to, at least one of rheumatoid arthritis, juvenile rheumatoid arthritis, systemic onset juvenile

rheumatoid arthritis, psoriatic arthritis, ankylosing spondilitis, gastric ulcer, seronegative arthropathies, osteoarthritis, inflammatory bowel disease, ulcerative colitis, systemic lupus erythematosis, antiphospholipid syndrome, iridocyclitis/uveitis/optic neuritis, idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis, systemic vasculitis/wegener's granulomatosis, sarcoidosis,

5 orchitis/vasectomy reversal procedures, allergic/atopic diseases, asthma, allergic rhinitis, eczema, allergic contact dermatitis, allergic conjunctivitis, hypersensitivity pneumonitis, transplants, organ transplant rejection, graft-versus-host disease, systemic inflammatory response syndrome, sepsis syndrome, gram positive sepsis, gram negative sepsis, culture negative sepsis, fungal sepsis, neutropenic fever, urosepsis, meningococcemia,

10 trauma/hemorrhage, burns, ionizing radiation exposure, acute pancreatitis, adult respiratory distress syndrome, rheumatoid arthritis, alcohol-induced hepatitis, chronic inflammatory pathologies, sarcoidosis, Crohn's pathology, sickle cell anemia, diabetes, nephrosis, atopic diseases, hypersensitivity reactions, allergic rhinitis, hay fever, perennial rhinitis, conjunctivitis, endometriosis, asthma, urticaria, systemic anaphylaxis, dermatitis, pernicious anemia,

15 hemolytic disease, thrombocytopenia, graft rejection of any organ or tissue, kidney transplant rejection, heart transplant rejection, liver transplant rejection, pancreas transplant rejection, lung transplant rejection, bone marrow transplant (BMT) rejection, skin allograft rejection, cartilage transplant rejection, bone graft rejection, small bowel transplant rejection, fetal thymus implant rejection, parathyroid transplant rejection, xenograft rejection of any

20 organ or tissue, allograft rejection, anti-receptor hypersensitivity reactions, Graves disease, Raynaud's disease, type B insulin-resistant diabetes, asthma, myasthenia gravis, antibody-mediated cytotoxicity, type III hypersensitivity reactions, systemic lupus erythematosus, POEMS syndrome (polyneuropathy, organomegaly, endocrinopathy, monoclonal gammopathy, and skin changes syndrome), polyneuropathy, organomegaly, endocrinopathy,

25 monoclonal gammopathy, skin changes syndrome, antiphospholipid syndrome, pemphigus, scleroderma, mixed connective tissue disease, idiopathic Addison's disease, diabetes mellitus, chronic active hepatitis, primary biliary cirrhosis, vitiligo, vasculitis, post-MI cardiotomy syndrome, type IV hypersensitivity , contact dermatitis, hypersensitivity pneumonitis, allograft rejection, granulomas due to intracellular organisms, drug sensitivity, metabolic/idiopathic,

30 Wilson's disease, hemachromatosis, alpha-1-antitrypsin deficiency, diabetic retinopathy, hashimoto's thyroiditis, osteoporosis, hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis evaluation, primary biliary cirrhosis, thyroiditis, encephalomyelitis, cachexia, cystic fibrosis, neonatal chronic lung disease, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), familial hematophagocytic lymphohistiocytosis, dermatologic conditions, psoriasis, alopecia, nephrotic syndrome,

35 nephritis, glomerular nephritis, acute renal failure, hemodialysis, uremia, toxicity, preeclampsia, okt3 therapy, anti-cd3 therapy, cytokine therapy, chemotherapy, radiation

therapy (e.g., including but not limited to asthenia, anemia, cachexia, and the like), chronic salicylate intoxication, and the like. See, e.g., the Merck Manual, 12th-17th Editions, Merck & Company, Rahway, NJ (1972, 1977, 1982, 1987, 1992, 1999), Pharmacotherapy Handbook, Wells et al., eds., Second Edition, Appleton and Lange, Stamford, Conn. (1998, 2000), each 5 entirely incorporated by reference.

The present invention also provides a method for modulating or treating at least one cardiovascular disease in a cell, tissue, organ, animal, or patient, including, but not limited to, at least one of cardiac stun syndrome, myocardial infarction, congestive heart failure, stroke, ischemic stroke, hemorrhage, arteriosclerosis, atherosclerosis, restenosis, diabetic 10 atherosclerotic disease, hypertension, arterial hypertension, renovascular hypertension, syncope, shock, syphilis of the cardiovascular system, heart failure, cor pulmonale, primary pulmonary hypertension, cardiac arrhythmias, atrial ectopic beats, atrial flutter, atrial fibrillation (sustained or paroxysmal), post perfusion syndrome, cardiopulmonary bypass inflammation response, chaotic or multifocal atrial tachycardia, regular narrow QRS 15 tachycardia, specific arrhythmias, ventricular fibrillation, His bundle arrhythmias, atrioventricular block, bundle branch block, myocardial ischemic disorders, coronary artery disease, angina pectoris, myocardial infarction, cardiomyopathy, dilated congestive cardiomyopathy, restrictive cardiomyopathy, valvular heart diseases, endocarditis, pericardial disease, cardiac tumors, aortic and peripheral aneurysms, aortic dissection, inflammation of 20 the aorta, occlusion of the abdominal aorta and its branches, peripheral vascular disorders, occlusive arterial disorders, peripheral atherosclerotic disease, thromboangiitis obliterans, functional peripheral arterial disorders, Raynaud's phenomenon and disease, acrocyanosis, erythromelalgia, venous diseases, venous thrombosis, varicose veins, arteriovenous fistula, lymphedema, lipedema, unstable angina, reperfusion injury, post pump syndrome, ischemia-reperfusion injury, and the like. Such a method can optionally comprise administering an 25 effective amount of a composition or pharmaceutical composition comprising at least one anti-TNF antibody to a cell, tissue, organ, animal or patient in need of such modulation, treatment or therapy.

The present invention also provides a method for modulating or treating at least one infectious disease in a cell, tissue, organ, animal or patient, including, but not limited to, at 30 least one of: acute or chronic bacterial infection, acute and chronic parasitic or infectious processes, including bacterial, viral and fungal infections, HIV infection/HIV neuropathy, meningitis, hepatitis (A,B or C, or the like), septic arthritis, peritonitis, pneumonia, epiglottitis, e. coli 0157:h7, hemolytic uremic syndrome/thrombolytic thrombocytopenic purpura, malaria, 35 dengue hemorrhagic fever, leishmaniasis, leprosy, toxic shock syndrome, streptococcal myositis, gas gangrene, mycobacterium tuberculosis, mycobacterium avium intracellulare,

pneumocystis carinii pneumonia, pelvic inflammatory disease, orchitis/epididymitis, legionella, lyme disease, influenza a, epstein-barr virus, vital-associated hemaphagocytic syndrome, vital encephalitis/aseptic meningitis, and the like;

- The present invention also provides a method for modulating or treating at least one malignant disease in a cell, tissue, organ, animal or patient, including, but not limited to, at least one of: leukemia, acute leukemia, acute lymphoblastic leukemia (ALL), B-cell, T-cell or FAB ALL, acute myeloid leukemia (AML), chromic myelocytic leukemia (CML), chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL), hairy cell leukemia, myelodysplastic syndrome (MDS), a lymphoma, Hodgkin's disease, a malignamt lymphoma, non-hodgkin's lymphoma, Burkitt's lymphoma, multiple myeloma, Kaposi's sarcoma, colorectal carcinoma, pancreatic carcinoma, nasopharyngeal carcinoma, malignant histiocytosis, paraneoplastic syndrome/hypercalcemia of malignancy, solid tumors, adenocarcinomas, sarcomas, malignant melanoma, hemangioma, metastatic disease, cancer related bone resorption, cancer related bone pain, and the like.
- 15        The present invention also provides a method for modulating or treating at least one neurologic disease in a cell, tissue, organ, animal or patient, including, but not limited to, at least one of: neurodegenerative diseases, multiple sclerosis, migraine headache, AIDS dementia complex, demyelinating diseases, such as multiple sclerosis and acute transverse myelitis; extrapyramidal and cerebellar disorders' such as lesions of the corticospinal system; 20      disorders of the basal ganglia or cerebellar disorders; hyperkinetic movement disorders such as Huntington's Chorea and senile chorea; drug-induced movement disorders, such as those induced by drugs which block CNS dopamine receptors; hypokinetic movement disorders, such as Parkinson's disease; Progressive supranucleo Palsy; structural lesions of the cerebellum; spinocerebellar degenerations, such as spinal ataxia, Friedreich's ataxia, cerebellar 25      cortical degenerations, multiple systems degenerations (Mencel, Dejerine-Thomas, Shi-Drager, and Machado-Joseph); systemic disorders (Refsum's disease, abetalipoproteinemia, ataxia, telangiectasia, and mitochondrial multi.system disorder); demyelinating core disorders, such as multiple sclerosis, acute transverse myelitis; and disorders of the motor unit' such as neurogenic muscular atrophies (anterior horn cell degeneration, such as amyotrophic lateral 30      sclerosis, infantile spinal muscular atrophy and juvenile spinal muscular atrophy); Alzheimer's disease; Down's Syndrome in middle age; Diffuse Lewy body disease; Senile Dementia of Lewy body type; Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome; chronic alcoholism; Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease; Subacute sclerosing panencephalitis, Hallerrorden-Spatz disease; and Dementia pugilistica, and the like. Such a method can optionally comprise administering an effective 35      amount of a composition or pharmaceutical composition comprising at least one TNF antibody or specified portion or variant to a cell, tissue, organ, animal or patient in need of such

modulation, treatment or therapy. See, e.g., the Merck Manual, 16<sup>th</sup> Edition, Merck & Company, Rahway, NJ (1992)

Any method of the present invention can comprise administering an effective amount of a composition or pharmaceutical composition comprising at least one anti-TNF antibody to a cell, tissue, organ, animal or patient in need of such modulation, treatment or therapy. Such a method can optionally further comprise co-administration or combination therapy for treating such immune diseases, wherein the administering of said at least one anti-TNF antibody, specified portion or variant thereof, further comprises administering, before concurrently, and/or after, at least one selected from at least one TNF antagonist (e.g., but not limited to a TNF antibody or fragment, a soluble TNF receptor or fragment, fusion proteins thereof, or a small molecule TNF antagonist), an antirheumatic (e.g., methotrexate, auranofin, aurothioglucose, azathioprine, etanercept, gold sodium thiomalate, hydroxychloroquine sulfate, leflunomide, sulfasalazine), a muscle relaxant, a narcotic, a non-steroid anti-inflammatory drug (NSAID), an analgesic, anesthetic, a sedative, a local anesthetic, a neuromuscular blocker, an antimicrobial (e.g., aminoglycoside, an antifungal, an antiparasitic, an antiviral, a carbapenem, cephalosporin, a fluorquinolone, a macrolide, a penicillin, a sulfonamide, a tetracycline, another antimicrobial), an antipsoriatic, a corticosteroid, an anabolic steroid, a diabetes related agent, a mineral, a nutritional, a thyroid agent, a vitamin, a calcium related hormone, an antidiarrheal, an antitussive, an antiemetic, an antiulcer, a laxative, an anticoagulant, an erythropoietin (e.g., epoetin alpha), a filgrastim (e.g., G-CSF, Neupogen), a sargramostim (GM-CSF, Leukine), an immunization, an immunoglobulin, an immunosuppressive (e.g., basiliximab, cyclosporine, daclizumab), a growth hormone, a hormone replacement drug, an estrogen receptor modulator, a mydriatic, a cycloplegic, an alkylating agent, an antimetabolite, a mitotic inhibitor, a radiopharmaceutical, an antidepressant, antimanic agent, an antipsychotic, an anxiolytic, a hypnotic, a sympathomimetic, a stimulant, donepezil, tacrine, an asthma medication, a beta agonist, an inhaled steroid, a leukotriene inhibitor, a methylxanthine, a cromolyn, an epinephrine or analog, dornase alpha (Pulmozyme), a cytokine or a cytokine antagonist. Suitable dosages are well known in the art. See, e.g., Wells et al., eds., *Pharmacotherapy Handbook*, 2<sup>nd</sup> Edition, Appleton and Lange, Stamford, CT (2000); *PDR Pharmacopoeia*, Tarascon Pocket Pharmacopoeia 2000, Deluxe Edition, Tarascon Publishing, Loma Linda, CA (2000), each of which references are entirely incorporated herein by reference.

TNF antagonists suitable for compositions, combination therapy, co-administration, devices and/or methods of the present invention (further comprising at least one anti body, specified portion and variant thereof, of the present invention), include, but are not limited to, anti-TNF antibodies, antigen-binding fragments thereof, and receptor molecules which bind

specifically to TNF; compounds which prevent and/or inhibit TNF synthesis, TNF release or its action on target cells, such as thalidomide, tenidap, phosphodiesterase inhibitors (e.g., pentoxyfylline and rolipram), A2b adenosine receptor agonists and A2b adenosine receptor enhancers; compounds which prevent and/or inhibit TNF receptor signalling, such as mitogen activated protein (MAP) kinase inhibitors; compounds which block and/or inhibit membrane TNF cleavage, such as metalloproteinase inhibitors; compounds which block and/or inhibit TNF activity, such as angiotensin converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors (e.g., captopril); and compounds which block and/or inhibit TNF production and/or synthesis, such as MAP kinase inhibitors.

10 As used herein, a "tumor necrosis factor antibody," "TNF antibody," "TNF $\alpha$  antibody," or fragment and the like decreases, blocks, inhibits, abrogates or interferes with TNF $\alpha$  activity *in vitro*, *in situ* and/or preferably *in vivo*. For example, a suitable TNF human antibody of the present invention can bind TNF $\alpha$  and includes anti-TNF antibodies, antigen-binding fragments thereof, and specified mutants or domains thereof that bind specifically to 15 TNF $\alpha$ . A suitable TNF antibody or fragment can also decrease block, abrogate, interfere, prevent and/or inhibit TNF RNA, DNA or protein synthesis, TNF release, TNF receptor signaling, membrane TNF cleavage, TNF activity, TNF production and/or synthesis.

20 Chimeric antibody cA2 consists of the antigen binding variable region of the high-affinity neutralizing mouse anti-human TNF $\alpha$  IgG1 antibody, designated A2, and the constant regions of a human IgG1, kappa immunoglobulin. The human IgG1 Fc region improves allogeneic antibody effector function, increases the circulating serum half-life and decreases the immunogenicity of the antibody. The avidity and epitope specificity of the chimeric antibody cA2 is derived from the variable region of the murine antibody A2. In a particular embodiment, a preferred source for nucleic acids encoding the variable region of the murine 25 antibody A2 is the A2 hybridoma cell line.

Chimeric A2 (cA2) neutralizes the cytotoxic effect of both natural and recombinant human TNF $\alpha$  in a dose dependent manner. From binding assays of chimeric antibody cA2 and recombinant human TNF $\alpha$ , the affinity constant of chimeric antibody cA2 was calculated to be 1.04x10<sup>10</sup>M<sup>-1</sup>. Preferred methods for determining monoclonal antibody specificity and affinity 30 by competitive inhibition can be found in Harlow, *et al.*, *Antibodies: A Laboratory Manual*, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press, Cold Spring Harbor, New York, 1988; Colligan *et al.*, eds., *Current Protocols in Immunology*, Greene Publishing Assoc. and Wiley Interscience, New York, (1992-2000); Kozbor *et al.*, *Immunol. Today*, 4:72-79 (1983); Ausubel *et al.*, eds. *Current Protocols in Molecular Biology*, Wiley Interscience, New York (1987-2000); and 35 Muller, *Meth. Enzymol.*, 92:589-601 (1983), which references are entirely incorporated herein by reference.

In a particular embodiment, murine monoclonal antibody A2 is produced by a cell line designated c134A. Chimeric antibody cA2 is produced by a cell line designated c168A.

Additional examples of monoclonal anti-TNF antibodies that can be used in the present invention are described in the art (see, e.g., U.S. Patent No. 5,231,024; Möller, A. *et al.*, *Cytokine* 2(3):162-169 (1990); U.S. Application No. 07/943,852 (filed September 11, 1992); Rathjen *et al.*, International Publication No. WO 91/02078 (published February 21, 1991); Rubin *et al.*, EPO Patent Publication No. 0 218 868 (published April 22, 1987); Yone *et al.*, EPO Patent Publication No. 0 288 088 (October 26, 1988); Liang, *et al.*, *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Comm.* 137:847-854 (1986); Meager, *et al.*, *Hybridoma* 6:305-311 (1987); Fendly *et al.*, *Hybridoma* 6:359-369 (1987); Bringman, *et al.*, *Hybridoma* 6:489-507 (1987); and Hirai, *et al.*, *J. Immunol. Meth.* 96:57-62 (1987), which references are entirely incorporated herein by reference).

#### TNF Receptor Molecules

Preferred TNF receptor molecules useful in the present invention are those that bind TNF $\alpha$  with high affinity (see, e.g., Feldmann *et al.*, International Publication No. WO 92/07076 (published April 30, 1992); Schall *et al.*, *Cell* 61:361-370 (1990); and Loetscher *et al.*, *Cell* 61:351-359 (1990), which references are entirely incorporated herein by reference) and optionally possess low immunogenicity. In particular, the 55 kDa (p55 TNF-R) and the 75 kDa (p75 TNF-R) TNF cell surface receptors are useful in the present invention. Truncated forms of these receptors, comprising the extracellular domains (ECD) of the receptors or functional portions thereof (see, e.g., Corcoran *et al.*, *Eur. J. Biochem.* 223:831-840 (1994)), are also useful in the present invention. Truncated forms of the TNF receptors, comprising the ECD, have been detected in urine and serum as 30 kDa and 40 kDa TNF $\alpha$  inhibitory binding proteins (Engelmann, H. *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 265:1531-1536 (1990)). TNF receptor multimeric molecules and TNF immunoreceptor fusion molecules, and derivatives and fragments or portions thereof, are additional examples of TNF receptor molecules which are useful in the methods and compositions of the present invention. The TNF receptor molecules which can be used in the invention are characterized by their ability to treat patients for extended periods with good to excellent alleviation of symptoms and low toxicity. Low immunogenicity and/or high affinity, as well as other undefined properties, can contribute to the therapeutic results achieved.

TNF receptor multimeric molecules useful in the present invention comprise all or a functional portion of the ECD of two or more TNF receptors linked via one or more polypeptide linkers or other nonpeptide linkers, such as polyethylene glycol (PEG). The multimeric molecules can further comprise a signal peptide of a secreted protein to direct

expression of the multimeric molecule. These multimeric molecules and methods for their production have been described in U.S. Application No. 08/437,533 (filed May 9, 1995), the content of which is entirely incorporated herein by reference.

- TNF immunoreceptor fusion molecules useful in the methods and compositions of the  
5 present invention comprise at least one portion of one or more immunoglobulin molecules and all or a functional portion of one or more TNF receptors. These immunoreceptor fusion molecules can be assembled as monomers, or hetero- or homo-multimers. The immunoreceptor fusion molecules can also be monovalent or multivalent. An example of such a TNF immunoreceptor fusion molecule is TNF receptor/IgG fusion protein. TNF  
10 immunoreceptor fusion molecules and methods for their production have been described in the art (Lesslauer *et al.*, *Eur. J. Immunol.* 21:2883-2886 (1991); Ashkenazi *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 88:10535-10539 (1991); Peppel *et al.*, *J. Exp. Med.* 174:1483-1489 (1991); Kolls *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 91:215-219 (1994); Butler *et al.*, *Cytokine* 6(6):616-623 (1994); Baker *et al.*, *Eur. J. Immunol.* 24:2040-2048 (1994); Beutler *et al.*, U.S. Patent No.  
15 5,447,851; and U.S. Application No. 08/442,133 (filed May 16, 1995), each of which references are entirely incorporated herein by reference). Methods for producing immunoreceptor fusion molecules can also be found in Capon *et al.*, U.S. Patent No. 5,116,964; Capon *et al.*, U.S. Patent No. 5,225,538; and Capon *et al.*, *Nature* 337:525-531 (1989), which references are entirely incorporated herein by reference.  
20 A functional equivalent, derivative, fragment or region of TNF receptor molecule refers to the portion of the TNF receptor molecule, or the portion of the TNF receptor molecule sequence which encodes TNF receptor molecule, that is of sufficient size and sequences to functionally resemble TNF receptor molecules that can be used in the present invention (e.g., bind TNF with high affinity and possess low immunogenicity). A functional equivalent of  
25 TNF receptor molecule also includes modified TNF receptor molecules that functionally resemble TNF receptor molecules that can be used in the present invention (e.g., bind TNF with high affinity and possess low immunogenicity). For example, a functional equivalent of TNF receptor molecule can contain a "SILENT" codon or one or more amino acid substitutions, deletions or additions (e.g., substitution of one acidic amino acid for another  
30 acidic amino acid; or substitution of one codon encoding the same or different hydrophobic amino acid for another codon encoding a hydrophobic amino acid). See Ausubel *et al.*, *Current Protocols in Molecular Biology*, Greene Publishing Assoc. and Wiley-Interscience, New York (1987-2000).  
Cytokines include any known cytokine. See, e.g., CopewithCytokines.com. Cytokine  
35 antagonists include, but are not limited to, any antibody, fragment or mimetic, any soluble receptor, fragment or mimetic, any small molecule antagonist, or any combination thereof.

**Therapeutic Treatments.** Any method of the present invention can comprise a method for treating a TNF mediated disorder, comprising administering an effective amount of a composition or pharmaceutical composition comprising at least one anti-TNF antibody to a cell, tissue, organ, animal or patient in need of such modulation, treatment or therapy. Such a 5 method can optionally further comprise co-administration or combination therapy for treating such immune diseases, wherein the administering of said at least one anti-TNF antibody, specified portion or variant thereof, further comprises administering, before concurrently, and/or after, at least one selected from at least one at least one selected from at least one TNF antagonist (e.g., but not limited to a TNF antibody or fragment, a soluble TNF receptor or 10 fragment, fusion proteins thereof, or a small molecule TNF antagonist), an antirheumatic (e.g., methotrexate, auranofin, aurothioglucose, azathioprine, etanercept, gold sodium thiomalate, hydroxychloroquine sulfate, leflunomide, sulfasalzine), a muscle relaxant, a narcotic, a non-steroid anti-inflammatory drug (NSAID), an analgesic, an anesthetic, a sedative, a local 15 anesthetic, a neuromuscular blocker, an antimicrobial (e.g., aminoglycoside, an antifungal, an antiparasitic, an antiviral, a carbapenem, cephalosporin, a fluroquinolone, a macrolide, a penicillin, a sulfonamide, a tetracycline, another antimicrobial), an antipsoriatic, a corticosteroid, an anabolic steroid, a diabetes related agent, a mineral, a nutritional, a thyroid agent, a vitamin, a calcium related hormone, an antidiarrheal, an antitussive, an antiemetic, an antiulcer, a laxative, an anticoagulant, an erythropoietin (e.g., epoetin alpha), a filgrastim (e.g., 20 G-CSF, Neupogen), a sargramostim (GM-CSF, Leukine), an immunization, an immunoglobulin, an immunosuppressive (e.g., basiliximab, cyclosporine, daclizumab), a growth hormone, a hormone replacement drug, an estrogen receptor modulator, a mydriatic, a cycloplegic, an alkylating agent, an antimetabolite, a mitotic inhibitor, a radiopharmaceutical, an antidepressant, antimanic agent, an antipsychotic, an anxiolytic, a hypnotic, a 25 sympathomimetic, a stimulant, donepezil, tacrine, an asthma medication, a beta agonist, an inhaled steroid, a leukotriene inhibitor, a methylxanthine, a cromolyn, an epinephrine or analog, dornase alpha (Pulmozyme), a cytokine or a cytokine antagonist.

Typically, treatment of pathologic conditions is effected by administering an effective amount or dosage of at least one anti-TNF antibody composition that total, on average, a range 30 from at least about 0.01 to 500 milligrams of at least one anti-TNF antibody per kilogram of patient per dose, and preferably from at least about 0.1 to 100 milligrams antibody /kilogram of patient per single or multiple administration, depending upon the specific activity of contained in the composition. Alternatively, the effective serum concentration can comprise 0.1-5000 µg/ml serum concentration per single or multiple administration. Suitable dosages are known to medical 35 practitioners and will, of course, depend upon the particular disease state, specific activity of the composition being administered, and the particular patient undergoing treatment. In some

instances, to achieve the desired therapeutic amount, it can be necessary to provide for repeated administration, *i.e.*, repeated individual administrations of a particular monitored or metered dose, where the individual administrations are repeated until the desired daily dose or effect is achieved.

5 Preferred doses can optionally include 0.1, 0.2, 0.3, 0.4, 0.5, 0.6, 0.7, 0.8, 0.9, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39, 40, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 46, 47, 48, 49, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 62, 63, 64, 65, 66, 67, 68, 69, 70, 71, 72, 73, 74, 75, 76, 77, 78, 79, 80, 81, 82, 83, 84, 85, 86, 87, 88, 89, 90, 91, 92, 93, 94, 95, 96, 97, 98, 99 and/or 100-500 mg/kg/administration, or any  
10 range, value or fraction thereof, or to achieve a serum concentration of 0.1, 0.5, 0.9, 1.0, 1.1, 1.2, 1.5, 1.9, 2.0, 2.5, 2.9, 3.0, 3.5, 3.9, 4.0, 4.5, 4.9, 5.0, 5.5, 5.9, 6.0, 6.5, 6.9, 7.0, 7.5, 7.9, 8.0, 8.5, 8.9, 9.0, 9.5, 9.9, 10, 10.5, 10.9, 11, 11.5, 11.9, 20, 12.5, 12.9, 13.0, 13.5, 13.9, 14.0, 14.5, 4.9, 5.0, 5.5., 5.9, 6.0, 6.5, 6.9, 7.0, 7.5, 7.9, 8.0, 8.5, 8.9, 9.0, 9.5, 9.9, 10, 10.5, 10.9, 11, 11.5, 11.9, 12, 12.5, 12.9, 13.0, 13.5, 13.9, 14, 14.5, 15, 15.5, 15.9, 16, 16.5, 16.9, 17, 17.5, 17.9, 18, 18.5,  
15 18.9, 19, 19.5, 19.9, 20, 20.5, 20.9, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, 55, 60, 65, 70, 75, 80, 85, 90, 96, 100, 200, 300, 400, 500, 600, 700, 800, 900, 1000, 1500, 2000, 2500, 3000, 3500, 4000, 4500, and/or 5000 µg/ml serum concentration per single or multiple administration, or any range, value or fraction thereof.

Alternatively, the dosage administered can vary depending upon known factors, such  
20 as the pharmacodynamic characteristics of the particular agent, and its mode and route of administration; age, health, and weight of the recipient; nature and extent of symptoms, kind of concurrent treatment, frequency of treatment, and the effect desired. Usually a dosage of active ingredient can be about 0.1 to 100 milligrams per kilogram of body weight. Ordinarily 0.1 to 50, and preferably 0.1 to 10 milligrams per kilogram per administration or in sustained  
25 release form is effective to obtain desired results.

As a non-limiting example, treatment of humans or animals can be provided as a one-time or periodic dosage of at least one antibody of the present invention 0.1 to 100 mg/kg, such as 0.5, 0.9, 1.0, 1.1, 1.5, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 40, 45, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90 or 100 mg/kg, per day, on at least one  
30 of day 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39, or 40, or alternatively or additionally, at least one of week 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39, 40, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 46, 47, 48, 49, 50, 51, or 52, or alternatively or additionally, at least one of 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6,, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, or 20 years, or any combination thereof, using single, infusion or repeated doses.

Dosage forms (composition) suitable for internal administration generally contain from about 0.1 milligram to about 500 milligrams of active ingredient per unit or container. In these pharmaceutical compositions the active ingredient will ordinarily be present in an amount of about 0.5-99.999% by weight based on the total weight of the composition.

5       For parenteral administration, the antibody can be formulated as a solution, suspension, emulsion or lyophilized powder in association, or separately provided, with a pharmaceutically acceptable parenteral vehicle. Examples of such vehicles are water, saline, Ringer's solution, dextrose solution, and 1-10% human serum albumin. Liposomes and nonaqueous vehicles such as fixed oils can also be used. The vehicle or lyophilized powder  
10      can contain additives that maintain isotonicity (e.g., sodium chloride, mannitol) and chemical stability (e.g., buffers and preservatives). The formulation is sterilized by known or suitable techniques.

Suitable pharmaceutical carriers are described in the most recent edition of Remington's Pharmaceutical Sciences, A. Osol, a standard reference text in this field.

15      **Alternative Administration**

Many known and developed modes of can be used according to the present invention for administering pharmaceutically effective amounts of at least one anti-TNF antibody according to the present invention. While pulmonary administration is used in the following description, other modes of administration can be used according to the present invention with  
20      suitable results.

TNF antibodies of the present invention can be delivered in a carrier, as a solution, emulsion, colloid, or suspension, or as a dry powder, using any of a variety of devices and methods suitable for administration by inhalation or other modes described here within or known in the art.

25      **Parenteral Formulations and Administration**

Formulations for parenteral administration can contain as common excipients sterile water or saline, polyalkylene glycols such as polyethylene glycol, oils of vegetable origin, hydrogenated naphthalenes and the like. Aqueous or oily suspensions for injection can be prepared by using an appropriate emulsifier or humidifier and a suspending agent, according to  
30      known methods. Agents for injection can be a non-toxic, non-orally administrable diluting agent such as aqueous solution or a sterile injectable solution or suspension in a solvent. As the usable vehicle or solvent, water, Ringer's solution, isotonic saline, etc. are allowed; as an ordinary solvent, or suspending solvent, sterile involatile oil can be used. For these purposes, any kind of involatile oil and fatty acid can be used, including natural or synthetic or  
35      semisynthetic fatty oils or fatty acids; natural or synthetic or semisynthetic mono- or di- or tri-glycerides. Parental administration is known in the art and includes, but is not limited to,

conventional means of injections, a gas pressured needle-less injection device as described in U.S. Pat. No. 5,851,198, and a laser perforator device as described in U.S. Pat. No. 5,839,446 entirely incorporated herein by reference.

#### Alternative Delivery

5 The invention further relates to the administration of at least one anti-TNF antibody by parenteral, subcutaneous, intramuscular, intravenous, intrarticular, intrabronchial, intraabdominal, intracapsular, intracartilaginous, intracavitory, intracelial, intracelebellar, intracerebroventricular, intracolic, intracervical, intragastric, intrahepatic, intramyocardial, intraosteal, intrapelvic, intrapericardiac, intraperitoneal, intrapleural, intraprostatic, 10 intrapulmonary, intrarectal, intrarenal, intraretinal, intraspinal, intrasynovial, intrathoracic, intrauterine, intravesical, bolus, vaginal, rectal, buccal, sublingual, intranasal, or transdermal means. At least one anti-TNF antibody composition can be prepared for use for parenteral (subcutaneous, intramuscular or intravenous) or any other administration particularly in the form of liquid solutions or suspensions; for use in vaginal or rectal administration particularly 15 in semisolid forms such as, but not limited to, creams and suppositories; for buccal, or sublingual administration such as, but not limited to, in the form of tablets or capsules; or intranasally such as, but not limited to, the form of powders, nasal drops or aerosols or certain agents; or transdermally such as not limited to a gel, ointment, lotion, suspension or patch delivery system with chemical enhancers such as dimethyl sulfoxide to either modify the skin 20 structure or to increase the drug concentration in the transdermal patch (Junginger, et al. In "Drug Permeation Enhancement"; Hsieh, D. S., Eds., pp. 59-90 (Marcel Dekker, Inc. New York 1994, entirely incorporated herein by reference), or with oxidizing agents that enable the application of formulations containing proteins and peptides onto the skin (WO 98/53847), or applications of electric fields to create transient transport pathways such as electroporation, or 25 to increase the mobility of charged drugs through the skin such as iontophoresis, or application of ultrasound such as sonophoresis (U.S. Pat. Nos. 4,309,989 and 4,767,402) (the above publications and patents being entirely incorporated herein by reference).

#### Pulmonary/Nasal Administration

For pulmonary administration, preferably at least one anti-TNF antibody composition 30 is delivered in a particle size effective for reaching the lower airways of the lung or sinuses. According to the invention, at least one anti-TNF antibody can be delivered by any of a variety of inhalation or nasal devices known in the art for administration of a therapeutic agent by inhalation. These devices capable of depositing aerosolized formulations in the sinus cavity or alveoli of a patient include metered dose inhalers, nebulizers, dry powder generators, sprayers, 35 and the like. Other devices suitable for directing the pulmonary or nasal administration of antibodies are also known in the art. All such devices can use of formulations suitable for the

administration for the dispensing of antibody in an aerosol. Such aerosols can be comprised of either solutions (both aqueous and non aqueous) or solid particles. Metered dose inhalers like the Ventolin® metered dose inhaler, typically use a propellant gas and require actuation during inspiration (See, e.g., WO 94/16970, WO 98/35888). Dry powder inhalers like Turbuhaler™ 5 (Astra), Rotahaler® (Glaxo), Diskus® (Glaxo), Spiros™ inhaler (Dura), devices marketed by Inhale Therapeutics, and the Spinhaler® powder inhaler (Fisons), use breath-actuation of a mixed powder (US 4668218 Astra, EP 237507 Astra, WO 97/25086 Glaxo, WO 94/08552 Dura, US 5458135 Inhale, WO 94/06498 Fisons, entirely incorporated herein by reference). Nebulizers like AERx™ Aradigm, the Ultravent® nebulizer (Mallinckrodt), and the Acorn II® 10 nebulizer (Marquest Medical Products) (US 5404871 Aradigm, WO 97/22376), the above references entirely incorporated herein by reference, produce aerosols from solutions, while metered dose inhalers, dry powder inhalers, etc. generate small particle aerosols. These specific examples of commercially available inhalation devices are intended to be a representative of specific devices suitable for the practice of this invention, and are not 15 intended as limiting the scope of the invention. Preferably, a composition comprising at least one anti-TNF antibody is delivered by a dry powder inhaler or a sprayer. There are several desirable features of an inhalation device for administering at least one antibody of the present invention. For example, delivery by the inhalation device is advantageously reliable, reproducible, and accurate. The inhalation device can optionally deliver small dry particles, 20 e.g. less than about 10 µm, preferably about 1-5 µm, for good respirability.

#### **Administration of TNF antibody Compositions as a Spray**

A spray including TNF antibody composition protein can be produced by forcing a suspension or solution of at least one anti-TNF antibody through a nozzle under pressure. The nozzle size and configuration, the applied pressure, and the liquid feed rate can be chosen to 25 achieve the desired output and particle size. An electrospray can be produced, for example, by an electric field in connection with a capillary or nozzle feed. Advantageously, particles of at least one anti-TNF antibody composition protein delivered by a sprayer have a particle size less than about 10 µm, preferably in the range of about 1 µm to about 5 µm, and most preferably about 2 µm to about 3 µm.

30 Formulations of at least one anti-TNF antibody composition protein suitable for use with a sprayer typically include antibody composition protein in an aqueous solution at a concentration of about 0.1 mg to about 100 mg of at least one anti-TNF antibody composition protein per ml of solution or mg/gm, or any range or value therein, e.g., but not limited to, .1, .2, .3, .4, .5, .6, .7, .8, .9, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 35 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 40, 45, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90 or 100 mg/ml or mg/gm. The formulation can include agents such as an excipient, a buffer, an isotonicity agent, a

preservative, a surfactant, and, preferably, zinc. The formulation can also include an excipient or agent for stabilization of the antibody composition protein, such as a buffer, a reducing agent, a bulk protein, or a carbohydrate. Bulk proteins useful in formulating antibody composition proteins include albumin, protamine, or the like. Typical carbohydrates useful in 5 formulating antibody composition proteins include sucrose, mannitol, lactose, trehalose, glucose, or the like. The antibody composition protein formulation can also include a surfactant, which can reduce or prevent surface-induced aggregation of the antibody composition protein caused by atomization of the solution in forming an aerosol. Various conventional surfactants can be employed, such as polyoxyethylene fatty acid esters and 10 alcohols, and polyoxyethylene sorbitol fatty acid esters. Amounts will generally range between 0.001 and 14% by weight of the formulation. Especially preferred surfactants for purposes of this invention are polyoxyethylene sorbitan monooleate, polysorbate 80, polysorbate 20, or the like. Additional agents known in the art for formulation of a protein such as TNF antibodies, or specified portions or variants, can also be included in the 15 formulation.

#### **Administration of TNF antibody compositions by a Nebulizer**

antibody composition protein can be administered by a nebulizer, such as jet nebulizer or an ultrasonic nebulizer. Typically, in a jet nebulizer, a compressed air source is used to create a high-velocity air jet through an orifice. As the gas expands beyond the nozzle, a low-pressure region is created, which draws a solution of antibody composition protein through a 20 capillary tube connected to a liquid reservoir. The liquid stream from the capillary tube is sheared into unstable filaments and droplets as it exits the tube, creating the aerosol. A range of configurations, flow rates, and baffle types can be employed to achieve the desired performance characteristics from a given jet nebulizer. In an ultrasonic nebulizer, high- 25 frequency electrical energy is used to create vibrational, mechanical energy, typically employing a piezoelectric transducer. This energy is transmitted to the formulation of antibody composition protein either directly or through a coupling fluid, creating an aerosol including the antibody composition protein. Advantageously, particles of antibody composition protein delivered by a nebulizer have a particle size less than about 10  $\mu\text{m}$ , 30 preferably in the range of about 1  $\mu\text{m}$  to about 5  $\mu\text{m}$ , and most preferably about 2  $\mu\text{m}$  to about 3  $\mu\text{m}$ .

Formulations of at least one anti-TNF antibody suitable for use with a nebulizer, either jet or ultrasonic, typically include a concentration of about 0.1 mg to about 100 mg of at least one anti-TNF antibody protein per ml of solution. The formulation can include agents such as 35 an excipient, a buffer, an isotonicity agent, a preservative, a surfactant, and, preferably, zinc. The formulation can also include an excipient or agent for stabilization of the at least one anti-

TNF antibody composition protein, such as a buffer, a reducing agent, a bulk protein, or a carbohydrate. Bulk proteins useful in formulating at least one anti-TNF antibody composition proteins include albumin, protamine, or the like. Typical carbohydrates useful in formulating at least one anti-TNF antibody include sucrose, mannitol, lactose, trehalose, glucose, or the like. The at least one anti-TNF antibody formulation can also include a surfactant, which can reduce or prevent surface-induced aggregation of the at least one anti-TNF antibody caused by atomization of the solution in forming an aerosol. Various conventional surfactants can be employed, such as polyoxyethylene fatty acid esters and alcohols, and polyoxyethylene sorbital fatty acid esters. Amounts will generally range between 0.001 and 4% by weight of the formulation. Especially preferred surfactants for purposes of this invention are polyoxyethylene sorbitan mono-oleate, polysorbate 80, polysorbate 20, or the like. Additional agents known in the art for formulation of a protein such as antibody protein can also be included in the formulation.

**Administration of TNF antibody compositions By A Metered Dose Inhaler**

In a metered dose inhaler (MDI), a propellant, at least one anti-TNF antibody, and any excipients or other additives are contained in a canister as a mixture including a liquefied compressed gas. Actuation of the metering valve releases the mixture as an aerosol, preferably containing particles in the size range of less than about 10  $\mu\text{m}$ , preferably about 1  $\mu\text{m}$  to about 5  $\mu\text{m}$ , and most preferably about 2  $\mu\text{m}$  to about 3  $\mu\text{m}$ . The desired aerosol particle size can be obtained by employing a formulation of antibody composition protein produced by various methods known to those of skill in the art, including jet-milling, spray drying, critical point condensation, or the like. Preferred metered dose inhalers include those manufactured by 3M or Glaxo and employing a hydrofluorocarbon propellant.

Formulations of at least one anti-TNF antibody for use with a metered-dose inhaler device will generally include a finely divided powder containing at least one anti-TNF antibody as a suspension in a non-aqueous medium, for example, suspended in a propellant with the aid of a surfactant. The propellant can be any conventional material employed for this purpose, such as chlorofluorocarbon, a hydrochlorofluorocarbon, a hydrofluorocarbon, or a hydrocarbon, including trichlorofluoromethane, dichlorodifluoromethane, dichlorotetrafluoroethanol and 1,1,1,2-tetrafluoroethane, HFA-134a (hydrofluoroalkane-134a), HFA-227 (hydrofluoroalkane-227), or the like. Preferably the propellant is a hydrofluorocarbon. The surfactant can be chosen to stabilize the at least one anti-TNF antibody as a suspension in the propellant, to protect the active agent against chemical degradation, and the like. Suitable surfactants include sorbitan trioleate, soya lecithin, oleic acid, or the like. In some cases solution aerosols are preferred using solvents such as ethanol.

Additional agents known in the art for formulation of a protein such as protein can also be included in the formulation.

One of ordinary skill in the art will recognize that the methods of the current invention can be achieved by pulmonary administration of at least one anti-TNF antibody compositions  
5 via devices not described herein.

#### Oral Formulations and Administration

Formulations for oral rely on the co-administration of adjuvants (e.g., resorcinols and nonionic surfactants such as polyoxyethylene oleyl ether and n-hexadecylpolyethylene ether) to increase artificially the permeability of the intestinal walls, as well as the co-administration  
10 of enzymatic inhibitors (e.g., pancreatic trypsin inhibitors, diisopropylfluorophosphate (DFF) and trasylool) to inhibit enzymatic degradation. The active constituent compound of the solid-type dosage form for oral administration can be mixed with at least one additive, including sucrose, lactose, cellulose, mannitol, trehalose, raffinose, maltitol, dextran, starches, agar, arginates, chitins, chitosans, pectins, gum tragacanth, gum arabic, gelatin, collagen, casein,  
15 albumin, synthetic or semisynthetic polymer, and glyceride. These dosage forms can also contain other type(s) of additives, e.g., inactive diluting agent, lubricant such as magnesium stearate, paraben, preserving agent such as sorbic acid, ascorbic acid, .alpha.-tocopherol, antioxidant such as cysteine, disintegrator, binder, thickener, buffering agent, sweetening agent, flavoring agent, perfuming agent, etc.

20 Tablets and pills can be further processed into enteric-coated preparations. The liquid preparations for oral administration include emulsion, syrup, elixir, suspension and solution preparations allowable for medical use. These preparations can contain inactive diluting agents ordinarily used in said field, e.g., water. Liposomes have also been described as drug delivery systems for insulin and heparin (U.S. Pat. No. 4,239,754). More recently, microspheres of  
25 artificial polymers of mixed amino acids (proteinoids) have been used to deliver pharmaceuticals (U.S. Pat. No. 4,925,673). Furthermore, carrier compounds described in U.S. Pat. No. 5,879,681 and U.S. Pat. No. 5,5,871,753 are used to deliver biologically active agents orally are known in the art.

#### Mucosal Formulations and Administration

30 For absorption through mucosal surfaces, compositions and methods of administering at least one anti-TNF antibody include an emulsion comprising a plurality of submicron particles, a mucoadhesive macromolecule, a bioactive peptide, and an aqueous continuous phase, which promotes absorption through mucosal surfaces by achieving mucoadhesion of the emulsion particles (U.S. Pat. Nos. 5,514,670). Mucous surfaces suitable for application of the  
35 emulsions of the present invention can include corneal, conjunctival, buccal, sublingual, nasal, vaginal, pulmonary, stomachic, intestinal, and rectal routes of administration. Formulations

for vaginal or rectal administration, e.g. suppositories, can contain as excipients, for example, polyalkyleneglycols, vaseline, cocoa butter, and the like. Formulations for intranasal administration can be solid and contain as excipients, for example, lactose or can be aqueous or oily solutions of nasal drops. For buccal administration excipients include sugars, calcium stearate, magnesium stearate, pregelatinated starch, and the like (U.S. Pat. Nos. 5,849,695).

#### 5      **Transdermal Formulations and Administration**

For transdermal administration, the at least one anti-TNF antibody is encapsulated in a delivery device such as a liposome or polymeric nanoparticles, microparticle, microcapsule, or microspheres (referred to collectively as microparticles unless otherwise stated). A number of 10 suitable devices are known, including microparticles made of synthetic polymers such as polyhydroxy acids such as polylactic acid, polyglycolic acid and copolymers thereof, polyorthoesters, polyanhydrides, and polyphosphazenes, and natural polymers such as collagen, polyamino acids, albumin and other proteins, alginate and other polysaccharides, and combinations thereof (U.S. Pat. Nos. 5,814,599).

15     **Prolonged Administration and Formulations**

It can be sometimes desirable to deliver the compounds of the present invention to the subject over prolonged periods of time, for example, for periods of one week to one year from a single administration. Various slow release, depot or implant dosage forms can be utilized. For example, a dosage form can contain a pharmaceutically acceptable non-toxic salt of the 20 compounds that has a low degree of solubility in body fluids, for example, (a) an acid addition salt with a polybasic acid such as phosphoric acid, sulfuric acid, citric acid, tartaric acid, tannic acid, pamoic acid, alginic acid, polyglutamic acid, naphthalene mono- or di-sulfonic acids, polygalacturonic acid, and the like; (b) a salt with a polyvalent metal cation such as zinc, calcium, bismuth, barium, magnesium, aluminum, copper, cobalt, nickel, cadmium and the 25 like, or with an organic cation formed from e.g., N,N'-dibenzyl-ethylenediamine or ethylenediamine; or (c) combinations of (a) and (b) e.g. a zinc tannate salt. Additionally, the compounds of the present invention or, preferably, a relatively insoluble salt such as those just described, can be formulated in a gel, for example, an aluminum monostearate gel with, e.g. sesame oil, suitable for injection. Particularly preferred salts are zinc salts, zinc tannate salts, 30 pamoate salts, and the like. Another type of slow release depot formulation for injection would contain the compound or salt dispersed for encapsulated in a slow degrading, non-toxic, non-antigenic polymer such as a polylactic acid/polyglycolic acid polymer for example as described in U.S. Pat. No. 3,773,919. The compounds or, preferably, relatively insoluble salts such as those described above can also be formulated in cholesterol matrix silastic pellets, 35 particularly for use in animals. Additional slow release, depot or implant formulations, e.g. gas or liquid liposomes are known in the literature (U.S. Pat. Nos. 5,770,222 and "Sustained and

Controlled Release Drug Delivery Systems", J. R. Robinson ed., Marcel Dekker, Inc., N.Y., 1978).

Having generally described the invention, the same will be more readily understood by 5 reference to the following examples, which are provided by way of illustration and are not intended as limiting.

**Example 1: Cloning and Expression of TNF antibody in Mammalian Cells**

10 A typical mammalian expression vector contains at least one promoter element, which mediates the initiation of transcription of mRNA, the antibody coding sequence, and signals required for the termination of transcription and polyadenylation of the transcript. Additional elements include enhancers, Kozak sequences and intervening sequences flanked by donor and acceptor sites for RNA splicing. Highly efficient transcription can be achieved with the early 15 and late promoters from SV40, the long terminal repeats (LTRS) from Retroviruses, e.g., RSV, HTLV1, HIV1 and the early promoter of the cytomegalovirus (CMV). However, cellular elements can also be used (e.g., the human actin promoter). Suitable expression vectors for use in practicing the present invention include, for example, vectors such as pIRES1neo, pRetro-Off, pRetro-On, PLXSN, or pLNCX (Clonetech Labs, Palo Alto, CA), pcDNA3.1 (+/-), 20 pcDNA/Zeo (+/-) or pcDNA3.1/Hygro (+/-) (Invitrogen), PSVL and PMSG (Pharmacia, Uppsala, Sweden), pRSVcat (ATCC 37152), pSV2dhfr (ATCC 37146) and pBC12MI (ATCC 67109). Mammalian host cells that could be used include human Hela 293, H9 and Jurkat cells, mouse NIH3T3 and C127 cells, Cos 1, Cos 7 and CV 1, quail QC1-3 cells, mouse L cells and Chinese hamster ovary (CHO) cells.

25 Alternatively, the gene can be expressed in stable cell lines that contain the gene integrated into a chromosome. The co-transfection with a selectable marker such as dhfr, gpt, neomycin, or hygromycin allows the identification and isolation of the transfected cells.

The transfected gene can also be amplified to express large amounts of the encoded 30 antibody. The DHFR (dihydrofolate reductase) marker is useful to develop cell lines that carry several hundred or even several thousand copies of the gene of interest. Another useful selection marker is the enzyme glutamine synthase (GS) (Murphy, et al., Biochem. J. 227:277-279 (1991); Bebbington, et al., Bio/Technology 10:169-175 (1992)). Using these markers, the mammalian cells are grown in selective medium and the cells with the highest resistance are selected. These cell lines contain the amplified gene(s) integrated into a chromosome. Chinese 35 hamster ovary (CHO) and NSO cells are often used for the production of antibodies.

The expression vectors pC1 and pC4 contain the strong promoter (LTR) of the Rous Sarcoma Virus (Cullen, et al., Molec. Cell. Biol. 5:438-447 (1985)) plus a fragment of the

CMV-enhancer (Boshart, et al., Cell 41:521-530 (1985)). Multiple cloning sites, e.g., with the restriction enzyme cleavage sites BamHI, XbaI and Asp718, facilitate the cloning of the gene of interest. The vectors contain in addition the 3' intron, the polyadenylation and termination signal of the rat preproinsulin gene.

## 5 Cloning and Expression in CHO Cells

The vector pC4 is used for the expression of TNF antibody. Plasmid pC4 is a derivative of the plasmid pSV2-dhfr (ATCC Accession No. 37146). The plasmid contains the mouse DHFR gene under control of the SV40 early promoter. Chinese hamster ovary- or other cells lacking dihydrofolate activity that are transfected with these plasmids can be selected by 10 growing the cells in a selective medium (e.g., alpha minus MEM, Life Technologies, Gaithersburg, MD) supplemented with the chemotherapeutic agent methotrexate. The amplification of the DHFR genes in cells resistant to methotrexate (MTX) has been well documented (see, e.g., F. W. Alt, et al., J. Biol. Chem. 253:1357-1370 (1978); J. L. Hamlin and C. Ma, Biochem. et Biophys. Acta 1097:107-143 (1990); and M. J. Page and M. A. Sydenham, 15 Biotechnology 9:64-68 (1991)). Cells grown in increasing concentrations of MTX develop resistance to the drug by overproducing the target enzyme, DHFR, as a result of amplification of the DHFR gene. If a second gene is linked to the DHFR gene, it is usually co-amplified and over-expressed. It is known in the art that this approach can be used to develop cell lines carrying more than 1,000 copies of the amplified gene(s). Subsequently, when the 20 methotrexate is withdrawn, cell lines are obtained that contain the amplified gene integrated into one or more chromosome(s) of the host cell.

Plasmid pC4 contains for expressing the gene of interest the strong promoter of the long terminal repeat (LTR) of the Rous Sarcoma Virus (Cullen, et al., Molec. Cell. Biol. 5:438-447 (1985)) plus a fragment isolated from the enhancer of the immediate early gene of 25 human cytomegalovirus (CMV) (Boshart, et al., Cell 41:521-530 (1985)). Downstream of the promoter are BamHI, XbaI, and Asp718 restriction enzyme cleavage sites that allow integration of the genes. Behind these cloning sites the plasmid contains the 3' intron and polyadenylation site of the rat preproinsulin gene. Other high efficiency promoters can also be used for the expression, e.g., the human b-actin promoter, the SV40 early or late promoters or 30 the long terminal repeats from other retroviruses, e.g., HIV and HTLV. Clontech's Tet-Off and Tet-On gene expression systems and similar systems can be used to express the TNF in a regulated way in mammalian cells (M. Gossen, and H. Bujard, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 89: 5547-5551 (1992)). For the polyadenylation of the mRNA other signals, e.g., from the human growth hormone or globin genes can be used as well. Stable cell lines carrying a gene of 35 interest integrated into the chromosomes can also be selected upon co-transfection with a

selectable marker such as gpt, G418 or hygromycin. It is advantageous to use more than one selectable marker in the beginning, e.g., G418 plus methotrexate.

The plasmid pC4 is digested with restriction enzymes and then dephosphorylated using calf intestinal phosphatase by procedures known in the art. The vector is then isolated  
5 from a 1% agarose gel.

The isolated variable and constant region encoding DNA and the dephosphorylated vector are then ligated with T4 DNA ligase. E. coli HB101 or XL-1 Blue cells are then transformed and bacteria are identified that contain the fragment inserted into plasmid pC4 using, for instance, restriction enzyme analysis.

10 Chinese hamster ovary (CHO) cells lacking an active DHFR gene are used for transfection. 5 g of the expression plasmid pC4 is cotransfected with 0.5 g of the plasmid pSV2-neo using lipofectin. The plasmid pSV2neo contains a dominant selectable marker, the neo gene from Tn5 encoding an enzyme that confers resistance to a group of antibiotics including G418. The cells are seeded in alpha minus MEM supplemented with 1 g /ml  
15 G418. After 2 days, the cells are trypsinized and seeded in hybridoma cloning plates (Greiner, Germany) in alpha minus MEM supplemented with 10, 25, or 50 ng/ml of methotrexate plus 1 g /ml G418. After about 10-14 days single clones are trypsinized and then seeded in 6-well petri dishes or 10 ml flasks using different concentrations of methotrexate (50 nM, 100 nM, 200 nM, 400 nM, 800 nM). Clones growing at the highest concentrations of methotrexate are  
20 then transferred to new 6-well plates containing even higher concentrations of methotrexate (1 mM, 2 mM, 5 mM, 10 mM, 20 mM). The same procedure is repeated until clones are obtained that grow at a concentration of 100 - 200 mM. Expression of the desired gene product is analyzed, for instance, by SDS-PAGE and Western blot or by reverse phase HPLC analysis.  
25 **Example 2: Generation of High Affinity Human IgG Monoclonal Antibodies Reactive With Human TNF Using Transgenic Mice**

### Summary

Transgenic mice have been used that contain human heavy and light chain  
30 immunoglobulin genes to generate high affinity, completely human, monoclonal antibodies that can be used therapeutically to inhibit the action of TNF for the treatment of one or more TNF-mediated disease. (CBA/J x C57/BL6/J) F<sub>2</sub> hybrid mice containing human variable and constant region antibody transgenes for both heavy and light chains are immunized with human recombinant TNF (Taylor et al., Intl. Immunol. 6:579-591 (1993); Lonberg, et al.,  
35 Nature 368:856-859 (1994); Neuberger, M., Nature Biotech. 14:826 (1996); Fishwild, et al., Nature Biotechnology 14:845-851 (1996)). Several fusions yielded one or more panels of completely human TNF reactive IgG monoclonal antibodies. The completely human anti-TNF

antibodies are further characterized. All are IgG1 . Such antibodies are found to have affinity constants somewhere between  $1 \times 10^9$  and  $9 \times 10^{12}$ . The unexpectedly high affinities of these fully human monoclonal antibodies make them suitable candidates for therapeutic applications in TNF related diseases, pathologies or disorders.

## 5 Abbreviations

- BSA - bovine serum albumin  
CO<sub>2</sub> - carbon dioxide  
DMSO - dimethyl sulfoxide  
EIA - enzyme immunoassay  
10 FBS - fetal bovine serum  
H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> - hydrogen peroxide  
HRP - horseradish peroxidase\\  
ID - interadermal  
Ig - immunoglobulin  
15 TNF - tissue necrosis factor alpha  
IP - intraperitoneal  
IV - intravenous  
Mab - monoclonal antibody  
OD - optical density  
20 OPD - o-Phenylenediamine dihydrochloride  
PEG - polyethylene glycol  
PSA - penicillin, streptomycin, amphotericin  
RT - room temperature  
SQ - subcutaneous  
25 v/v - volume per volume  
w/v - weight per volume

## Materials and Methods

### Animals

- 30 Transgenic mice that can express human antibodies are known in the art (and are commercially available (e.g., from GenPharm International, San Jose, CA; Abgenix, Freemont, CA, and others) that express human immunoglobulins but not mouse IgM or Ig . For example, such transgenic mice contain human sequence transgenes that undergo *V(D)J* joining, heavy-chain class switching, and somatic mutation to generate a repertoire of human sequence 35 immunoglobulins (Lonberg, et al., Nature 368:856-859 (1994)). The light chain transgene can be derived, e.g., in part from a yeast artificial chromosome clone that includes nearly half of the germline human V region. In addition, the heavy-chain transgene can encode both human  $\mu$  and human  $\gamma$  1(Fishwild, et al., Nature Biotechnology 14:845-851 (1996)) and/or 3 constant regions. Mice derived from appropriate genotypic lineages can be used in the 40 immunization and fusion processes to generate fully human monoclonal antibodies to TNF.

### Immunization

One or more immunization schedules can be used to generate the anti-TNF human hybridomas. The first several fusions can be performed after the following exemplary

immunization protocol, but other similar known protocols can be used. Several 14-20 week old female and/or surgically castrated transgenic male mice are immunized IP and/or ID with 1-1000 µg of recombinant human TNF emulsified with an equal volume of TITERMAX or complete Freund's adjuvant in a final volume of 100-400 µL (e.g., 200). Each mouse can also 5 optionally receive 1-10 µg in 100 µL physiological saline at each of 2 SQ sites. The mice can then be immunized 1-7, 5-12, 10-18, 17-25 and/or 21-34 days later IP (1-400 µg) and SQ (1-400 µg x 2) with TNF emulsified with an equal volume of TITERMAX or incomplete Freund's adjuvant. Mice can be bled 12-25 and 25-40 days later by retro-orbital puncture without anti-coagulant. The blood is then allowed to clot at RT for one hour and the serum is 10 collected and titered using an TNF EIA assay according to known methods. Fusions are performed when repeated injections do not cause titers to increase. At that time, the mice can be given a final IV booster injection of 1-400 µg TNF diluted in 100 µL physiological saline. Three days later, the mice can be euthanized by cervical dislocation and the spleens removed 15 aseptically and immersed in 10 mL of cold phosphate buffered saline (PBS) containing 100 U/mL penicillin, 100 µg/mL streptomycin, and 0.25 µg/mL amphotericin B (PSA). The splenocytes are harvested by sterilely perfusing the spleen with PSA-PBS. The cells are washed once in cold PSA-PBS, counted using Trypan blue dye exclusion and resuspended in RPMI 1640 media containing 25 mM Hepes.

#### Cell Fusion

20 Fusion can be carried out at a 1:1 to 1:10 ratio of murine myeloma cells to viable spleen cells according to known methods, e.g., as known in the art. As a non-limiting example, spleen cells and myeloma cells can be pelleted together. The pellet can then be slowly resuspended, over 30 seconds, in 1 mL of 50% (w/v) PEG/PBS solution (PEG molecular weight 1,450, Sigma) at 37 °C. The fusion can then be stopped by slowly adding 25 10.5 mL of RPMI 1640 medium containing 25 mM Hepes (37 °C) over 1 minute. The fused cells are centrifuged for 5 minutes at 500-1500 rpm. The cells are then resuspended in HAT medium (RPMI 1640 medium containing 25 mM Hepes, 10% Fetal Clone I serum (Hyclone), 1 mM sodium pyruvate, 4 mM L-glutamine, 10 µg/mL gentamicin, 2.5% Origin culturing supplement (Fisher), 10% 653-conditioned RPMI 1640/Hepes media, 50 µM 30 2-mercaptoethanol, 100 µM hypoxanthine, 0.4 µM aminopterin, and 16 µM thymidine) and then plated at 200 µL/well in fifteen 96-well flat bottom tissue culture plates. The plates are then placed in a humidified 37 °C incubator containing 5% CO<sub>2</sub> and 95% air for 7-10 days.

#### Detection of Human IgG Anti-TNF Antibodies in Mouse Serum

Solid phase EIA's can be used to screen mouse sera for human IgG antibodies specific 35 for human TNF. Briefly, plates can be coated with TNF at 2 µg/mL in PBS overnight. After washing in 0.15M saline containing 0.02% (v/v) Tween 20, the wells can be blocked with 1%

(w/v) BSA in PBS, 200 µL/well for 1 hour at RT. Plates are used immediately or frozen at -20 C for future use. Mouse serum dilutions are incubated on the TNF coated plates at 50 µL/well at RT for 1 hour. The plates are washed and then probed with 50 µL/well HRP-labeled goat anti-human IgG, Fc specific diluted 1:30,000 in 1% BSA-PBS for 1 hour at RT. The plates 5 can again be washed and 100 µL/well of the citrate-phosphate substrate solution (0.1M citric acid and 0.2M sodium phosphate, 0.01% H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> and 1 mg/mL OPD) is added for 15 minutes at RT. Stop solution (4N sulfuric acid) is then added at 25 µL/well and the OD's are read at 490 nm via an automated plate spectrophotometer.

#### Detection of Completely Human Immunoglobulins in Hybridoma Supernates

10 Growth positive hybridomas secreting fully human immunoglobulins can be detected using a suitable EIA. Briefly, 96 well pop-out plates (VWR, 610744) can be coated with 10 µg/mL goat anti-human IgG Fc in sodium carbonate buffer overnight at 4 C. The plates are washed and blocked with 1% BSA-PBS for one hour at 37°C and used immediately or frozen at -20 C. Undiluted hybridoma supernatants are incubated on the plates for one hour at 37°C. 15 The plates are washed and probed with HRP labeled goat anti-human kappa diluted 1:10,000 in 1% BSA-PBS for one hour at 37°C. The plates are then incubated with substrate solution as described above.

#### Determination of Fully Human Anti-TNF Reactivity

Hybridomas, as above, can be simultaneously assayed for reactivity to TNF using a 20 suitable RIA or other assay. For example, supernatants are incubated on goat anti-human IgG Fc plates as above, washed and then probed with radiolabeled TNF with appropriate counts per well for 1 hour at RT. The wells are washed twice with PBS and bound radiolabeled TNF is quantitated using a suitable counter.

Human IgG1 anti-TNF secreting hybridomas can be expanded in cell culture and 25 serially subcloned by limiting dilution. The resulting clonal populations can be expanded and cryopreserved in freezing medium (95% FBS, 5% DMSO) and stored in liquid nitrogen.

#### Isotyping

Isotype determination of the antibodies can be accomplished using an EIA in a format similar to that used to screen the mouse immune sera for specific titers. TNF can be coated on 30 96-well plates as described above and purified antibody at 2 µg/mL can be incubated on the plate for one hour at RT. The plate is washed and probed with HRP labeled goat anti-human IgG<sub>1</sub> or HRP labeled goat anti-human IgG<sub>3</sub> diluted at 1:4000 in 1% BSA-PBS for one hour at RT. The plate is again washed and incubated with substrate solution as described above.

#### Binding Kinetics of Human Anti-Human TNF Antibodies With Human TNF

35 Binding characteristics for antibodies can be suitably assessed using an TNF capture EIA and BIACore technology, for example. Graded concentrations of purified human TNF

antibodies can be assessed for binding to EIA plates coated with 2 µg/mL of TNF in assays as described above. The OD's can be then presented as semi-log plots showing relative binding efficiencies.

Quantitative binding constants can be obtained, e.g., as follows, or by any other known  
5 suitable method. A BIACore CM-5 (carboxymethyl) chip is placed in a BIACore 2000 unit. HBS buffer (0.01 M HEPES, 0.15 M NaCl, 3 mM EDTA, 0.005% v/v P20 surfactant, pH 7.4) is flowed over a flow cell of the chip at 5 µL/minute until a stable baseline is obtained. A solution (100 µL) of 15 mg of EDC (N-ethyl-N'-(3-dimethyl-aminopropyl)-carbodiimide hydrochloride) in 200 µL water is added to 100 µL of a solution of 2.3 mg of NHS  
10 (N-hydroxysuccinimide) in 200 µL water. Forty (40) µL of the resulting solution is injected onto the chip. Six µL of a solution of human TNF (15 µg/mL in 10 mM sodium acetate, pH 4.8) is injected onto the chip, resulting in an increase of ca. 500 RU. The buffer is changed to TBS/Ca/Mg/BSA running buffer (20 mM Tris, 0.15 M sodium chloride, 2 mM calcium chloride, 2 mM magnesium acetate, 0.5% Triton X-100, 25 µg/mL BSA, pH 7.4) and flowed  
15 over the chip overnight to equilibrate it and to hydrolyze or cap any unreacted succinimide esters.

Antibodies are dissolved in the running buffer at 33.33, 16.67, 8.33, and 4.17 nM. The flow rate is adjusted to 30 µL/min and the instrument temperature to 25 °C. Two flow cells are used for the kinetic runs, one on which TNF had been immobilized (sample) and a second,  
20 underivatized flow cell (blank). 120 µL of each antibody concentration is injected over the flow cells at 30 µL/min (association phase) followed by an uninterrupted 360 seconds of buffer flow (dissociation phase). The surface of the chip is regenerated (tissue necrosis factor alpha /antibody complex dissociated) by two sequential injections of 30 µL each of 2 M guanidine thiocyanate.

25 Analysis of the data is done using BIA evaluation 3.0 or CLAMP 2.0, as known in the art. For each antibody concentration the blank sensogram is subtracted from the sample sensogram. A global fit is done for both dissociation ( $k_d$ , sec<sup>-1</sup>) and association ( $k_a$ , mol<sup>-1</sup> sec<sup>-1</sup>) and the dissociation constant ( $K_D$ , mol) calculated ( $k_d/k_a$ ). Where the antibody affinity is high enough that the RUs of antibody captured are >100, additional dilutions of the antibody are run.  
30

### Results and Discussion

#### Generation of Anti-Human TNF Monoclonal Antibodies

Several fusions are performed and each fusion is seeded in 15 plates (1440 wells/fusion) that yield several dozen antibodies specific for human TNF. Of these, some are found to consist of a combination of human and mouse Ig chains. The remaining hybridomas  
35

secret anti-TNF antibodies consisting solely of human heavy and light chains. Of the human hybridomas all are expected to be IgG1.

#### Binding Kinetics of Human Anti-Human TNF Antibodies

- ELISA analysis confirms that purified antibody from most or all of these hybridomas  
5 bind TNF in a concentration-dependent manner. Figures 1-2 show the results of the relative binding efficiency of these antibodies. In this case, the avidity of the antibody for its cognate antigen (epitope) is measured. It should be noted that binding TNF directly to the EIA plate can cause denaturation of the protein and the apparent binding affinities cannot be reflective of binding to undenatured protein. Fifty percent binding is found over a range of concentrations.  
10 Quantitative binding constants are obtained using BIAcore analysis of the human antibodies and reveals that several of the human monoclonal antibodies are very high affinity with  $K_D$  in the range of  $1 \times 10^9$  to  $7 \times 10^{-12}$ .

#### Conclusions

- Several fusions are performed utilizing splenocytes from hybrid mice containing  
15 human variable and constant region antibody transgenes that are immunized with human TNF. A set of several completely human TNF reactive IgG monoclonal antibodies of the IgG1 isotype are generated. The completely human anti-TNF antibodies are further characterized. Several of generated antibodies have affinity constants between  $1 \times 10^9$  and  $9 \times 10^{12}$ . The unexpectedly high affinities of these fully human monoclonal antibodies make them suitable  
20 for therapeutic applications in TNF-dependent diseases, pathologies or related conditions.

#### Example 2: Generation of Human IgG Monoclonal Antibodies Reactive to Human TNF $\alpha$

##### Summary

- (CBA/J x C57BL/6J) F<sub>2</sub> hybrid mice (1-4) containing human variable and constant region antibody transgenes for both heavy and light chains were immunized with  
25 recombinant human TNF $\alpha$ . One fusion, named GenTNV, yielded eight totally human IgG1 $\kappa$  monoclonal antibodies that bind to immobilized recombinant human TNF $\alpha$ . Shortly after identification, the eight cell lines were transferred to Molecular Biology for further characterization. As these Mabs are totally human in sequence, they are expected to be less immunogenic than cA2 (Remicade) in humans.

#### 30 Abbreviations

BSA - bovine serum albumin

CO<sub>2</sub> - carbon dioxide

DMSO - dimethyl sulfoxide

EIA - enzyme immunoassay

FBS - fetal bovine serum

H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> - hydrogen peroxide

HC - heavy chain

5 HRP - horseradish peroxidase

Ig - immunoglobulin

IP - intraperitoneal

IV - intravenous

Mab - monoclonal antibody

10 OD - optical density

OPD - o-Phenylenediamine dihydrochloride

PEG - polyethylene glycol

PSA - penicillin, streptomycin, amphotericin

RT - room temperature

15 SQ - subcutaneous

TNF $\alpha$  - tumor necrosis factor alpha

v/v - volume per volume

w/v - weight per volume

### **Introduction**

20 Transgenic mice that contain human heavy and light chain immunoglobulin genes were utilized to generate totally human monoclonal antibodies that are specific to recombinant human TNF $\alpha$ . It is hoped that these unique antibodies can be used, as cA2 (Remicade) is used to therapeutically inhibit the inflammatory processes involved in TNF $\alpha$ -mediated disease with the benefit of increased serum half-life and decreased side effects relating to immunogenicity.

### **25 Materials and Methods**

#### **Animals**

Transgenic mice that express human immunoglobulins, but not mouse IgM or IgK, have been developed by GenPharm International. These mice contain functional human antibody transgenes that undergo *V(D)J* joining, heavy-chain class switching and somatic

mutation to generate a repertoire of antigen-specific human immunoglobulins (1). The light chain transgenes are derived in part from a yeast artificial chromosome clone that includes nearly half of the germline human  $V_k$  locus. In addition to several VH genes, the heavy-chain (HC) transgene encodes both human  $\mu$  and human  $\gamma 1$  (2) and/or  $\gamma 3$  constant regions. A mouse 5 derived from the HCo12/KCo5 genotypic lineage was used in the immunization and fusion process to generate the monoclonal antibodies described here.

#### Purification of Human TNF $\alpha$

Human TNF $\alpha$  was purified from tissue culture supernatant from C237A cells by affinity chromatography using a column packed with the TNF $\alpha$  receptor-Fc fusion protein 10 (p55-sf2) (5) coupled to Sepharose 4B (Pharmacia). The cell supernatant was mixed with one-ninth its volume of 10x Dulbecco's PBS (D-PBS) and passed through the column at 4 °C at 4 mL/min. The column was then washed with PBS and the TNF $\alpha$  was eluted with 0.1 M sodium citrate, pH 3.5 and neutralized with 2 M Tris-HCl pH 8.5. The purified TNF $\alpha$  was buffer exchanged into 10 mM Tris, 0.12 M sodium chloride pH 7.5 and filtered through a 0.2  $\mu$ m 15 syringe filter.

#### Immunizations

A female GenPharm mouse, approximately 16 weeks old, was immunized IP (200  $\mu$ L) and ID (100  $\mu$ L at the base of the tail) with a total of 100  $\mu$ g of TNF $\alpha$  (lot JG102298 or JG102098) emulsified with an equal volume of Titermax adjuvant on days 0, 12 and 28. The 20 mouse was bled on days 21 and 35 by retro-orbital puncture without anti-coagulant. The blood was allowed to clot at RT for one hour and the serum was collected and titered using TNF $\alpha$  solid phase EIA assay. The fusion, named GenTNV, was performed after the mouse was allowed to rest for seven weeks following injection on day 28. The mouse, with a specific 25 human IgG titer of 1:160 against TNF $\alpha$ , was then given a final IV booster injection of 50  $\mu$ g TNF $\alpha$  diluted in 100  $\mu$ L physiological saline. Three days later, the mouse was euthanized by cervical dislocation and the spleen was removed aseptically and immersed in 10 mL of cold phosphate-buffered saline (PBS) containing 100 U/mL penicillin, 100  $\mu$ g/mL streptomycin, and 0.25  $\mu$ g/mL amphotericin B (PSA). The splenocytes were harvested by steriley perfusing the spleen with PSA-PBS. The cells were washed once in cold PSA-PBS, counted using a 30 Coulter counter and resuspended in RPMI 1640 media containing 25 mM Hepes.

#### Cell Lines

The non-secreting mouse myeloma fusion partner, 653 was received into Cell Biology Services (CBS) group on 5-14-97 from Centocor's Product Development group. The cell line

was expanded in RPMI medium (JRH Biosciences) supplemented with 10% (v/v) FBS (Cell Culture Labs), 1 mM sodium pyruvate, 0.1 mM NEAA, 2 mM L-glutamine (all from JRH Biosciences) and cryopreserved in 95% FBS and 5% DMSO (Sigma), then stored in a vapor phase liquid nitrogen freezer in CBS. The cell bank was sterile (Quality Control Centocor, 5 Malvern) and free of mycoplasma (Bionique Laboratories). Cells were maintained in log phase culture until fusion. They were washed in PBS, counted, and viability determined (>95%) via trypan blue dye exclusion prior to fusion.

Human TNF $\alpha$  was produced by a recombinant cell line, named C237A, generated in Molecular Biology at Centocor. The cell line was expanded in IMDM medium 10 (JRH Biosciences) supplemented with 5% (v/v) FBS (Cell Culture Labs), 2 mM L-glutamine (all from JRH Biosciences), and 0.5 :g/mL mycophenolic acid, and cryopreserved in 95% FBS and 5% DMSO (Sigma), then stored in a vapor phase liquid nitrogen freezer in CBS (13). The cell bank was sterile (Quality Control Centocor, Malvern) and free of mycoplasma (Bionique Laboratories).

### 15 Cell Fusion

The cell fusion was carried out using a 1:1 ratio of 653 murine myeloma cells and viable murine spleen cells. Briefly, spleen cells and myeloma cells were pelleted together. The pellet was slowly resuspended over a 30 second period in 1 mL of 50% (w/v) PEG/PBS solution (PEG molecular weight of 1,450 g/mole, Sigma) at 37°C. The fusion was stopped by 20 slowly adding 10.5 mL of RPMI media (no additives) (JRH) (37°C) over 1 minute. The fused cells were centrifuged for 5 minutes at 750 rpm. The cells were then resuspended in HAT medium (RPMI/HEPES medium containing 10% Fetal Bovine Serum (JRH), 1 mM sodium pyruvate, 2 mM L-glutamine, 10  $\mu$ g/mL gentamicin, 2.5% Origen culturing supplement (Fisher), 50  $\mu$ M 2-mercaptoethanol, 1% 653-conditioned RPMI media, 100  $\mu$ M hypoxanthine, 25 0.4  $\mu$ M aminopterin, and 16  $\mu$ M thymidine) and then plated at 200  $\mu$ L/well in five 96-well flat bottom tissue culture plates. The plates were then placed in a humidified 37°C incubator containing 5% CO<sub>2</sub> and 95% air for 7-10 days.

### Detection of Human IgG Anti-TNF $\alpha$ Antibodies in Mouse Serum

30 Solid phase EIAs were used to screen mouse sera for human IgG antibodies specific for human TNF $\alpha$ . Briefly, plates were coated with TNF $\alpha$  at 1  $\mu$ g/mL in PBS overnight. After washing in 0.15 M saline containing 0.02% (v/v) Tween 20, the wells were blocked with 1% (w/v) BSA in PBS, 200  $\mu$ L/well for 1 hour at RT. Plates were either used immediately or frozen at -20 °C for future use. Mouse sera were incubated in two-fold serial dilutions on the

human TNF $\alpha$ -coated plates at 50  $\mu$ L/well at RT for 1 hour. The plates were washed and then probed with 50  $\mu$ L/well HRP-labeled goat anti-human IgG, Fc specific (Accurate) diluted 1:30,000 in 1% BSA-PBS for 1 hour at RT. The plates were again washed and 100  $\mu$ L/well of the citrate-phosphate substrate solution (0.1 M citric acid and 0.2 M sodium phosphate, 0.01% 5  $H_2O_2$  and 1 mg/mL OPD) was added for 15 minutes at RT. Stop solution (4N sulfuric acid) was then added at 25  $\mu$ L/well and the OD's were read at 490 nm using an automated plate spectrophotometer.

#### **Detection of Totally Human Immunoglobulins in Hybridoma Supernatants**

Because the GenPharm mouse is capable of generating both mouse and human 10 immunoglobulin chains, two separate EIA assays were used to test growth-positive hybridoma clones for the presence of both human light chains and human heavy chains. Plates were coated as described above and undiluted hybridoma supernatants were incubated on the plates for one hour at 37°C. The plates were washed and probed with either HRP-conjugated goat anti-human kappa (Southern Biotech) antibody diluted 1:10,000 in 1% BSA-HBSS or HRP- 15 conjugated goat anti-human IgG Fc specific antibody diluted to 1:30,000 in 1% BSA-HBSS for one hour at 37°C. The plates were then incubated with substrate solution as described above. Hybridoma clones that did not give a positive signal in both the anti-human kappa and anti-human IgG Fc EIA formats were discarded.

#### **Isotyping**

20 Isotype determination of the antibodies was accomplished using an EIA in a format similar to that used to screen the mouse immune sera for specific titers. EIA plates were coated with goat anti-human IgG (H+L) at 10 :g/mL in sodium carbonate buffer overnight at 4EC and blocked as described above. Neat supernatants from 24 well cultures were incubated on the plate for one hour at RT. The plate was washed and probed with HRP-labeled goat 25 anti-human IgG<sub>1</sub>, IgG<sub>2</sub>, IgG<sub>3</sub> or IgG<sub>4</sub> (Binding Site) diluted at 1:4000 in 1% BSA-PBS for one hour at RT. The plate was again washed and incubated with substrate solution as described above.

#### **Results and Discussion**

##### **Generation of Totally Human Anti-Human TNF $\alpha$ Monoclonal Antibodies**

30 One fusion, named GenTNV, was performed from a GenPharm mouse immunized with recombinant human TNF $\alpha$  protein. From this fusion, 196 growth-positive hybrids were screened. Eight hybridoma cell lines were identified that secreted totally human IgG antibodies reactive with human TNF $\alpha$ . These eight cell lines each secreted immunoglobulins

of the human IgG1κ isotype and all were subcloned twice by limiting dilution to obtain stable cell lines (>90% homogeneous). Cell line names and respective C code designations are listed in Table 1. Each of the cell lines was frozen in 12-vial research cell banks stored in liquid nitrogen.

- 5 Parental cells collected from wells of a 24-well culture dish for each of the eight cell lines were handed over to Molecular Biology group on 2-18-99 for transfection and further characterization.

Table 1: GenTNV Cell Line Designations

| Name            | C Code Designation |
|-----------------|--------------------|
| GenTNV14.17.12  | C414A              |
| GenTNV15.28.11  | C415A              |
| GenTNV32.2.16   | C416A              |
| GenTNV86.14.34  | C417A              |
| GenTNV118.3.36  | C418A              |
| GenTNV122.23.2  | C419A              |
| GenTNV148.26.12 | C420A              |
| GenTNV196.9.1   | C421A              |

## 5 Conclusion

The GenTNV fusion was performed utilizing splenocytes from a hybrid mouse containing human variable and constant region antibody transgenes that was immunized with recombinant human TNF $\alpha$  prepared at Centocor. Eight totally human, TNF $\alpha$ -reactive IgG monoclonal antibodies of the IgG1 $\kappa$  isotype were generated. Parental cell lines were transferred to Molecular Biology group for further characterization and development. One of these new human antibodies may prove useful in anti-inflammatory with the potential benefit of decreased immunogenicity and allergic-type complications as compared with Remicade.

## References

1. Taylor, et al., International Immunology 6:579-591 (1993).
- 15 2. Lonberg, et al., Nature 368:856-859 (1994).
3. Neuberger, M. Nature Biotechnology 14:826 (1996).
4. Fishwild, et al., Nature Biotechnology 14:845-851 (1996).
5. Scallan, et al., Cytokine 7:759-770 (1995).

## Example 3: Cloning and Preparation of Cell lines Expressing Human anti-TNF $\alpha$ antibody

### Summary

A panel of eight human monoclonal antibodies (mAbs) with a TNV designation were found to bind immobilized human TNF $\alpha$  with apparently high avidity. Seven of the eight

mAbs were shown to efficiently block huTNF $\alpha$  binding to a recombinant TNF receptor. Sequence analysis of the DNA encoding the seven mAbs confirmed that all the mAbs had human V regions. The DNA sequences also revealed that three pairs of the mAbs were identical to each other, such that the original panel of eight mAbs contained only four distinct 5 mAbs, represented by TNV14, TNV15, TNV148, and TNV196. Based on analyses of the deduced amino acid sequences of the mAbs and results of *in vitro* TNF $\alpha$  neutralization data, mAb TNV148 and TNV14 were selected for further study.

Because the proline residue at position 75 (framework 3) in the TNV148 heavy chain was not found at that position in other human antibodies of the same subgroup during a 10 database search, site-directed DNA mutagenesis was performed to encode a serine residue at that position in order to have it conform to known germline framework 3 sequences. The serine modified mAb was designated TNV148B. PCR-amplified DNA encoding the heavy and light chain variable regions of TNV148B and TNV14 was cloned into newly prepared expression vectors that were based on the recently cloned heavy and light chain genes of 15 another human mAb (12B75), disclosed in US patent application No. \_\_\_\_\_, filed October 7, 2000, entitled IL-12 Antibodies, Compositions, Methods and Uses, which is entirely incorporated herein by reference.

P3X63Ag8.653 (653) cells or Sp2/0-Ag14 (Sp2/0) mouse myeloma cells were transfected with the respective heavy and light chain expression plasmids and screened 20 through two rounds of subcloning for cell lines producing high levels of recombinant TNV148B and TNV14 (rTNV148B and rTNV14) mAbs. Evaluations of growth curves and stability of mAb production over time indicated that 653-transflectant clones C466D and C466C stably produced approximately 125 :g/ml of rTNV148B mAb in spent cultures whereas Sp2/0 transfectant 1.73-12-122 (C467A) stably produced approximately 25 :g/ml of 25 rTNV148B mAb in spent cultures. Similar analyses indicated that Sp2/0-transflectant clone C476A produced 18 :g/ml of rTNV14 in spent cultures.

### Introduction

A panel of eight mAbs derived from human TNF $\alpha$ -immunized GenPharm/Medarex mice (HCo12/KCo5 genotype) were previously shown to bind human TNF $\alpha$  and to have a 30 totally human IgG1, kappa isotype. A simple binding assay was used to determine whether the exemplary mAbs of the invention were likely to have TNF $\alpha$ -neutralizing activity by evaluating their ability to block TNF $\alpha$  from binding to recombinant TNF receptor. Based on those results, DNA sequence results, and *in vitro* characterizations of several of the mAbs, TNV148 was selected as the mAb to be further characterized.

DNA sequences encoding the TNV148 mAb were cloned, modified to fit into gene expression vectors that encode suitable constant regions, introduced into the well-characterized 653 and Sp2/0 mouse myeloma cells, and resulting transfected cell lines screened until subclones were identified that produced 40-fold more mAb than the original hybridoma cell line.

#### Materials and Methods

##### Reagents and Cells

TRIZOL reagent was purchased from Gibco BRL. Proteinase K was obtained from Sigma Chemical Company. Reverse Transcriptase was obtained from Life Sciences, Inc. Taq DNA Polymerase was obtained from either Perkin Elmer Cetus or Gibco BRL. Restriction enzymes were purchased from New England Biolabs. QIAquick PCR Purification Kit was from Qiagen. A QuikChange Site-Directed Mutagenesis Kit was purchased from Stratagene. Wizard plasmid miniprep kits and RNasin were from Promega. Optiplates were obtained from Packard. <sup>125</sup>Iodine was purchased from Amersham. Custom oligonucleotides were purchased from Keystone/Biosource International. The names, identification numbers, and sequences of the oligonucleotides used in this work are shown in Table 1.

**Table 1. Oligonucleotides used to clone, engineer, or sequence the TNV mAb genes.** The amino acids encoded by oligonucleotide 5'14s and HuH-J6 are shown above the sequence. The 'M' amino acid residue represents the translation start codon. The underlined sequences in oligonucleotides 5'14s and HuH-J6 mark the BsiWI and BstBI restriction sites, respectively. The slash in HuH-J6 corresponds to the exon/intron boundary. Note that oligonucleotides whose sequence corresponds to the minus strand are written in a 3'-5' orientation.

|    | <u>Name</u> | <u>I.D.</u> | <u>Sequence</u>                                      |
|----|-------------|-------------|--|
|    | HG1-4b      | 119         | 3'-TTGGTCCAGTCGGACTGG-5'                             |
|    | HG1-5b      | 354         | 3'-CACCTGCACTCGGTGCTT-5'                             |
| 5  | HG1hg       | 360         | 3'-CACTGTTTGAGTGTACGGGCTTAAGTT-5'                    |
|    | HG1-6       | 35          | 3'-GCCGCACGTGTGGAAGGG-5'                             |
|    | HCK1-3E     | 117         | 3'-AGTCAAGGTCGGACTGGCTTAAGTT-5'                      |
|    | HuK-3'Hd    | 208         | 3'-GTTGTCCCCTCTACAATTCGAATT-5'                       |
| 10 | HVKRNAseq   | 34          | 3'-GGCGGTAGACTACTCGTC-5'                             |
|    |             |             | BsiWI                    M D W T W S I               |
|    | 5'14s       | 366         | 5'-TTTCGTACGCCACCATGGACTGGACCTGGAGCATC-3'            |
|    | 5'46s       | 367         | 5'-TTTCGTACGCCACCATGGGGTTGGGCTGAGCTG-3'              |
| 15 | 5'47s       | 368         | 5'-TTTCGTACGCCACCATGGAGTTGGGCTGAGCATG-3'             |
|    | 5'63s       | 369         | 5'-TTTCGTACGCCACCATGAAACACCTGTGGTTCTC-3'             |
|    | 5'73s       | 370         | 5'-TTTCGTACGCCACCATGGGGTCAACCGCCATCCTC-3'            |
|    |             |             | T V T V S S                    BstBI                 |
| 20 | HuH-J6      | 388         | 3'-GTGCCAGTGGCAGAGGAGTC/CATT <u>CAAGCTT</u> AAGTT-5' |
|    |             |             | SalI                    M D M R V                    |
|    | LK7s        | 362         | 5'-TTT <u>GTCGAC</u> ACCATGGACATGAGGGTCC(TC)C-3'     |
|    | LVgs        | 363         | 5'-TTT <u>GTCGAC</u> ACCATGGAAGCCCCAGCTC-3'          |
| 25 |             |             | T K V D I K                    AfI2                  |
|    | HuL-J3      | 380         | 3'-CTGGTTCACCTATAGTTG/CATT <u>CAGAATT</u> CGCGCCTT   |
|    |             |             | ApaI   |
|    | V148-QC1    | 399         | 5'-CATCTCCAGAGACAAT <u>tCCAAGAACACGCTGTATC</u> -3'   |
| 30 | V148-QC2    | 400         | 3'-GTAGAGGTCTCTGTTaGGTTCTGTGCGACATAG-5'              |

A single frozen vial of 653 mouse myeloma cells was obtained. The vial was thawed that day and expanded in T flasks in IMDM, 5% FBS, 2 mM glutamine (media). These cells were maintained in continuous culture until they were transfected 2 to 3 weeks later with the anti-TNF DNA described here. Some of the cultures were harvested 5 days after the thaw

date, pelleted by centrifugation, and resuspended in 95% FBS, 5% DMSO, aliquoted into 30 vials, frozen, and stored for future use. Similarly, a single frozen vial of Sp2/0 mouse myeloma cells was obtained. The vial was thawed, a new freeze-down prepared as described above, and the frozen vials stored in CBC freezer boxes AA and AB. These cells were thawed 5 and used for all Sp2/0 transfections described here.

#### Assay for Inhibition of TNF Binding to Receptor

Hybridoma cell supernatants containing the TNV mAbs were used to assay for the ability of the mAbs to block binding of  $^{125}\text{I}$ -labeled TNF $\alpha$  to the recombinant TNF receptor fusion protein, p55-sf2 (Scallan et al. (1995) *Cytokine* 7:759-770). 50 :1 of p55-sf2 at 0.5 10 :g/ml in PBS was added to Optiplates to coat the wells during a one-hour incubation at 37°C. Serial dilutions of the eight TNV cell supernatants were prepared in 96-well round-bottom plates using PBS/ 0.1% BSA as diluent. Cell supernatant containing anti-IL-18 mAb was included as a negative control and the same anti-IL-18 supernatant spiked with cA2 (anti-TNF chimeric antibody, Remicade, US patent No. 5,770,198, entirely incorporated herein by 15 reference) was included as a positive control.  $^{125}\text{I}$ -labeled TNF $\alpha$  (58 :Ci/:g, D. Shealy) was added to 100 :1 of cell supernatants to have a final TNF $\alpha$  concentration of 5 ng/ml. The mixture was preincubated for one hour at RT. The coated Optiplates were washed to remove unbound p55-sf2 and 50 :1 of the  $^{125}\text{I}$ -TNF $\alpha$ /cell supernatant mixture was transferred to the Optiplates. After 2 hrs at RT, Optiplates were washed three times with PBS-Tween. 100 :1 of 20 Microscint-20 was added and the cpm bound determined using the TopCount gamma counter.

#### Amplification of V Genes and DNA Sequence Analysis

Hybridoma cells were washed once in PBS before addition of TRIZOL reagent for RNA preparation. Between  $7 \times 10^6$  and  $1.7 \times 10^7$  cells were resuspended in 1 ml TRIZOL. Tubes were shaken vigorously after addition of 200  $\mu\text{l}$  of chloroform. Samples were 25 centrifuged at 4°C for 10 minutes. The aqueous phase was transferred to a fresh microfuge tube and an equal volume of isopropanol was added. Tubes were shaken vigorously and allowed to incubate at room temperature for 10 minutes. Samples were then centrifuged at 4°C for 10 minutes. The pellets were washed once with 1 ml of 70% ethanol and dried briefly in a vacuum dryer. The RNA pellets were resuspended with 40  $\mu\text{l}$  of DEPC-treated water. The 30 quality of the RNA preparations was determined by fractionating 0.5  $\mu\text{l}$  in a 1% agarose gel. The RNA was stored in a -80°C freezer until used.

To prepare heavy and light chain cDNAs, mixtures were prepared that included 3  $\mu\text{l}$  of RNA and 1  $\mu\text{g}$  of either oligonucleotide 119 (heavy chain) or oligonucleotide 117 (light chain)

(see Table 1) in a volume of 11.5  $\mu$ l. The mixture was incubated at 70°C for 10 minutes in a water bath and then chilled on ice for 10 minutes. A separate mixture was prepared that was made up of 2.5  $\mu$ l of 10X reverse transcriptase buffer, 10  $\mu$ l of 2.5 mM dNTPs, 1  $\mu$ l of reverse transcriptase (20 units), and 0.4  $\mu$ l of ribonuclease inhibitor RNasin (1 unit). 13.5  $\mu$ l of this 5 mixture was added to the 11.5  $\mu$ l of the chilled RNA/oligonucleotide mixture and the reaction incubated for 40 minutes at 42°C. The cDNA synthesis reaction was then stored in a -20°C freezer until used.

The unpurified heavy and light chain cDNAs were used as templates to PCR-amplify the variable region coding sequences. Five oligonucleotide pairs (366/354, 367/354, 368/354, 10 369/354, and 370/354, Table 1) were simultaneously tested for their ability to prime amplification of the heavy chain DNA. Two oligonucleotide pairs (362/208 and 363/208) were simultaneously tested for their ability to prime amplification of the light chain DNA. PCR reactions were carried out using 2 units of PLATINUM™ high fidelity (HIFI) Taq DNA polymerase in a total volume of 50  $\mu$ l: Each reaction included 2  $\mu$ l of a cDNA reaction, 10 15 pmoles of each oligonucleotide, 0.2 mM dNTPs, 5  $\mu$ l of 10 X HIFI Buffer, and 2 mM magnesium sulfate. The thermal cycler program was 95°C for 5 minutes followed by 30 cycles of (94°C for 30 seconds, 62°C for 30 seconds, 68°C for 1.5 minutes). There was then a final incubation at 68°C for 10 minutes.

To prepare the PCR products for direct DNA sequencing, they were purified using the 20 QIAquick™ PCR Purification Kit according to the manufacturer's protocol. The DNA was eluted from the spin column using 50  $\mu$ l of sterile water and then dried down to a volume of 10  $\mu$ l using a vacuum dryer. DNA sequencing reactions were then set up with 1  $\mu$ l of purified PCR product, 10  $\mu$ M oligonucleotide primer, 4  $\mu$ l BigDye Terminator™ ready reaction mix, and 14  $\mu$ l sterile water for a total volume of 20  $\mu$ l. Heavy chain PCR products made with 25 oligonucleotide pair 367/354 were sequenced with oligonucleotide primers 159 and 360. Light chain PCR products made with oligonucleotide pair 363/208 were sequenced with oligonucleotides 34 and 163. The thermal cycler program for sequencing was 25 cycles of (96°C for 30 seconds, 50°C for 15 seconds, 60°C for 4 minutes) followed by overnight at 4°C. The reaction products were fractionated through a polyacrylamide gel and detected using an 30 ABI 377 DNA Sequencer.

#### Site-directed Mutagenesis to Change an Amino Acid

A single nucleotide in the TNV148 heavy chain variable region DNA sequence was changed in order to replace Pro<sup>75</sup> with a Serine residue in the TNV148 mAb. Complimentary oligonucleotides, 399 and 400 (Table 1), were designed and ordered to make this change using

unique BsiWI cloning site just upstream of the translation initiation site, following the manufacturer's protocol. The resulting plasmid was termed p1747. To introduce a BstBI site at the 3' end of the variable region, a 5' oligonucleotide primer was designed with SalI and BstBI sites. This primer was used with the pUC reverse primer to amplify a 2.75 kb fragment 5 from p1747. This fragment was then cloned back into the naturally-occurring SalI site in the 12B75 variable region and a HindIII site, thereby introducing the unique BstB1 site. The resulting intermediate vector, designated p1750, could accept variable region fragments with BsiWI and BstBI ends. To prepare a version of heavy chain vector in which the constant region also derived from the 12B75 gene, the BamHI-HindIII insert in p1750 was transferred 10 to pBR322 in order to have an EcoRI site downstream of the HindIII site. The resulting plasmid, p1768, was then digested with HindIII and EcoRI and ligated to a 5.7 kb HindIII-EcoRI fragment from p1744, a subclone derived by cloning the large BamHI-BamHI fragment from p1560 into pBC. The resulting plasmid, p1784, was then used as vector for the TNV Ab cDNA fragments with BsiWI and BstBI ends. Additional work was done to prepare 15 expression vectors, p1788 and p1798, which include the IgG1 constant region from the 12B75 gene and differ from each other by how much of the 12B75 heavy chain J-C intron they contain.

To modify the 12B75 light chain gene in plasmid p1558, a 5.7 kb SalI/AflII fragment containing the 12B75 promoter and variable region was transferred from p1558 into the 20 XhoI/AflII sites of plasmid L28. This new plasmid, p1745, provided a smaller template for the mutagenesis step. Oligonucleotides (C340salI and C340sal2) were used to introduce a unique SalI restriction site at the 5' end of the variable region by QuikChange™ mutagenesis. The resulting intermediate vector, p1746, had unique SalI and AflII restriction sites into which variable region fragments could be cloned. Any variable region fragment cloned into p1746 25 would preferably be joined with the 3' half of the light chain gene. To prepare a restriction fragment from the 3' half of the 12B75 light chain gene that could be used for this purpose, oligonucleotides BAHN-1 and BAHN-2 were annealed to each other to form a double-stranded linker containing the restriction sites BsiW1, AflII, HindII, and NotI and which contained ends 30 that could be ligated into KpnI and SacI sites. This linker was cloned between the KpnI and SacI sites of pBC to give plasmid p1757. A 7.1 kb fragment containing the 12B75 light chain constant region, generated by digesting p1558 with AflII, then partially digesting with HindIII, was cloned between the AflII and HindII sites of p1757 to yield p1762. This new plasmid contained unique sites for BsiWI and AflII into which the BsiWI/AflII fragment containing the promoter and variable regions could be transferred uniting the two halves of the gene.

35 **cDNA Cloning and Assembly of Expression Plasmids**

All RT-PCR reactions (see above) were treated with Klenow enzyme to further fill in the DNA ends. Heavy chain PCR fragments were digested with restriction enzymes BsiWI and BstBI and then cloned between the BsiWI and BstBI sites of plasmid L28 (L28 used because the 12B75-based intermediate vector p1750 had not been prepared yet). DNA sequence analysis of the cloned inserts showed that the resulting constructs were correct and that there were no errors introduced during PCR amplifications. The assigned identification numbers for these L28 plasmid constructs (for TNV14, TNV15, TNV148, TNV148B, and TNV196) are shown in Table 2.

The BsiWI/BstBI inserts for TNV14, TNV148, and TNV148B heavy chains were transferred from the L28 vector to the newly prepared intermediate vector, p1750. The assigned identification numbers for these intermediate plasmids are shown in Table 2. This cloning step and subsequent steps were not done for TNV15 and TNV196. The variable regions were then transferred into two different human IgG1 expression vectors. Restriction enzymes EcoRI and HindIII were used to transfer the variable regions into Centocor's previously-used IgG1 vector, p104. The resulting expression plasmids, which encode an IgG1 of the Gm(f+) allotype, were designated p1781 (TNV14), p1782 (TNV148), and p1783 (TNV148B) (see Table 2). The variable regions were also cloned upstream of the IgG1 constant region derived from the 12B75 (GenPharm) gene. Those expression plasmids, which encode an IgG1 of the G1m(z) allotype, are also listed in Table 2.

**Table 2. Plasmid identification numbers for various heavy and light chain plasmids.** The L28 vector or pBC vector represents the initial Ab cDNA clone. The inserts in those plasmids were transferred to an incomplete 12B75-based vector to make the intermediate plasmids. One additional transfer step resulted in the final expression plasmids that were either introduced into cells after being linearized or used to purify the mAb gene inserts prior to cell transfection. (ND) = not done.

| <u>mAb</u>          | L28 vector | Intermediate      | Gm(f+)            | G1m(z)            |
|---------------------|------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
|                     |            | <u>Plasmid ID</u> | <u>Plasmid ID</u> | Expression        |
|                     |            |                   |                   | <u>Plasmid ID</u> |
| <i>Heavy Chains</i> |            |                   |                   |                   |
| TNV14               | p1751      | p1777             | p1781             | p1786             |
| TNV15               | p1752      | (ND)              | (ND)              | (ND)              |
| TNV148 p1753        | p1778      | p1782             | p1787             |                   |
| TNV148B p1760       | p1779      | p1783             | p1788             |                   |
| TNV196 p1754        | (ND)       | (ND)              | (ND)              |                   |

|                     |  | <u>pBC vector</u> | <u>Intermediate</u> | <u>Expression</u> |
|---------------------|--|-------------------|---------------------|-------------------|
|                     |  | <u>Plasmid ID</u> | <u>Plasmid ID</u>   | <u>Plasmid ID</u> |
| <i>Light Chains</i> |  |                   |                     |                   |
| 5                   | TNV14  | p1748             | p1755               | p1775             |
|                     | TNV15  | p1748             | p1755               | p1775             |
|                     | TNV148   | p1749             | p1756               | p1776             |
|                     | TNV196   | p1749             | p1756               | p1776             |
| 10                  | Light chain PCR products were digested with restriction enzymes Sall and SacII and then cloned between the Sall and SacII sites of plasmid pBC. The two different light chain versions, which differed by one amino acid, were designated p1748 and p1749 (Table 2). DNA sequence analysis confirmed that these constructs had the correct sequences. The Sall/AflII fragments in p1748 and p1749 were then cloned between the Sall and AflII sites of intermediate vector p1746 to make p1755 and p1756, respectively. These 5' halves of the light chain genes were then joined to the 3' halves of the gene by transferring the BsiWI/AflII fragments from p1755 and p1756 to the newly prepared construct p1762 to make the final expression plasmids p1775 and p1776, respectively (Table 2). |                   |                     |                   |
| 15                  |  |                   |                     |                   |
| 20                  | <b>Cell Transfections, Screening, and Subcloning</b>   |                   |                     |                   |
| 25                  | A total of 15 transfections of mouse myeloma cells were performed with the various TNV expression plasmids (see Table 3 in the Results and Discussion section). These transfections were distinguished by whether (1) the host cells were Sp2/0 or 653; (2) the heavy chain constant region was encoded by Centocor's previous IgG1 vector or the 12B75 heavy chain constant region; (3) the mAb was TNV148B, TNV148, TNV14, or a new HC/LC combination; (4) whether the DNA was linearized plasmid or purified Ab gene insert; and (5) the presence or absence of the complete J-C intron sequence in the heavy chain gene. In addition, several of the transfections were repeated to increase the likelihood that a large number of clones could be screened.                                   |                   |                     |                   |
| 30                  | Sp2/0 cells and 653 cells were each transfected with a mixture of heavy and light chain DNA (8-12 :g each) by electroporation under standard conditions as previously described (Knight DM et al. (1993) <i>Molecular Immunology</i> 30:1443-1453). For transfection numbers 1, 2, 3, and 16, the appropriate expression plasmids were linearized by digestion with a restriction enzyme prior to transfection. For example, Sall and NotI restriction enzymes were used to linearize TNV148B heavy chain plasmid p1783 and light chain plasmid p1776, respectively.   |                   |                     |                   |
| 35                  | For the remaining transfections, DNA inserts that contained only the mAb gene were   |                   |                     |                   |

separated from the plasmid vector by digesting heavy chain plasmids with BamHI and light chain plasmids with BsiWI and NotI. The mAb gene inserts were then purified by agarose gel electrophoresis and Qiex purification resins. Cells transfected with purified gene inserts were simultaneously transfected with 3-5 :g of PstI-linearized pSV2gpt plasmid (p13) as a source of 5 selectable marker. Following electroporation, cells were seeded in 96-well tissue culture dishes in IMDM, 15% FBS, 2 mM glutamine and incubated at 37°C in a 5% CO<sub>2</sub> incubator. Two days later, an equal volume of IMDM, 5% FBS, 2mM glutamine, 2 X MHX selection (1 X MHX = 0.5 :g/ml mycophenolic acid, 2.5 :g/ml hypoxanthine, 50 :g/ml xanthine) was added and the plates incubated for an additional 2 to 3 weeks while colonies formed.

10

Cell supernatants collected from wells with colonies were assayed for human IgG by ELISA as described. In brief, varying dilutions of the cell supernatants were incubated in 96-well EIA plates coated with polyclonal goat anti-human IgG Fc fragment and then bound human IgG was detected using Alkaline Phosphatase-conjugated goat anti-human IgG(H+L) 15 and the appropriate color substrates. Standard curves, which used as standard the same purified mAb that was being measured in the cell supernatants, were included on each EIA plate to enable quantitation of the human IgG in the supernatants. Cells in those colonies that appeared to be producing the most human IgG were passaged into 24-well plates for additional production determinations in spent cultures and the highest-producing parental clones were 20 subsequently identified.

The highest-producing parental clones were subcloned to identify higher-producing subclones and to prepare a more homogenous cell line. 96-well tissue culture plates were seeded with one cell per well or four cells per well in of IMDM, 5% FBS, 2mM glutamine, 1 X MHX and incubated at 37°C in a 5% CO<sub>2</sub> incubator for 12 to 20 days until colonies were 25 apparent. Cell supernatants were collected from wells that contained one colony per well and analyzed by ELISA as described above. Selected colonies were passaged to 24-well plates and the cultures allowed to go spent before identifying the highest-producing subclones by quantitating the human IgG levels in their supernatants. This process was repeated when selected first-round subclones were subjected to a second round of subcloning. The best 30 second-round subclones were selected as the cell lines for development.

#### Characterization of Cell Subclones

The best second-round subclones were chosen and growth curves performed to evaluate mAb production levels and cell growth characteristics. T75 flasks were seeded with 1 X 10<sup>5</sup> cells/ml in 30 ml IMDM, 5% FBS, 2 mM glutamine, and 1X MHX (or serum-free

media). Aliquots of 300  $\mu$ l were taken at 24 hr intervals and live cell density determined. The analyses continued until the number of live cells was less than 1 X  $10^5$  cells/ml. The collected aliquots of cell supernatants were assayed for the concentration of antibody present. ELISA assays were performed using as standard rTNV148B or rTNV14 JG92399. Samples were 5 incubated for 1 hour on ELISA plates coated with polyclonal goat anti-human IgG Fc and bound mAb detected with Alkaline Phosphatase-conjugated goat anti-human IgG(H+L) at a 1:1000 dilution.

A different growth curve analysis was also done for two cell lines for the purpose of comparing growth rates in the presence of varying amounts of MHX selection. Cell lines 10 C466A and C466B were thawed into MHX-free media (IMDM, 5% FBS, 2 mM glutamine) and cultured for two additional days. Both cell cultures were then divided into three cultures that contained either no MHX, 0.2X MHX, or 1X MHX (1X MHX = 0.5 :g/ml mycophenolic acid, 2.5 :g/ml hypoxanthine, 50 :g/ml xanthine). One day later, fresh T75 flasks were seeded with the cultures at a starting density of 1 X  $10^5$  cells/ml and cells counted at 24 hour intervals 15 for one week. Aliquots for mAb production were not collected. Doubling times were calculated for these samples using the formula provided in SOP PD32.025.

Additional studies were performed to evaluate stability of mAb production over time. Cultures were grown in 24-well plates in IMDM, 5% FBS, 2 mM glutamine, either with or without MHX selection. Cultures were split into fresh cultures whenever they became 20 confluent and the older culture was then allowed to go spent. At this time, an aliquot of supernatant was taken and stored at 4°C. Aliquots were taken over a 55-78 day period. At the end of this period, supernatants were tested for amount of antibody present by the anti-human IgG Fc ELISA as outlined above.

### Results and Discussion

#### 25 Inhibition of TNF binding to Recombinant Receptor

A simple binding assay was done to determine whether the eight TNV mAbs contained in hybridoma cell supernatant were capable of blocking TNF $\alpha$  binding to receptor. The concentrations of the TNV mAbs in their respective cell supernatants were first determined by standard ELISA analysis for human IgG. A recombinant p55 TNF receptor/IgG fusion protein, 30 p55-sf2, was then coated on EIA plates and  $^{125}$ I-labeled TNF $\alpha$  allowed to bind to the p55 receptor in the presence of varying amounts of TNV mAbs. As shown in Figure 1, all but one (TNV122) of the eight TNV mAbs efficiently blocked TNF $\alpha$  binding to p55 receptor. In fact, the TNV mAbs appeared to be more effective at inhibiting TNF $\alpha$  binding than cA2 positive control mAb that had been spiked into negative control hybridoma supernatant. These results

were interpreted as indicating that it was highly likely that the TNV mAbs would block TNF $\alpha$  bioactivity in cell-based assays and *in vivo* and therefore additional analyses were warranted.

#### DNA Sequence Analysis

##### Confirmation that the RNAs Encode Human mAbs

5 As a first step in characterizing the seven TNV mAbs (TNV14, TNV15, TNV32, TNV86, TNV118, TNV148, and TNV196) that showed TNF $\alpha$ -blocking activity in the receptor binding assay, total RNA was isolated from the seven hybridoma cell lines that produce these mAbs. Each RNA sample was then used to prepare human antibody heavy or light chain cDNA that included the complete signal sequence, the complete variable region 10 sequence, and part of the constant region sequence for each mAb. These cDNA products were then amplified in PCR reactions and the PCR-amplified DNA was directly sequenced without first cloning the fragments. The heavy chain cDNAs sequenced were >90% identical to one of the five human germline genes present in the mice, DP-46 (Figure 2). Similarly, the light chain cDNAs sequenced were either 100% or 98% identical to one of the human germline 15 genes present in the mice (Figure 3). These sequence results confirmed that the RNA molecules that were transcribed into cDNA and sequenced encoded human antibody heavy chains and human antibody light chains. It should be noted that, because the variable regions were PCR-amplified using oligonucleotides that map to the 5' end of the signal sequence coding sequence, the first few amino acids of the signal sequence may not be the actual 20 sequence of the original TNV translation products but they do represent the actual sequences of the recombinant TNV mAbs.

##### Unique Neutralizing mAbs

Analyses of the cDNA sequences for the entire variable regions of both heavy and light chains for each mAb revealed that TNV32 is identical to TNV15, TNV118 is identical to 25 TNV14, and TNV86 is identical to TNV148. The results of the receptor binding assay were consistent with the DNA sequence analyses, i.e. both TNV86 and TNV148 were approximately 4-fold better than both TNV118 and TNV14 at blocking TNF binding. Subsequent work was therefore focused on only the four unique TNV mAbs, TNV14, TNV15, TNV148, and TNV196.

##### 30 Relatedness of the Four mAbs

The DNA sequence results revealed that the genes encoding the heavy chains of the four TNV mAbs were all highly homologous to each other and appear to have all derived from the same germline gene, DP-46 (Figure 2). In addition, because each of the heavy chain CDR3 sequences are so similar and of the same length, and because they all use the J6 exon, they

apparently arose from a single VDJ gene rearrangement event that was then followed by somatic changes that made each mAb unique. DNA sequence analyses revealed that there were only two distinct light chain genes among the four mAbs (Figure 3). The light chain variable region coding sequences in TNV14 and TNV15 are identical to each other and to a representative germline sequence of the Vg/38K family of human kappa chains. The TNV148 and TNV196 light chain coding sequences are identical to each other but differ from the germline sequence at two nucleotide positions (Figure 3).

The deduced amino acid sequences of the four mAbs revealed the relatedness of the actual mAbs. The four mAbs contain four distinct heavy chains (Figure 4) but only two distinct light chains (Figure 5). Differences between the TNV mAb sequences and the germline sequences were mostly confined to CDR domains but three of the mAb heavy chains also differed from the germline sequence in the framework regions (Figure 4). Compared to the DP-46 germline-encoded Ab framework regions, TNV14 was identical, TNV15 differed by one amino acid, TNV148 differed by two amino acids, and TNV196 differed by three amino acids.

#### **Cloning of cDNAs, Site-specific Mutagenesis, and Assembly of Final Expression Plasmids**

##### **Cloning of cDNAs**

Based on the DNA sequence of the PCR-amplified variable regions, new oligonucleotides were ordered to perform another round of PCR amplification for the purpose of adapting the coding sequence to be cloned into expression vectors. In the case of the heavy chains, the products of this second round of PCR were digested with restriction enzymes BsiWI and BstBI and cloned into plasmid vector L28 (plasmid identification numbers shown in Table 2). In the case of the light chains, the second-round PCR products were digested with SalI and AflII and cloned into plasmid vector pBC. Individual clones were then sequenced to confirm that their sequences were identical to the previous sequence obtained from direct sequencing of PCR products, which reveals the most abundant nucleotide at each position in a potentially heterogeneous population of molecules.

##### **Site-specific Mutagenesis to Change TNV148**

mAbs TNV148 and TNV196 were being consistently observed to be four-fold more potent than the next best mAb (TNV14) at neutralizing TNF $\alpha$  bioactivity. However, as described above, the TNV148 and TNV196 heavy chain framework sequences differed from the germline framework sequences. A comparison of the TNV148 heavy chain sequence to other human antibodies indicated that numerous other human mAbs contained an Ile residue at

position 28 in framework 1 (counting mature sequence only) whereas the Pro residue at position 75 in framework 3 was an unusual amino acid at that position.

A similar comparison of the TNV196 heavy chain suggested that the three amino acids by which it differs from the germline sequence in framework 3 may be rare in human mAbs.

5 There was a possibility that these differences may render TNV148 and TNV196 immunogenic if administered to humans. Because TNV148 had only one amino acid residue of concern and this residue was believed to be unimportant for TNF $\alpha$  binding, a site-specific mutagenesis technique was used to change a single nucleotide in the TNV148 heavy chain coding sequence (in plasmid p1753) so that a germline Ser residue would be encoded in place of the Pro residue

10 at position 75. The resulting plasmid was termed p1760 (see Table 2). The resulting gene and mAb were termed TNV148B to distinguish it from the original TNV148 gene and mAb (see Figure 5).

#### Assembly of Final Expression Plasmids

New antibody expression vectors were prepared that were based on the 12B75 heavy chain and light chain genes previously cloned as genomic fragments. Although different TNV expression plasmids were prepared (see Table 2), in each case the 5' flanking sequences, promoter, and intron enhancer derived from the respective 12B75 genes. For the light chain expression plasmids, the complete J-C intron, constant region coding sequence and 3' flanking sequence were also derived from the 12B75 light chain gene. For the heavy chain expression plasmids that resulted in the final production cell lines (p1781 and p1783, see below), the human IgG1 constant region coding sequences derived from Centocor's previously-used expression vector (p104). Importantly, the final production cell lines reported here express a different allotype (Gm(f+)) of the TNV mAbs than the original, hybridoma-derived TNV mAbs (G1m(z)). This is because the 12B75 heavy chain gene derived from the GenPharm mice encodes an Arg residue at the C-terminal end of the CH1 domain whereas Centocor's IgG1 expression vector p104 encodes a Lys residue at that position. Other heavy chain expression plasmids (e.g. p1786 and p1788) were prepared in which the J-C intron, complete constant region coding sequence and 3' flanking sequence were derived from the 12B75 heavy chain gene, but cell lines transfected with those genes were not selected as the production cell lines. Vectors were carefully designed to permit one-step cloning of future PCR-amplified V regions that would result in final expression plasmids.

PCR-amplified variable region cDNAs were transferred from L28 or pBC vectors to intermediate-stage, 12B75-based vectors that provided the promoter region and part of the J-C intron (see Table 2 for plasmid identification numbers). Restriction fragments that contained the 5' half of the antibody genes were then transferred from these intermediate-stage vectors to

the final expression vectors that provided the 3' half of the respective genes to form the final expression plasmids (see Table 2 for plasmid identification numbers).

### **Cell Transfections and Subcloning**

Expression plasmids were either linearized by restriction digest or the antibody gene inserts in each plasmid were purified away from the plasmid backbones. Sp2/0 and 653 mouse myeloma cells were transfected with the heavy and light chain DNA by electroporation. Fifteen different transfections were done, most of which were unique as defined by the Ab, specific characteristics of the Ab genes, whether the genes were on linearized whole plasmids or purified gene inserts, and the host cell line (summarized in Table 3). Cell supernatants from clones resistant to mycophenolic acid were assayed for the presence of human IgG by ELISA and quantitated using purified rTNV148B as a reference standard curve.

### **Highest-producing rTNV148B Cell Lines**

Ten of the best-producing 653 parental lines from rTNV148B transfection 2 (produced 5-10 :g/ml in spent 24-well cultures) were subcloned to screen for higher-producing cell lines and to prepare a more homogeneous cell population. Two of the subclones of the parental line 2.320, 2.320-17 and 2.320-20, produced approximately 50 :g/ml in spent 24-well cultures, which was a 5-fold increase over their parental line. A second round of subcloning of subcloned lines 2.320-17 and 2.320-20 led

**Table 3. Summary of Cell Transfections.** The identification numbers of the heavy and light chain plasmids that encode each mAb are shown. In the case of transfections done with purified mAb gene inserts, plasmid p13 (pSV2gpt) was included as a source of the gpt selectable marker. The heavy chain constant regions were encoded either by the same human IgG1 expression vector used to encode Remicade ('old') or by the constant regions contained within the 12B75 (GenPharm/Medarex) heavy chain gene ('new'). H1/L2 refers to a "novel" mAb made up of the TNV14 heavy chain and the TNV148 light chain. Plasmids p1783 and p1801 differ only by how much of the J-C intron their heavy chain genes contain. The transfection numbers, which define the first number of the generic names for cell clones, are shown on the right. The rTNV148B-producing cell lines C466 (A, B, C, D) and C467A described here derived from transfection number 2 and 1, respectively. The rTNV14-producing cell line C476A derived from transfection number 3.

| <u>mAb</u> | <u>Plasmids</u>  |               | <u>HC</u>     | <u>DNA</u> | <u>Transfection no.</u> |            |
|------------|------------------|---------------|---------------|------------|-------------------------|------------|
|            | <u>HC/LC/gpt</u> | <u>vector</u> | <u>format</u> |            | <u>Sp2/0</u>            | <u>653</u> |
| rTNV148B   | 1783/1776        | old           | linear        |            | 1                       | 2          |
| rTNV14     | 1781/1775        | old           | linear        |            | 3                       | -          |

|        |        |       |       |          |
|--------|--------|-------|-------|----------|
| rTNV14 | 3.27-1 | C476A | Sp2/0 | 19 :g/ml |
|--------|--------|-------|-------|----------|

## 5 Characterization of Subcloned Cell Lines

To more carefully characterize cell line growth characteristics and determine mAb-production levels on a larger scale, growth curves analyses were performed using T75 cultures. The results showed that each of the four C466 series of cell lines reached peak cell density between  $1.0 \times 10^6$  and  $1.25 \times 10^6$  cells/ml and maximal mAb accumulation levels of between 10 110 and 140 :g/ml (Figure 7). In contrast, the best-producing Sp2/0 subclone, C467A, reached peak cell density of  $2.0 \times 10^6$  cells/ml and maximal mAb accumulation levels of 25 :g/ml (Figure 7). A growth curve analysis was not done on the rTNV14-producing cell line, C476A.

An additional growth curve analysis was done to compare the growth rates in different concentrations of MHX selection. This comparison was prompted by recent observations that 15 C466 cells cultured in the absence of MHX seemed to be growing faster than the same cells cultured in the normal amount of MHX (1X). Because the cytotoxic concentrations of compounds such as mycophenolic acid tend

To be measured over orders of magnitude, it was considered possible that the use of a lower concentration of MHX might result in significantly faster cell doubling times without 20 sacrificing stability of mAb production. Cell lines C466A and C466B were cultured either in: no MHX, 0.2X MHX, or 1X MHX. Live cell counts were taken at 24-hour intervals for 7 days. The results did reveal an MHX concentration-dependent rate of cell growth (Figure 8). Cell line C466A showed a doubling time of 25.0 hours in 1X MHX but only 20.7 hours in no MHX. Similarly, cell line C466B showed a doubling time of 32.4 hours in 1X MHX but only 25 22.9 hours in no MHX. Importantly, the doubling times for both cell lines in 0.2X MHX were more similar to what was observed in no MHX than in 1X MHX (Figure 8). This observation raises the possibility than enhanced cell performance in bioreactors, for which doubling times are an important parameter, could be realized by using less MHX. However, although stability test results (see below) suggest that cell line C466D is capable of stably producing rTNV148B 30 for at least 60 days even with no MHX present, the stability test also showed higher mAb production levels when the cells were cultured in the presence of MHX compared to the absence of MHX.

To evaluate mAb production from the various cell lines over a period of approximately 60 days, stability tests were performed on cultures that either contained, or did not contain,

MHX selection. Not all of the cell lines maintained high mAb production. After just two weeks of culture, clone C466A was producing approximately 45% less than at the beginning of the study. Production from clone C466B also appeared to drop significantly. However, clones C466C and C466D maintained fairly stable production, with C466D showing the highest absolute production levels (Figure 9).

### Conclusion

From an initial panel of eight human mAbs against human TNF $\alpha$ , TNV148B was selected as preferred based on several criteria that included protein sequence and TNF neutralization potency, as well as TNV14. Cell lines were prepared that produce greater than 10 100 :g/ml of rTNV148B and 19 :g/ml rTNV14.

### Example 4: Arthritic Mice Study using Anti-TNF Antibodies and Controls Using Single Bolus Injection

At approximately 4 weeks of age the Tg197 study mice were assigned, based on gender and body weight, to one of 9 treatment groups and treated with a single intraperitoneal 15 bolus dose of Dulbecco's PBS (D-PBS) or an anti-TNF antibody of the present invention (TNV14, TNV148 or TNV196) at either 1 mg/kg or 10 mg/kg.

**RESULTS:** When the weights were analyzed as a change from pre-dose, the animals treated with 10 mg/kg cA2 showed consistently higher weight gain than the D-PBS-treated animals throughout the study. This weight gain was significant at weeks 3-7. The animals 20 treated with 10 mg/kg TNV148 also achieved significant weight gain at week 7 of the study. (See Figure 10).

Figures 11A-C represent the progression of disease severity based on the arthritic index. The 10 mg/kg cA2-treated group's arthritic index was lower than the D-PBS control group starting at week 3 and continuing throughout the remainder of the study (week 7). The 25 animals treated with 1 mg/kg TNV14 and the animals treated with 1 mg/kg cA2 failed to show significant reduction in AI after week 3 when compared to the D-PBS-treated Group. There were no significant differences between the 10 mg/kg treatment groups when each was compared to the others of similar dose (10 mg/kg cA2 compared to 10 mg/kg TNV14, 148 and 196). When the 1 mg/kg treatment groups were compared, the 1 mg/kg TNV148 showed a 30 significantly lower AI than 1 mg/kg cA2 at 3, 4 and 7 weeks. The 1 mg/kg TNV148 was also significantly lower than the 1 mg/kg TNV14-treated Group at 3 and 4 weeks. Although TNV196 showed significant reduction in AI up to week 6 of the study (when compared to the D-PBS-treated Group), TNV148 was the only 1 mg/kg treatment that remained significant at the conclusion of the study.

**Example 5: Arthritic Mice Study using Anti-TNF Antibodies and Controls as Multiple Bolus Doses**

At approximately 4 weeks of age the Tg197 study mice were assigned, based on body weight, to one of 8 treatment groups and treated with a intraperitoneal bolus dose of control article (D-PBS) or antibody (TNV14, TNV148) at 3 mg/kg (week 0). Injections were repeated in all animals at weeks 1, 2, 3, and 4. Groups 1-6 were evaluated for test article efficacy. Serum samples, obtained from animals in Groups 7 and 8 were evaluated for immune response induction and pharmacokinetic clearance of TNV14 or TNV148 at weeks 2, 3 and 4.

**RESULTS:** No significant differences were noted when the weights were analyzed as a change from pre-dose. The animals treated with 10 mg/kg cA2 showed consistently higher weight gain than the D-PBS-treated animals throughout the study. (See Figure 12).

Figures 13A-C represent the progression of disease severity based on the arthritic index. The 10 mg/kg cA2-treated group's arthritic index was significantly lower than the D-PBS control group starting at week 2 and continuing throughout the remainder of the study (week 5). The animals treated with 1 mg/kg or 3 mg/kg of cA2 and the animals treated with 3 mg/kg TNV14 failed to achieve any significant reduction in AI at any time throughout the study when compared to the d-PBS control group. The animals treated with 3 mg/kg TNV148 showed a significant reduction when compared to the d-PBS-treated group starting at week 3 and continuing through week 5. The 10 mg/kg cA2-treated animals showed a significant reduction in AI when compared to both the lower doses (1 mg/kg and 3 mg/kg) of cA2 at weeks 4 and 5 of the study and was also significantly lower than the TNV14-treated animals at weeks 3-5. Although there appeared to be no significant differences between any of the 3mg/kg treatment groups, the AI for the animals treated with 3 mg/kg TNV14 were significantly higher at some time points than the 10 mg/kg whereas the animals treated with TNV148 were not significantly different from the animals treated with 10 mg/kg of cA2.

**Example 6: Arthritic Mice Study using Anti-TNF Antibodies and Controls as Single Intraperitoneal Bolus Dose**

At approximately 4 weeks of age the Tg197 study mice were assigned, based on gender and body weight, to one of 6 treatment groups and treated with a single intraperitoneal bolus dose of antibody (cA2, or TNV148) at either 3 mg/kg or 5 mg/kg. This study utilized the D-PBS and 10 mg/kg cA2 control Groups.

When the weights were analyzed as a change from pre-dose, all treatments achieved similar weight gains. The animals treated with either 3 or 5 mg/kg TNV148 or 5 mg/kg cA2 gained a significant amount of weight early in the study (at weeks 2 and 3). Only the animals

treated with TNV148 maintained significant weight gain in the later time points. Both the 3 and 5 mg/kg TNV148-treated animals showed significance at 7 weeks and the 3 mg/kg TNV148 animals were still significantly elevated at 8 weeks post injection. (See Figure 14).

- Figure 15 represents the progression of disease severity based on the arthritic index.
- 5 All treatment groups showed some protection at the earlier time points, with the 5 mg/kg cA2 and the 5 mg/kg TNV148 showing significant reductions in AI at weeks 1-3 and all treatment groups showing a significant reduction at week 2. Later in the study the animals treated with 5 mg/kg cA2 showed some protection, with significant reductions at weeks 4, 6 and 7. The low dose (3 mg/kg) of both the cA2 and the TNV148 showed significant reductions at 6 and all  
10 treatment groups showed significant reductions at week 7. None of the treatment groups were able to maintain a significant reduction at the conclusion of the study (week 8). There were no significant differences between any of the treatment groups (excluding the saline control group) at any time point.

**Example 7: Arthritic Mice Study using Anti-TNF Antibodies and Controls as  
15 Single Intraperitoneal Bolus Dose Between Anti-TNF Antibody and Modified Anti-TNF  
Antibody**

To compare the efficacy of a single intraperitoneal dose of TNV148 (derived from hybridoma cells) and rTNV148B (derived from transfected cells). At approximately 4 weeks of age the Tg197 study mice were assigned, based on gender and body weight, to one of 9  
20 treatment groups and treated with a single intraperitoneal bolus dose of Dulbecco S PBS (D-PBS) or antibody (TNV148, rTNV148B) at 1 mg/kg.

When the weights were analyzed as a change from pre-dose, the animals treated with 10 mg/kg cA2 showed a consistently higher weight gain than the D-PBS-treated animals throughout the study. This weight gain was significant at weeks 1 and weeks 3-8. The animals  
25 treated with 1 mg/kg TNV148 also achieved significant weight gain at weeks 5, 6 and 8 of the study. (See Figure 16).

Figure 17 represents the progression of disease severity based on the arthritic index. The 10 mg/kg cA2-treated group's arthritic index was lower than the D-PBS control group starting at week 4 and continuing throughout the remainder of the study (week 8). Both of the  
30 TNV148-treated Groups and the 1 mg/kg cA2-treated Group showed a significant reduction in AI at week 4. Although a previous study (P-099-017) showed that TNV148 was slightly more effective at reducing the Arthritic Index following a single 1 mg/kg intraperitoneal bolus, this study showed that the AI from both versions of the TNV antibody-treated groups was slightly higher. Although (with the exception of week 6) the 1 mg/kg cA2-treated Group was not

significantly increased when compared to the 10 mg/kg cA2 group and the TNV148-treated Groups were significantly higher at weeks 7 and 8, there were no significant differences in AI between the 1 mg/kg cA2, 1 mg/kg TNV148 and 1 mg/kg TNV148B at any point in the study.

5

It will be clear that the invention can be practiced otherwise than as particularly described in the foregoing description and examples.

Numerous modifications and variations of the present invention are possible in light of the above teachings and, therefore, are within the scope of the appended claims.

10

## WHAT IS CLAIMED IS:

- 1 . At least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody, comprising at least one variable region comprising SEQ ID NO:7 or 8.
- 2 . An TNF antibody according to claim 1, wherein said antibody binds TNF with an affinity of at least one selected from at least  $10^{-9}$  M, at least  $10^{-10}$  M, at least  $10^{-11}$  M, or at least  $10^{-12}$  M.
- 3 . An TNF antibody according to claim 1, wherein said antibody substantially neutralizes at least one activity of at least one TNF protein.
- 4 . An isolated nucleic acid encoding at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody having at least one variable region comprising SEQ ID NO:7 or 8.
- 5 . An isolated nucleic acid vector comprising an isolated nucleic acid according to claim 4.
- 6 . A prokaryotic or eukaryotic host cell comprising an isolated nucleic acid according to claim 5.
- 7 . A host cell according to claim 6, wherein said host cell is at least one selected from COS-1, COS-7, HEK293, BHK21, CHO, BSC-1, Hep G2, 653, SP2/0, 293, HeLa, myeloma, or lymphoma cells, or any derivative, immortalized or transformed cell thereof.
- 8 . A method for producing at least one anti-TNF antibody, comprising translating a nucleic acid according to claim 4 under conditions in vitro, in vivo or in situ, such that the TNF antibody is expressed in detectable or recoverable amounts.
- 9 . A composition comprising at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody having at least one variable region comprising SEQ ID NO:7 or 8, and at least one pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or diluent.
- 10 . A composition according to claim 9, further comprising at least one composition comprising an effective amount of at least one compound or protein selected from at least one of a detectable label or reporter, a TNF antagonist, an antirheumatic, a muscle relaxant, a narcotic, a non-steroid anti-inflammatory drug (NSAID), an analgesic, an anesthetic, a sedative, a local anesthetic, a neuromuscular blocker, an antimicrobial, an antipsoriatic, a corticosteroid, an anabolic steroid, an erythropoietin, an immunization, an immunoglobulin, an immunosuppressive, a growth hormone, a hormone replacement drug, a radiopharmaceutical, an antidepressant, an antipsychotic, a stimulant, an asthma medication, a beta agonist, an inhaled steroid, an epinephrine or analog, a cytokine, or a cytokine antagonist.
- 11 . An anti-idiotype antibody or fragment that specifically binds at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody having at least one variable region comprising SEQ ID NO:7 or 8.

12. A method for diagnosing or treating a TNF related condition in a cell, tissue, organ or animal, comprising

(a) contacting or administering a composition comprising an effective amount of at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody having at least one variable region

5 comprising SEQ ID NO:7 or 8, with, or to, said cell, tissue, organ or animal.

13. A method according to claim 12, wherein said effective amount is 0.001-50 mg/kilogram of said cells, tissue, organ or animal.

14. A method according to claim 12, wherein said contacting or said administrating is by at least one mode selected from parenteral, subcutaneous, intramuscular, 10 intravenous, intrarticular, intrabronchial, intraabdominal, intracapsular, intracartilaginous, intracavitory, intracelial, intracelebellar, intracerebroventricular, intracolic, intracervical, intragastric, intrahepatic, intramyocardial, intraosteal, intrapelvic, intrapericardiac, intraperitoneal, intrapleural, intraprostatic, intrapulmonary, intrarectal, intrarenal, intraretinal, intraspinal, intrasynovial, intrathoracic, intrauterine, intravesical, bolus, vaginal, rectal, buccal, 15 sublingual, intranasal, or transdermal.

15. A method according to claim 12, further comprising administering, prior, concurrently or after said (a) contacting or administering, at least one composition comprising an effective amount of at least one compound or protein selected from at least one of a detectable label or reporter, a TNF antagonist, an antirheumatic, a muscle relaxant, a 20 narcotic, a non-steroid anti-inflammatory drug (NSAID), an analgesic, an anesthetic, a sedative, a local anesthetic, a neuromuscular blocker, an antimicrobial, an antipsoriatic, a corticosteriod, an anabolic steroid, an erythropoietin, an immunization, an immunoglobulin, an immuno suppressive, a growth hormone, a hormone replacement drug, a radiopharmaceutical, an antidepressant, an antipsychotic, a stimulant, an asthma medication, a beta agonist, an 25 inhaled steroid, an epinephrine or analog, a cytokine, or a cytokine antagonist.

16. A medical device, comprising at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody having at least one variable region comprising SEQ ID NO:7 or 8, wherein said device is suitable to contacting or administering said at least one anti-TNF antibody by at least one mode selected from parenteral, subcutaneous, intramuscular, intravenous, intrarticular, 30 intrabronchial, intraabdominal, intracapsular, intracartilaginous, intracavitory, intracelial, intracelebellar, intracerebroventricular, intracolic, intracervical, intragastric, intrahepatic, intramyocardial, intraosteal, intrapelvic, intrapericardiac, intraperitoneal, intrapleural, intraprostatic, intrapulmonary, intrarectal, intrarenal, intraretinal, intraspinal, intrasynovial, intrathoracic, intrauterine, intravesical, bolus, vaginal, rectal, buccal, sublingual, intranasal, or 35 transdermal.

17. An article of manufacture for human pharmaceutical or diagnostic use, comprising packaging material and a container comprising a solution or a lyophilized form of at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody having at least one variable region comprising SEQ ID NO:7 or 8.

5 18. The article of manufacture of claim 17, wherein said container is a component of a parenteral, subcutaneous, intramuscular, intravenous, intrarticular, intrabronchial, intraabdominal, intracapsular, intracartilaginous, intracavitory, intracelial, intracelebellar, intracerebroventricular, intracolic, intracervical, intragastric, intrahepatic, intramyocardial, intraosteal, intrapelvic, intrapericardiac, intraperitoneal, intrapleural, 10 intraprostatic, intrapulmonary, intrarectal, intrarenal, intraretinal, intraspinal, intrasynovial, intrathoracic, intrauterine, intravesical, bolus, vaginal, rectal, buccal, sublingual, intranasal, or transdermal delivery device or system.

15 19. A method for producing at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody having at least one variable region comprising SEQ ID NO:7 or 8, comprising providing a host cell or transgenic animal or transgenic plant or plant cell capable of expressing in recoverable amounts said antibody.

20. At least one anti-TNF antibody produced by a method according to claim 19.

21. At least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody, comprising either (i) all of the heavy chain complementarity determining regions (CDR) amino acid sequences of SEQ ID NOS:1, 2, and 3; or (ii) all of the light chain CDR amino acids sequences of SEQ ID NOS:4, 5, and 6.

25 22. An TNF antibody according to claim 21, wherein said antibody binds TNF with an affinity of at least one selected from at least  $10^{-9}$  M, at least  $10^{-10}$  M, at least  $10^{-11}$  M, or at least  $10^{-12}$  M.

23. An TNF antibody according to claim 21, wherein said antibody substantially neutralizes at least one activity of at least one TNF protein.

24. An isolated nucleic acid encoding at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody either (i) all of the heavy chain CDR amino acid sequences of SEQ ID NOS:1, 2, and 3; or (ii) all of the light chain CDR amino acids sequences of SEQ ID NOS:4, 5, and 6.

30 25. An isolated nucleic acid vector comprising an isolated nucleic acid according to claim 4.

35 26. A prokaryotic or eukaryotic host cell comprising an isolated nucleic acid according to claim 25.

27. A host cell according to claim 26, wherein said host cell is at least one selected from COS-1, COS-7, HEK293, BHK21, CHO, BSC-1, Hep G2, 653, SP2/0, 293, HeLa, myeloma, or lymphoma cells, or any derivative, immortalized or transformed cell thereof.

5 28. A method for producing at least one anti-TNF antibody, comprising translating a nucleic acid according to claim 24 under conditions *in vitro*, *in vivo* or *in situ*, such that the TNF antibody is expressed in detectable or recoverable amounts.

10 29. A composition comprising at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody having either (i) all of the heavy chain CDR amino acid sequences of SEQ ID NOS:1, 2, and 3; or (ii) all of the light chain CDR amino acids sequences of SEQ ID NOS:4, 5, and 6, and at least one pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or diluent.

15 30. A composition according to claim 29, further comprising at least one composition comprising an effective amount of at least one compound or protein selected from at least one of a detectable label or reporter, a TNF antagonist, an antirheumatic, a muscle relaxant, a narcotic, a non-steroid anti-inflammatory drug (NSAID), an analgesic, an anesthetic, a sedative, a local anesthetic, a neuromuscular blocker, an antimicrobial, an antipsoriatic, a corticosteroid, an anabolic steroid, an erythropoietin, an immunization, an immunoglobulin, an immunosuppressive, a growth hormone, a hormone replacement drug, a 20 radiopharmaceutical, an antidepressant, an antipsychotic, a stimulant, an asthma medication, a beta agonist, an inhaled steroid, an epinephrine or analog, a cytokine, or a cytokine antagonist.

25 31. An anti-idiotype antibody or fragment that specifically binds at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody having either (i) all of the heavy chain CDR amino acid sequences of SEQ ID NOS:1, 2, and 3; or (ii) all of the light chain CDR amino acids sequences of SEQ ID NOS:4, 5, and 6.

32. A method for diagnosing or treating a TNF related condition in a cell, tissue, organ or animal, comprising

(a) contacting or administering a composition comprising an effective amount of at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody having either (i) all of the heavy chain CDR amino acid sequences of SEQ ID NOS:1, 2, and 3; or (ii) all of the light chain CDR amino acids sequences of SEQ ID NOS:4, 5, and 6, with, or to, said cell, tissue, organ or animal.

30 33. A method according to claim 32, wherein said effective amount is 0.001-50 mg/kilogram of said cells, tissue, organ or animal.

34. A method according to claim 32, wherein said contacting or said 35 administrating is by at least one mode selected from parenteral, subcutaneous, intramuscular,

intravenous, intrarticular, intrabronchial, intraabdominal, intracapsular, intracartilaginous, intracavitory, intracelial, intracelebellar, intracerebroventricular, intracolic, intracervical, intragastric, intrahepatic, intramyocardial, intraosteal, intrapelvic, intrapericardiac, intraperitoneal, intrapleural, intraprostatic, intrapulmonary, intrarectal, intrarenal, intraretinal, 5 intraspinal, intrasynovial, intrathoracic, intrauterine, intravesical, bolus, vaginal, rectal, buccal, sublingual, intranasal, or transdermal.

35. A method according to claim 32, further comprising administering, prior, concurrently or after said (a) contacting or administering, at least one composition comprising an effective amount of at least one compound or protein selected from at least one 10 of a detectable label or reporter, a TNF antagonist, an antirheumatic, a muscle relaxant, a narcotic, a non-steroid anti-inflammatory drug (NSAID), an analgesic, an anesthetic, a sedative, a local anesthetic, a neuromuscular blocker, an antimicrobial, an antipsoriatic, a corticosteriod, an anabolic steroid, an erythropoietin, an immunization, an immunoglobulin, an immunosuppressive, a growth hormone, a hormone replacement drug, a radiopharmaceutical, 15 an antidepressant, an antipsychotic, a stimulant, an asthma medication, a beta agonist, an inhaled steroid, an epinephrine or analog, a cytokine, or a cytokine antagonist.

36. A medical device, comprising at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody having either (i) all of the heavy chain CDR amino acid sequences of SEQ ID NOS:1, 2, and 3; or (ii) all of the light chain CDR amino acids sequences of SEQ ID NOS:4, 5, 20 and 6, wherein said device is suitable to contacting or administering said at least one anti-TNF antibody by at least one mode selected from parenteral, subcutaneous, intramuscular, intravenous, intrarticular, intrabronchial, intraabdominal, intracapsular, intracartilaginous, intracavitory, intracelial, intracelebellar, intracerebroventricular, intracolic, intracervical, intragastric, intrahepatic, intramyocardial, intraosteal, intrapelvic, intrapericardiac, 25 intraperitoneal, intrapleural, intraprostatic, intrapulmonary, intrarectal, intrarenal, intraretinal, intraspinal, intrasynovial, intrathoracic, intrauterine, intravesical, bolus, vaginal, rectal, buccal, sublingual, intranasal, or transdermal.

37. An article of manufacture for human pharmaceutical or diagnostic use, comprising packaging material and a container comprising a solution or a lyophilized form of 30 at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody having either (i) all of the heavy chain CDR amino acid sequences of SEQ ID NOS:1, 2, and 3; or (ii) all of the light chain CDR amino acids sequences of SEQ ID NOS:4, 5, and 6.

38. The article of manufacture of claim 37, wherein said container is a component of a parenteral, subcutaneous, intramuscular, intravenous, intrarticular, 35 intrabronchial, intraabdominal, intracapsular, intracartilaginous, intracavitory, intracelial, intracelebellar, intracerebroventricular, intracolic, intracervical, intragastric, intrahepatic,

intramyocardial, intraosteal, intrapelvic, intrapericardiac, intraperitoneal, intrapleural, intraprostatic, intrapulmonary, intrarectal, intrarenal, intraretinal, intraspinal, intrasynovial, intrathoracic, intrauterine, intravesical, bolus, vaginal, rectal, buccal, sublingual, intranasal, or transdermal delivery device or system.

5           39. A method for producing at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody having either (i) all of the heavy chain CDR amino acid sequences of SEQ ID NOS:1, 2, and 3; or (ii) all of the light chain CDR amino acids sequences of SEQ ID NOS:4, 5, and 6, comprising providing a host cell or transgenic animal or transgenic plant or plant cell capable of expressing in recoverable amounts said antibody.

10          40. At least one anti-TNF antibody produced by a method according to claim 39.

41. At least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody, comprising at least one heavy chain or light chain CDR having the amino acid sequence of at least one of SEQ ID NOS: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6.

15          42. An TNF antibody according to claim 41, wherein said antibody binds TNF with an affinity of at least one selected from at least  $10^{-9}$  M, at least  $10^{-10}$  M, at least  $10^{-11}$  M, or at least  $10^{-12}$  M.

43. An TNF antibody according to claim 41, wherein said antibody substantially neutralizes at least one activity of at least one TNF protein.

20          44. An isolated nucleic acid encoding at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody having at least one heavy chain or light chain CDR having the amino acid sequence of at least one of SEQ ID NOS: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6.

45. An isolated nucleic acid vector comprising an isolated nucleic acid according to claim 44.

25          46. A prokaryotic or eukaryotic host cell comprising an isolated nucleic acid according to claim 45.

47. A host cell according to claim 46, wherein said host cell is at least one selected from COS-1, COS-7, HEK293, BHK21, CHO, BSC-1, Hep G2, 653, SP2/0, 293, HeLa, myeloma, or lymphoma cells, or any derivative, immortalized or transformed cell thereof.

30          48. A method for producing at least one anti-TNF antibody, comprising translating a nucleic acid according to claim 44 under conditions *in vitro*, *in vivo* or *in situ*, such that the TNF antibody is expressed in detectable or recoverable amounts.

49. A composition comprising at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody having at least one heavy chain or light chain CDR having the amino acid sequence

of at least one of SEQ ID NOS: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6, and at least one pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or diluent.

50 . A composition according to claim 49, further comprising at least one composition comprising an effective amount of at least one compound or protein selected from  
5 at least one of a detectable label or reporter, a TNF antagonist, an antirheumatic, a muscle relaxant, a narcotic, a non-steroid anti-inflammatory drug (NSAID), an analgesic, an anesthetic, a sedative, a local anesthetic, a neuromuscular blocker, an antimicrobial, an antipsoriatic, a corticosteroid, an anabolic steroid, an erythropoietin, an immunization, an immunoglobulin, an immunosuppressive, a growth hormone, a hormone replacement drug, a  
10 radiopharmaceutical, an antidepressant, an antipsychotic, a stimulant, an asthma medication, a beta agonist, an inhaled steroid, an epinephrine or analog, a cytokine, or a cytokine antagonist.

51 . An anti-idiotype antibody or fragment that specifically binds at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody having at least one heavy chain or light chain CDR having the amino acid sequence of at least one of SEQ ID NOS: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6.

15 52 . A method for diagnosing or treating a TNF related condition in a cell, tissue, organ or animal, comprising

(a) contacting or administering a composition comprising an effective amount of at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody having at least one heavy chain or light chain CDR having the amino acid sequence of at least one of SEQ ID NOS: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6, with,  
20 or to, said cell, tissue, organ or animal.

53 . A method according to claim 52, wherein said effective amount is 0.001-50 mg/kilogram of said cells, tissue, organ or animal.

54 . A method according to claim 52, wherein said contacting or said administrating is by at least one mode selected from parenteral, subcutaneous, intramuscular, 25 intravenous, intrarticular, intrabronchial, intraabdominal, intracapsular, intracartilaginous, intracavitory, intracelial, intracelebellar, intracerebroventricular, intracolic, intracervical, intragastric, intrahepatic, intramyocardial, intraosteal, intrapelvic, intrapericardiac, intraperitoneal, intrapleural, intraprostatic, intrapulmonary, intrarectal, intrarenal, intraretinal, intraspinal, intrasynovial, intrathoracic, intrauterine, intravesical, bolus, vaginal, rectal, buccal, 30 sublingual, intranasal, or transdermal.

55 . A method according to claim 52, further comprising administering, prior, concurrently or after said (a) contacting or administering, at least one composition comprising an effective amount of at least one compound or protein selected from at least one of a detectable label or reporter, a TNF antagonist, an antirheumatic, a muscle relaxant, a narcotic, a non-steroid anti-inflammatory drug (NSAID), an analgesic, an anesthetic, a  
35 sedative, a local anesthetic, a neuromuscular blocker, an antimicrobial, an antipsoriatic, a

corticosteroid, an anabolic steroid, an erythropoietin, an immunization, an immunoglobulin, an immunosuppressive, a growth hormone, a hormone replacement drug, a radiopharmaceutical, an antidepressant, an antipsychotic, a stimulant, an asthma medication, a beta agonist, an inhaled steroid, an epinephrine or analog, a cytokine, or a cytokine antagonist.

5        56. A medical device, comprising at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody having at least one heavy chain or light chain CDR having the amino acid sequence of at least one of SEQ ID NOS: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6, wherein said device is suitable to contacting or administering said at least one anti-TNF antibody by at least one mode selected from parenteral, subcutaneous, intramuscular, intravenous, intrarticular, intrabronchial,

10      intraabdominal, intracapsular, intracartilaginous, intracavitory, intracestial, intracebellar, intracerebroventricular, intracolic, intracervical, intragastric, intrahepatic, intramyocardial, intraosteal, intrapelvic, intrapericardiac, intraperitoneal, intrapleural, intraprostatic, intrapulmonary, intrarectal, intrarenal, intraretinal, intraspinal, intrasynovial, intrathoracic, intrauterine, intravesical, bolus, vaginal, rectal, buccal, sublingual, intranasal, or transdermal.

15      57. An article of manufacture for human pharmaceutical or diagnostic use, comprising packaging material and a container comprising a solution or a lyophilized form of at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody having at least one heavy chain or light chain CDR having the amino acid sequence of at least one of SEQ ID NOS: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6.

20      58. The article of manufacture of claim 57, wherein said container is a component of a parenteral, subcutaneous, intramuscular, intravenous, intrarticular, intrabronchial, intraabdominal, intracapsular, intracartilaginous, intracavitory, intracestial, intracebellar, intracerebroventricular, intracolic, intracervical, intragastric, intrahepatic, intramyocardial, intraosteal, intrapelvic, intrapericardiac, intraperitoneal, intrapleural, intraprostatic, intrapulmonary, intrarectal, intrarenal, intraretinal, intraspinal, intrasynovial, 25     intrathoracic, intrauterine, intravesical, bolus, vaginal, rectal, buccal, sublingual, intranasal, or transdermal delivery device or system.

30      59. A method for producing at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody having at least one heavy chain or light chain CDR having the amino acid sequence of at least one of SEQ ID NOS: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6, comprising providing a host cell or transgenic animal or transgenic plant or plant cell capable of expressing in recoverable amounts said antibody.

60. At least one anti-TNF antibody produced by a method according to claim 59.

35      61. At least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody that binds to the same region of a TNF protein as an antibody comprising at least one heavy chain or light chain CDR having the amino acid sequence of at least one of SEQ ID NOS: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6.

62 . An TNF antibody according to claim 61, wherein said antibody binds TNF with an affinity of at least one selected from at least  $10^{-9}$  M, at least  $10^{-10}$  M, at least  $10^{-11}$  M, or at least  $10^{-12}$  M.

5 63 . An TNF antibody according to claim 61, wherein said antibody substantially neutralizes at least one activity of at least one TNF protein.

64 . An isolated nucleic acid encoding at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody that binds to the same region of a TNF protein as an antibody comprising at least one heavy chain or light chain CDR having the amino acid sequence of at least one of SEQ ID NOS: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6.

10 65 . An isolated nucleic acid vector comprising an isolated nucleic acid according to claim 64.

66 . A prokaryotic or eukaryotic host cell comprising an isolated nucleic acid according to claim 65.

15 67 . A host cell according to claim 66, wherein said host cell is at least one selected from COS-1, COS-7, HEK293, BHK21, CHO, BSC-1, Hep G2, 653, SP2/0, 293, HeLa, myeloma, or lymphoma cells, or any derivative, immortalized or transformed cell thereof.

68 . A method for producing at least one anti-TNF antibody, comprising translating a nucleic acid according to claim 64 under conditions *in vitro*, *in vivo* or *in situ*, such that the TNF antibody is expressed in detectable or recoverable amounts.

20 69 . A composition comprising at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody that binds to the same region of a TNF protein as an antibody comprising at least one heavy chain or light chain CDR having the amino acid sequence of at least one of SEQ ID NOS: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6, and at least one pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or diluent.

25 70 . A composition according to claim 69, further comprising at least one composition comprising an effective amount of at least one compound or protein selected from at least one of a detectable label or reporter, a TNF antagonist, an antirheumatic, a muscle relaxant, a narcotic, a non-steroid anti-inflammatory drug (NSAID), an analgesic, an anesthetic, a sedative, a local anesthetic, a neuromuscular blocker, an antimicrobial, an antipsoriatic, a corticosteroid, an anabolic steroid, an erythropoietin, an immunization, an 30 immunoglobulin, an immunosuppressive, a growth hormone, a hormone replacement drug, a radiopharmaceutical, an antidepressant, an antipsychotic, a stimulant, an asthma medication, a beta agonist, an inhaled steroid, an epinephrine or analog, a cytokine, or a cytokine antagonist.

71 . An anti-idiotype antibody or fragment that specifically binds at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody that binds to the same region of a TNF protein as an antibody comprising at least one heavy chain or light chain CDR having the amino acid sequence of at least one of SEQ ID NOS: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6.

72. A method for diagnosing or treating a TNF related condition in a cell, tissue, organ or animal, comprising

- (a) contacting or administering a composition comprising an effective amount of at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody that binds to the same region of a TNF protein as an antibody comprising at least one heavy chain or light chain CDR having the amino acid sequence of at least one of SEQ ID NOS: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6, with, or to, said cell, tissue, organ or animal.

73. A method according to claim 72, wherein said effective amount is 0.001-50 mg/kilogram of said cells, tissue, organ or animal.

74. A method according to claim 72, wherein said contacting or said administrating is by at least one mode selected from parenteral, subcutaneous, intramuscular, intravenous, intrarticular, intrabronchial, intraabdominal, intracapsular, intracartilaginous, intracavitory, intracelial, intracelebellar, intracerebroventricular, intracolic, intracervical, intragastric, intrahepatic, intramyocardial, intraosteal, intrapelvic, intrapericardiac, intraperitoneal, intrapleural, intraprostatic, intrapulmonary, intrarectal, intrarenal, intraretinal, intraspinal, intrasynovial, intrathoracic, intrauterine, intravesical, bolus, vaginal, rectal, buccal, sublingual, intranasal, or transdermal.

75. A method according to claim 72, further comprising administering, prior, concurrently or after said (a) contacting or administering, at least one composition comprising an effective amount of at least one compound or protein selected from at least one of a detectable label or reporter, a TNF antagonist, an antirheumatic, a muscle relaxant, a narcotic, a non-steroid anti-inflammatory drug (NSAID), an analgesic, an anesthetic, a sedative, a local anesthetic, a neuromuscular blocker, an antimicrobial, an antipsoriatic, a corticosteriod, an anabolic steroid, an erythropoietin, an immunization, an immunoglobulin, an immunosuppressive, a growth hormone, a hormone replacement drug, a radiopharmaceutical, an antidepressant, an antipsychotic, a stimulant, an asthma medication, a beta agonist, an inhaled steroid, an epinephrine or analog, a cytokine, or a cytokine antagonist.

76. A medical device, comprising at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody that binds to the same region of a TNF protein as an antibody comprising at least one heavy chain or light chain CDR having the amino acid sequence of at least one of SEQ ID NOS: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6, wherein said device is suitable to contacting or administering said at least one anti-TNF antibody by at least one mode selected from parenteral, subcutaneous, intramuscular, intravenous, intrarticular, intrabronchial, intraabdominal, intracapsular, intracartilaginous, intracavitory, intracelial, intracelebellar, intracerebroventricular, intracolic, intracervical, intragastric, intrahepatic, intramyocardial, intraosteal, intrapelvic, intrapericardiac, intraperitoneal, intrapleural, intraprostatic,

intrapulmonary, intrarectal, intrarenal, intraretinal, intraspinal, intrasynovial, intrathoracic, intrauterine, intravesical, bolus, vaginal, rectal, buccal, sublingual, intranasal, or transdermal.

77. An article of manufacture for human pharmaceutical or diagnostic use, comprising packaging material and a container comprising a solution or a lyophilized form of  
5 at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody that binds to the same region of a TNF protein as an antibody comprising at least one heavy chain or light chain CDR having the amino acid sequence of at least one of SEQ ID NOS: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6.

78. The article of manufacture of claim 77, wherein said container is a component of a parenteral, subcutaneous, intramuscular, intravenous, intrarticular,  
10 intrabronchial, intraabdominal, intracapsular, intracartilaginous, intracavitory, intracelial, intracelebellar, intracerebroventricular, intracolic, intracervical, intragastric, intrahepatic, intramyocardial, intraosteal, intrapelvic, intrapericardiac, intraperitoneal, intrapleural, intraprostatic, intrapulmonary, intrarectal, intrarenal, intraretinal, intraspinal, intrasynovial, intrathoracic, intrauterine, intravesical, bolus, vaginal, rectal, buccal, sublingual, intranasal, or  
15 transdermal delivery device or system.

79. A method for producing at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody that binds to the same region of a TNF protein as an antibody comprising at least one heavy chain or light chain CDR having the amino acid sequence of at least one of SEQ ID NOS: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6, comprising providing a host cell or transgenic animal or transgenic  
20 plant or plant cell capable of expressing in recoverable amounts said antibody.

80. At least one anti-TNF antibody produced by a method according to claim 79.

81. At least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody, comprising at least one human CDR, wherein said antibody specifically binds at least one epitope comprising  
25 at least 1-3, to the entire amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO: 9.

82. An TNF antibody according to claim 81, wherein said antibody binds TNF with an affinity of at least one selected from at least  $10^{-9}$  M, at least  $10^{-10}$  M, at least  $10^{-11}$  M, or at least  $10^{-12}$  M.

83. An TNF antibody according to claim 81, wherein said antibody  
30 substantially neutralizes at least one activity of at least one TNF protein.

84. An isolated nucleic acid encoding at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody having at least one human CDR, wherein said antibody specifically binds at least one epitope comprising at least 1-3, to the entire amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:  
9.

35 85. An isolated nucleic acid vector comprising an isolated nucleic acid according to claim 84.

86. A prokaryotic or eukaryotic host cell comprising an isolated nucleic acid according to claim 85.

87. A host cell according to claim 86, wherein said host cell is at least one selected from COS-1, COS-7, HEK293, BHK21, CHO, BSC-1, Hep G2, 653, SP2/0, 293, HeLa, 5 myeloma, or lymphoma cells, or any derivative, immortalized or transformed cell thereof.

88. A method for producing at least one anti-TNF antibody, comprising translating a nucleic acid according to claim 84 under conditions in vitro, in vivo or in situ, such that the TNF antibody is expressed in detectable or recoverable amounts.

89. A composition comprising at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF 10 antibody having at least one human CDR, wherein said antibody specifically binds at least one epitope comprising at least 1-3, to the entire amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO: 9, and at least one pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or diluent.

90. A composition according to claim 89, further comprising at least one composition comprising an effective amount of at least one compound or protein selected from 15 at least one of a detectable label or reporter, a TNF antagonist, an antirheumatic, a muscle relaxant, a narcotic, a non-steroid anti-inflammatory drug (NSAID), an analgesic, an anesthetic, a sedative, a local anesthetic, a neuromuscular blocker, an antimicrobial, an antipsoriatic, a corticosteroid, an anabolic steroid, an erythropoietin, an immunization, an immunoglobulin, an immunosuppressive, a growth hormone, a hormone replacement drug, a 20 radiopharmaceutical, an antidepressant, an antipsychotic, a stimulant, an asthma medication, a beta agonist, an inhaled steroid, an epinephrine or analog, a cytokine, or a cytokine antagonist.

91. An anti-idiotype antibody or fragment that specifically binds at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody having at least one human CDR, wherein said antibody specifically binds at least one epitope comprising at least 1-3, to the entire amino acid 25 sequence of SEQ ID NO: 9.

92. A method for diagnosing or treating a TNF related condition in a cell, tissue, organ or animal, comprising

(a) contacting or administering a composition comprising an effective amount of at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody having at least one human CDR, wherein 30 said antibody specifically binds at least one epitope comprising at least 1-3, to the entire amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO: 9, with, or to, said cell, tissue, organ or animal.

93. A method according to claim 92, wherein said effective amount is 0.001-50 mg/kilogram of said cells, tissue, organ or animal.

94. A method according to claim 92, wherein said contacting or said 35 administrating is by at least one mode selected from parenteral, subcutaneous, intramuscular, intravenous, intrarticular, intrabronchial, intraabdominal, intracapsular, intracartilaginous,

intracavitory, intracelial, intracelebellar, intracerebroventricular, intracolic, intracervical, 5 intragastric, intrahepatic, intramyocardial, intraosteal, intrapelvic, intrapericardiac, intraperitoneal, intrapleural, intraprostatic, intrapulmonary, intrarectal, intrarenal, intraretinal, intraspinal, intrasynovial, intrathoracic, intrauterine, intravesical, bolus, vaginal, rectal, buccal, sublingual, intranasal, or transdermal.

95. A method according to claim 92, further comprising administering, prior, concurrently or after said (a) contacting or administering, at least one composition comprising an effective amount of at least one compound or protein selected from at least one of a detectable label or reporter, a TNF antagonist, an antirheumatic, a muscle relaxant, a 10 narcotic, a non-steroid anti-inflammatory drug (NSAID), an analgesic, an anesthetic, a sedative, a local anesthetic, a neuromuscular blocker, an antimicrobial, an antipsoriatic, a corticosteriod, an anabolic steroid, an erythropoietin, an immunization, an immunoglobulin, an immunosuppressive, a growth hormone, a hormone replacement drug, a radiopharmaceutical, an antidepressant, an antipsychotic, a stimulant, an asthma medication, a beta agonist, an 15 inhaled steroid, an epinephrine or analog, a cytokine, or a cytokine antagonist.

96. A medical device, comprising at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody having at least one human CDR, wherein said antibody specifically binds at least one epitope comprising at least 1-3, to the entire amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO: 9, wherein said device is suitable to contacting or administering said at least one anti-TNF 20 antibody by at least one mode selected from parenteral, subcutaneous, intramuscular, intravenous, intrarticular, intrabronchial, intraabdominal, intracapsular, intracartilaginous, intracavitory, intracelial, intracelebellar, intracerebroventricular, intracolic, intracervical, intragastric, intrahepatic, intramyocardial, intraosteal, intrapelvic, intrapericardiac, intraperitoneal, intrapleural, intraprostatic, intrapulmonary, intrarectal, intrarenal, intraretinal, 25 intraspinal, intrasynovial, intrathoracic, intrauterine, intravesical, bolus, vaginal, rectal, buccal, sublingual, intranasal, or transdermal.

97. An article of manufacture for human pharmaceutical or diagnostic use, comprising packaging material and a container comprising a solution or a lyophilized form of at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody having at least one human CDR, wherein 30 said antibody specifically binds at least one epitope comprising at least 1-3, to the entire amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO: 9.

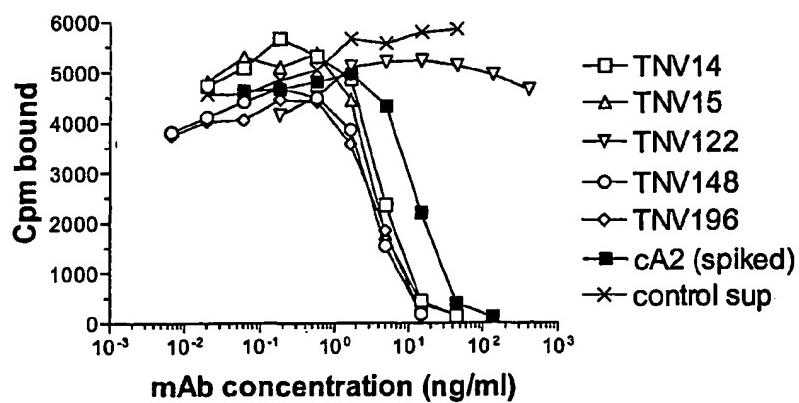
98. The article of manufacture of claim 97, wherein said container is a component of a parenteral, subcutaneous, intramuscular, intravenous, intrarticular, intrabronchial, intraabdominal, intracapsular, intracartilaginous, intracavitory, intracelial, 35 intracelebellar, intracerebroventricular, intracolic, intracervical, intragastric, intrahepatic, intramyocardial, intraosteal, intrapelvic, intrapericardiac, intraperitoneal, intrapleural,

intraprostatic, intrapulmonary, intrarectal, intrarenal, intraretinal, intraspinal, intrasynovial, intrathoracic, intrauterine, intravesical, bolus, vaginal, rectal, buccal, sublingual, intranasal, or transdermal delivery device or system.

99. A method for producing at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody having at least one human CDR, wherein said antibody specifically binds at least one epitope comprising at least 1-3, to the entire amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO: 9, comprising providing a host cell or transgenic animal or transgenic plant or plant cell capable of expressing in recoverable amounts said antibody.

100. At least one anti-TNF antibody produced by a method according to claim 99.

101. Any invention described herein.



5

10

15

20

25

**FIGURE 1**

|     |            |   |
|-----|------------|---|
| 5   | TNVs       | <u>ATGGGGTTGGGCTGAGCTGGGTTTCCTCGTGCTTTAAGA</u>  |
| 10  | germline   | Q V Q L V E S G G G V<br>CAGGTGCAGCTGGTGGAGTCTGGGGGAGGCGTG                              |
| 15  | TNVs       | GGTGTCCAGTGT.....   |
| 20  | TNV148 (B) | GGTGTCCAGTGT.....A.....   |
| 25  | germline   | V Q P G R S L R L S C A A S G<br>GTCCAGCCTGGGAGGTCCCTGAGACTCTCCTGTGCAGCCTCTGGA          |
| 30  | TNVs       | .....   |
| 35  | germline   | F T F S <u>S Y A M H W V R Q A P</u><br>TTCACCTTCAGTAGCTATGCTATGCACTGGGTCCGCCAGGCTCCA   |
| 40  | TNV14, 15  | .....   |
| 45  | TNV148 (B) | ....T.....  |
| 50  | TNV196     | .....C.....   |
| 55  | germline   | G K G L E W V A <u>V I S Y D G S</u><br>GGCAAGGGCTGGAGTGGGTGGCAGTTATCATATGATGGAAGC      |
| 60  | TNV14      | .....A....C.T.....T   |
| 65  | TNV15      | .....T....T.....T   |
| 70  | TNV148 (B) | ....C.....T....G.....   |
| 75  | TNV196     | .....T.....   |
| 80  | germline   | <u>N K Y Y A D S V K G R F T I S</u><br>AATAAAATACTACGCAGACTCCGTGAAGGGCCGATTCAACCATCTCC |
| 85  | TNV14      | .GC...A.G....G.....A.....   |
| 90  | TNV15      | ..C...A.G.....C.....  |
| 95  | TNV148 (B) | ....A.G.....  |
| 100 | TNV196     | ....A.G.C.....G.....  |

## **FIGURE 2A**

**FIGURE 2B**

|    |            |  |
|----|------------|--|
|    | TNVs       | <u>ATGGAAGCCCCAGCTCAGCTTCTCTTCCTCCTGCTACTCTGGCTC</u> |
|    |            | E I V L T Q S P A T                                  |
| 5  | germline   | GAAATTGTGTTGACACAGTCTCCAGGCCACC                      |
|    | TNVs       | CCAGATAACCACCGGA.....                                |
|    |            | L S L S P G E R A T L S C R A                        |
| 10 | germline   | CTGTCTTGTCTCCAGGGAAAGAGGCCACCCCTCTCCTGCAGGGCC        |
|    | TNVs       | .....  |
|    |            | S O S V S S Y L A W Y Q Q K P                        |
| 15 | germline   | AGTCAGAGTGTAGCAGCTACTTAGCCTGGTACCAACAGAACCT          |
|    | TNV14,15   | .....  |
|    | TNV148,196 | .....TA.....   |
|    |            | G Q A P R L L I Y D A S N R A                        |
| 20 | germline   | GGCCAGGCTCCCAGGCTCCTCATCTATGATGCATCCAACAGGGCC        |
|    | TNVs       | .....  |
|    |            | T G I P A R F S G S G S G T D                        |
| 25 | germline   | ACTGGCATCCCAGCCAGGTTCACTGGCAGTGGTCTGGGACAGAC         |
|    | TNVs       | .....  |
|    |            | F T L T I S S L E P E D F A V                        |
| 30 | germline   | TTCACTCTCACCATCAGCAGCCTAGAGCCTGAAGATTTGCAGTT         |
|    | TNVs       | .....  |
|    |            | Y Y C Q Q R S N W P P F T F G                        |
| 35 | Germline   | TATTACTGTCAGCAGCGTAGCAACTGGCCTCCATTCACTTCCGGC        |
|    | TNVs       | .....A.....  |
|    |            | P G T K V D I K R                                    |
| 40 | germline   | CCTGGGACCAAAGTGGATATCAAACGT                          |
|    | TNVs       | .....  |

45

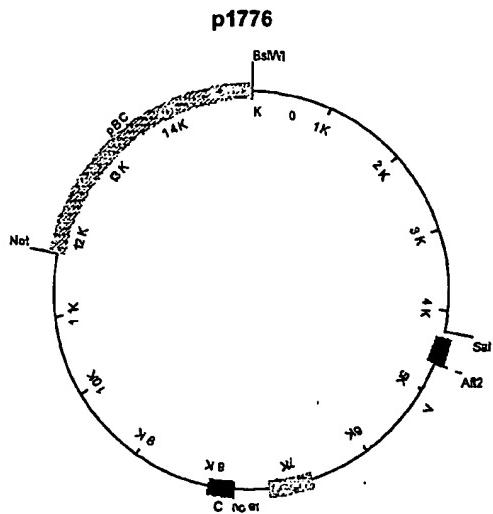
FIGURE 3

|    |   |             |
|----|---|-------------|
|    | germline <u>MGFGLSWVFLVALLRGVQC</u>           | signal      |
|    | TNVs        .....                             |             |
| 5  | germline    QVQLVESGGVVQPGRSLRLSCAASGFTFS     | <b>FR1</b>  |
|    | TNVs        .....                             |             |
|    | TNV148 (B)    .....,I..                       |             |
| 10 | germline    SYAMH                             | <b>CDR1</b> |
|    | TNVs        .....                             |             |
| 15 | germline    WVRQAPGKGLEWVA                    | <b>FR2</b>  |
|    | TNVs        .....                             |             |
|    | TNV148 (B)    .....,N.....                    |             |
| 20 | germline    VISYDGNSNKYYADSVKG                | <b>CDR2</b> |
|    | TNV14            I.L....S.K.....D             |             |
|    | TNV15            F.L.....K.....               |             |
|    | TNV148 (B)    FM.....K.....                   |             |
|    | TNV196          F.....KS.....                 |             |
| 25 | germline    RFTISRDN SKNTLYLQMNSLRAEDTAVYYCAR | <b>FR3</b>  |
|    | TNV14            .....                        |             |
|    | TNV15            .....A.....                  |             |
|    | TNV148          .....P.....                   |             |
| 30 | TNV148B        .....                          |             |
|    | TNV196          ...V.....F.....F...           |             |
| 35 | germline    -----YYYYYGMDV                    |             |
|    | TNV14            DRGISAGGN.....               | <b>CDR3</b> |
|    | TNV15            ...V....N.....               |             |
|    | TNV148 (B)    ....A...N.....                  |             |
|    | TNV196          ....G...N.....                |             |
| 40 | germline    WGQGTTVTVSS                       | <b>J6</b>   |
|    | TNVs        .....                             |             |

FIGURE 4

|            |                                  |        |
|------------|----------------------------------|--------|
| TNVs       | MEAPAQLLFLLLLWLPDTTG             | signal |
| germline   | EIVLTQSPATLSLSPGERATLSC          | FR1    |
| TNVs       | .....                            |        |
| germline   | RASQSVSSYLA                      | CDR1   |
| TNV14      | .....                            |        |
| TNV15      | .....                            |        |
| TNV148 (B) | ....Y....                        |        |
| TNV196     | ....Y....                        |        |
| germline   | WYQQKPGQAPRLLIY                  | FR2    |
| TNVs       | .....                            |        |
| germline   | DASN RAT                         | CDR2   |
| TNVs       | .....                            |        |
| germline   | GIPARFSGSGSGTDFTLTISSLEPEDFAVYYC | FR3    |
| TNVs       | .....                            |        |
| germline   | QQR SNW PPPFT                    | CDR3   |
| TNVs       | .....                            |        |
| germline   | FGPGTKVDIK                       | J3     |
| TNVs       | .....                            |        |

**FIGURE 5**



**FIGURE 6**

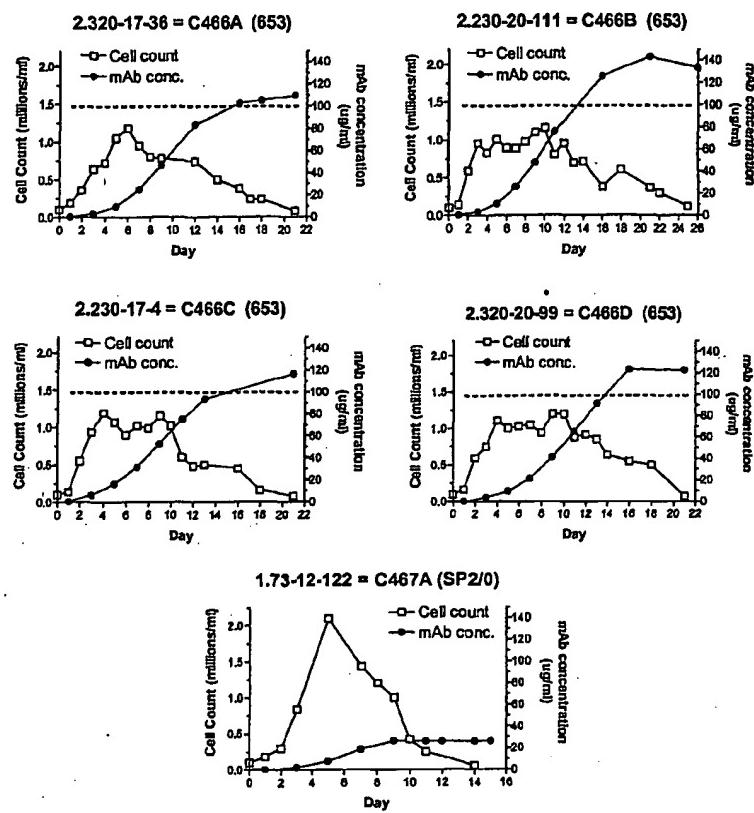
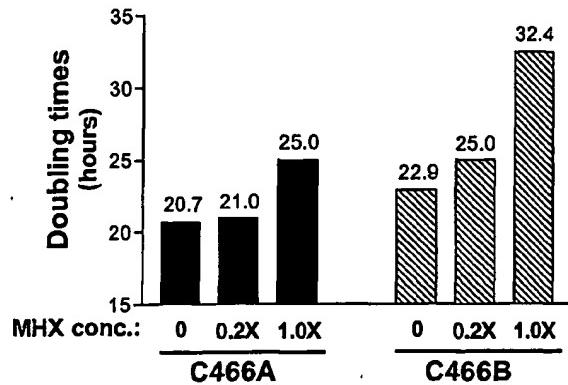
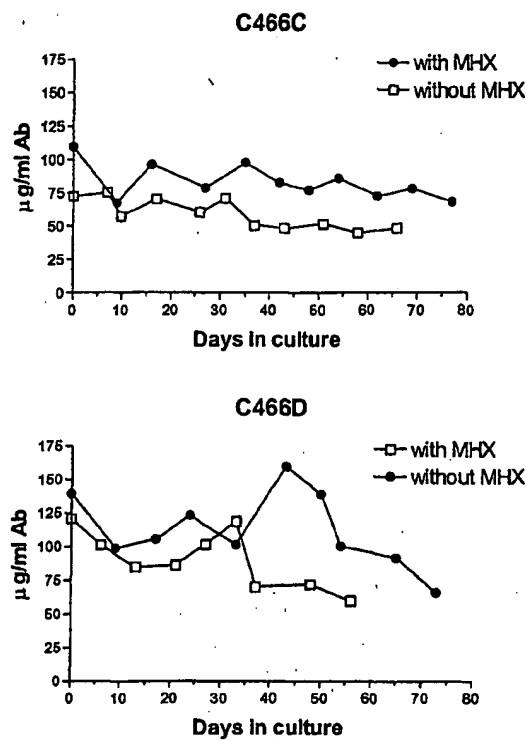
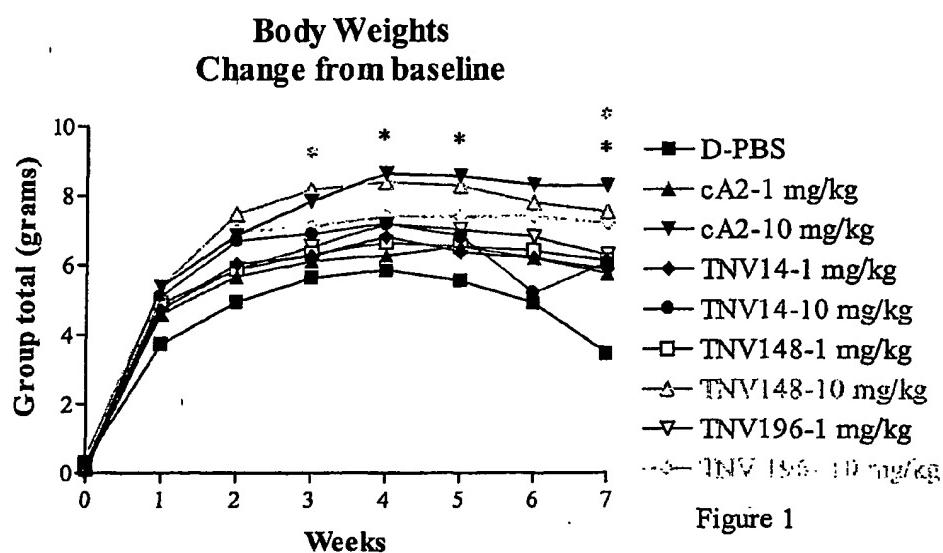


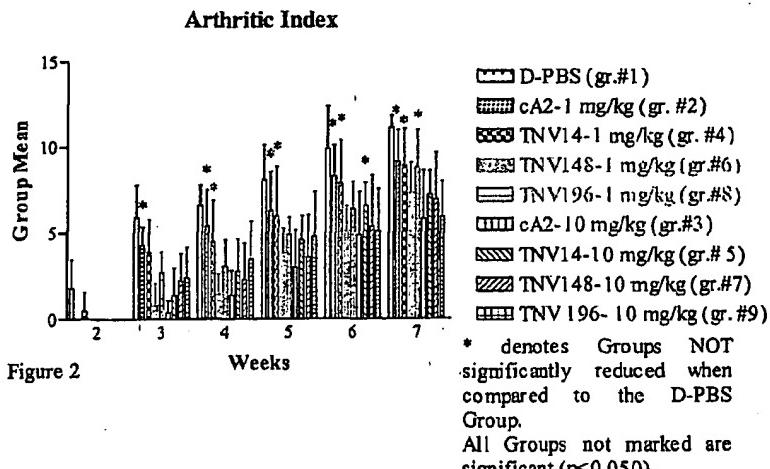
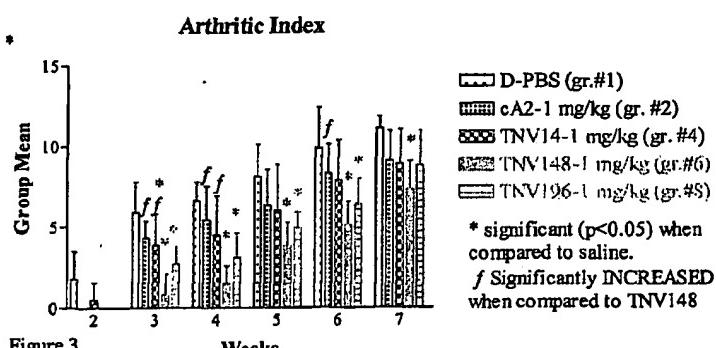
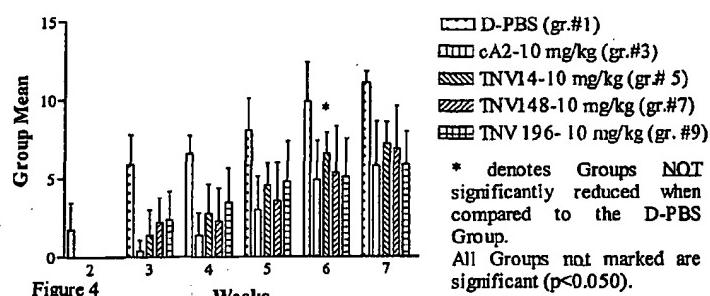
FIGURE 7

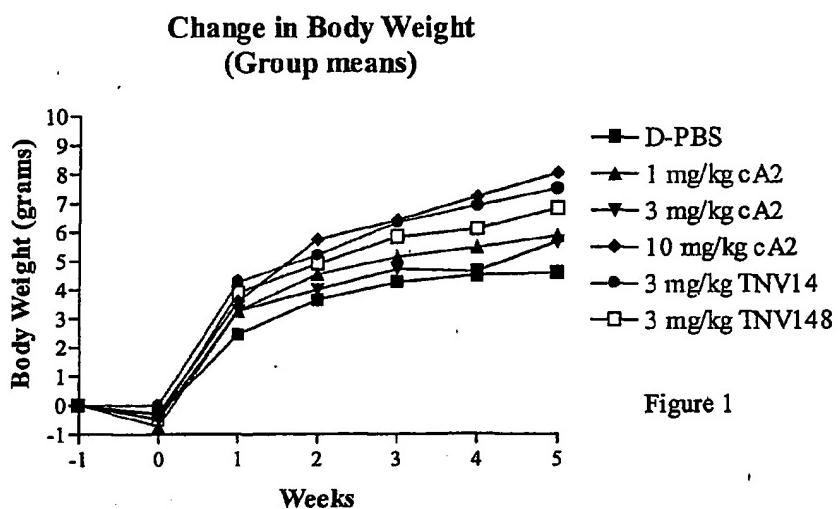
**FIGURE 8**



**FIGURE 9**

**FIGURE 10**

**FIGURE 11A****FIGURE 11B**  
**Arthritic Index****FIGURE 11C**

**FIGURE 12**

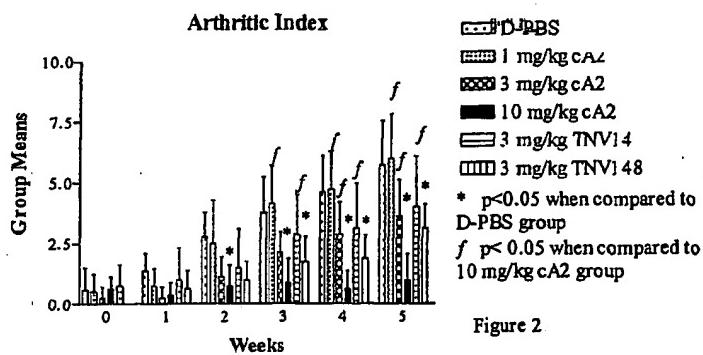


Figure 2

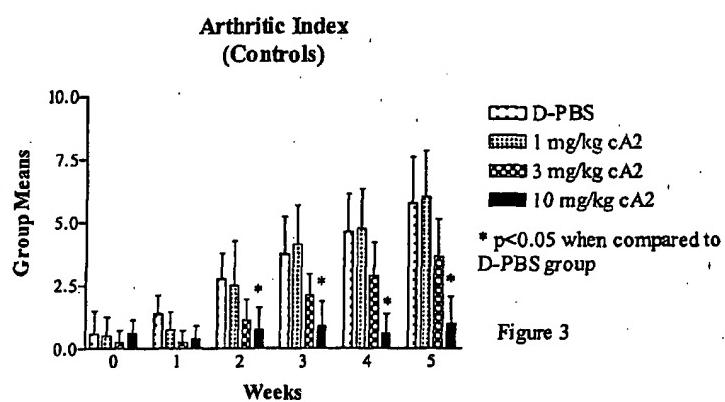
**FIGURE 13A**

Figure 3

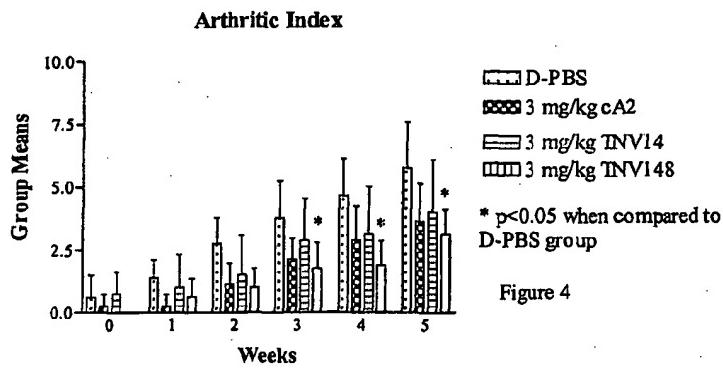
**FIGURE 13B**

Figure 4

**FIGURE 13C**

5

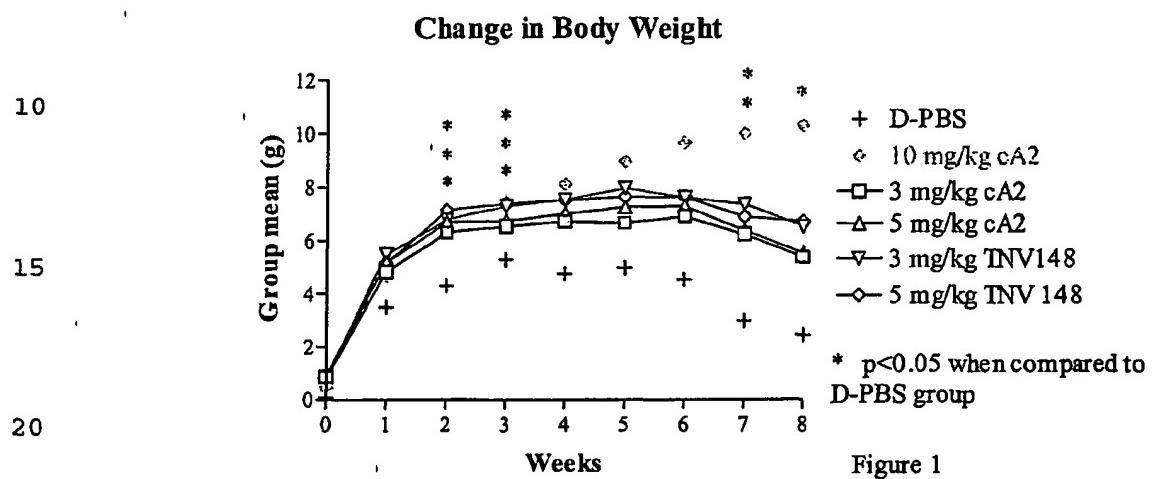


Figure 1

25

30

**FIGURE 14**

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

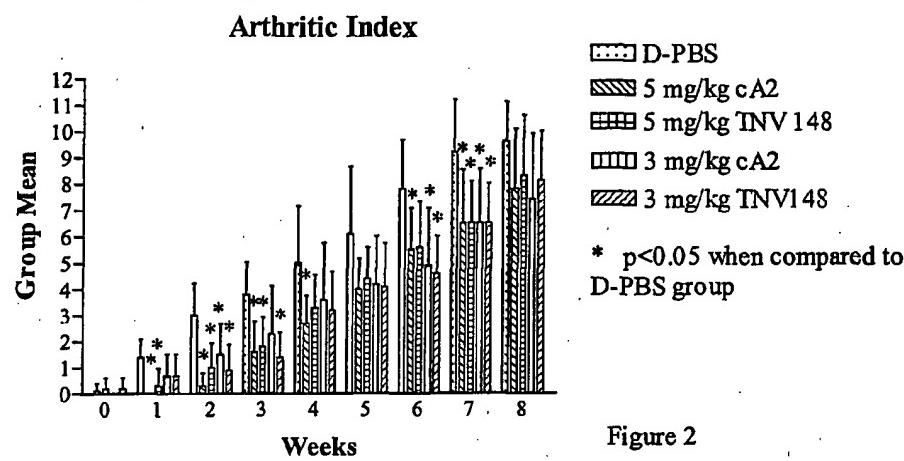
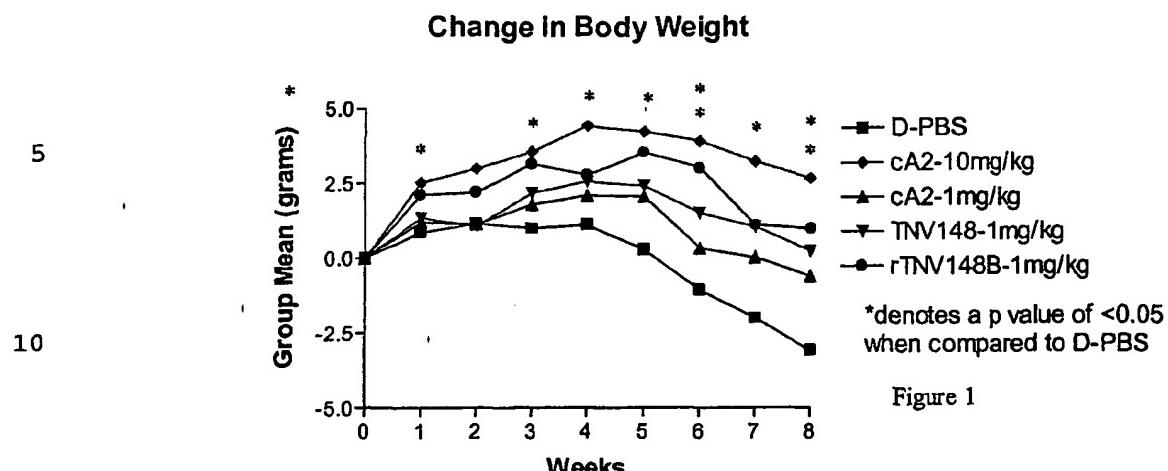


Figure 2

**FIGURE 15**



15

20

25

30

**FIGURE 16**

35

40

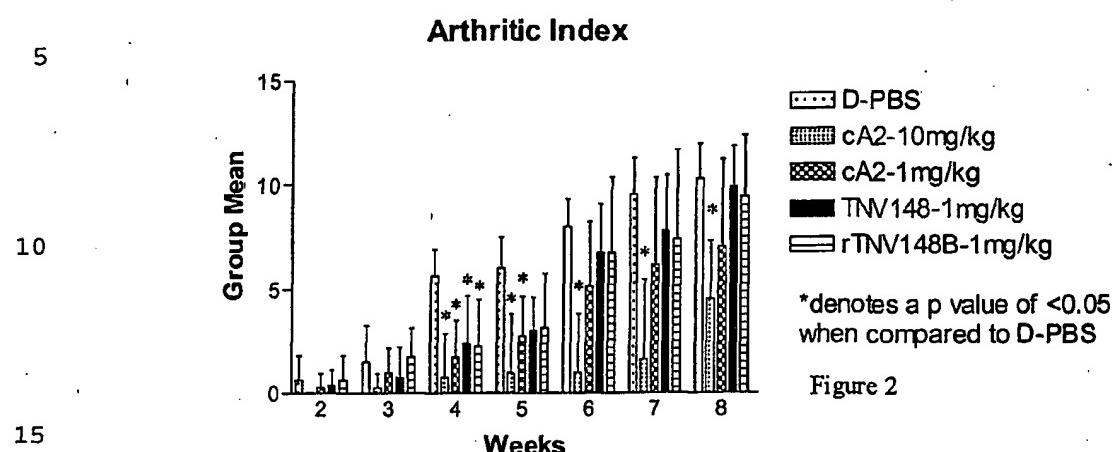


Figure 2

20

25

**FIGURE 17**

## SEQUENCE LISTING

<110> Giles-Komar, Jill;  
David Shealy;  
David Knight;  
Bernie Scallion;  
George Heavner

<120> ANTI- TNF ANTIBODIES, COMPOSITIONS, METHODS AND USES

<130> CEN250

<160> 15

<170> PatentIn Ver 2.0

<210> 1  
<211> 5  
<212> PRT  
<213> Homo sapiens  
<400> 1  
Arg Tyr Thr Met His  
5

<210> 2  
<211> 17  
<212> PRT  
<213> Homo sapiens  
<400> 2  
Val Ile Ser Phe Asp Gly Ser Asn Lys Tyr Tyr Val Asp Ser Val Lys  
1 5 10 15

<210> 3  
<211> 17  
<212> PRT  
<213> Homo sapiens  
<400> 3  
Glu Ala Arg Gly Ser Tyr Ala Phe Asp Ile  
1 5 10

<210> 4  
<211> 11  
<212> PRT  
<213> Homo sapiens  
<400> 4  
Arg Ala Ser Gln Gly Ile Ser Ser Trp Leu Ala  
1 5 10

<210> 5  
<211> 7  
<212> PRT  
<213> Homo sapiens  
<400> 5  
Ala Ala Ser Ser Leu Gln Ser  
1 5

<210> 6

<211> 10  
 <212> PRT  
 <213> Homo sapiens  
 <400> 6  
 Gln Gln Arg Ser Asn Trp Pro Pro Phe Thr  
 1 5 10

<210> 7  
 <211> 115  
 <212> PRT  
 <213> Homo sapiens  
 <400> 7  
 Gln Val Gln Leu Val Glu Ser Gly Gly Gly Val Val Gln Pro Gly Arg  
 1 5 10 15

Ser Leu Arg Leu Ser Cys Ala Ala Ser Gly Phe Thr Phe Ser Ser Tyr  
 20 25 30

Ala Met His Trp Val Arg Gln Ala Pro Gly Lys Gly Leu Glu Trp Val  
 35 40 45

Ala Val Ile Ser Tyr Asp Gly Ser Asn Lys Tyr Tyr Ala Asp Ser Val  
 50 55 60

Lys Gly Arg Phe Thr Ile Ser Arg Asp Asn Ser Lys Asn Thr Leu Tyr  
 65 70 75 80

Leu Gln Met Asn Ser Leu Arg Ala Glu Asp Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys  
 85 90 95

Ala Arg Asp Arg Gly Ile Ser Ala Gly Gly Asn Tyr Tyr Tyr Gly  
 100 105 110

Met Asp Val  
 115

<210> 8  
 <211> 109  
 <212> PRT  
 <213> Homo sapiens  
 <400> 8  
 Glu Ile Val Leu Thr Gln Ser Pro Ala Thr Leu Ser Leu Ser Pro Gly  
 1 5 10 15

Glu Arg Ala Thr Leu Ser Cys Arg Ala Ser Gln Ser Val Ser Ser Tyr

20

25

30

Leu Ala Trp Tyr Gln Gln Lys Pro Gly Gln Ala Pro Arg Leu Leu Ile

35

40

45

Tyr Asp Ala Ser Asn Arg Ala Thr Gly Ile Pro Ala Arg Phe Ser Gly

50

55

60

Ser Gly Ser Gly Thr Asp Phe Thr Leu Thr Ile Ser Ser Leu Glu Pro

65

70

75

80

Glu Asp Phe Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys Gln Gln Arg Ser Asn Trp Pro Pro

85

90

95

Phe Thr Phe Gly Pro Gly Thr Lys Val Asp Ile Lys

100

105

&lt;210&gt; 9

&lt;211&gt; 157

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Homo sapiens

&lt;400&gt; 9

Val Arg Ser Ser Ser Arg Thr Pro Ser Asp Lys Pro Val Ala His Val  
1 5 10 15

Val Ala Asn Pro Gln Ala Glu Gly Gln Leu Gln Trp Leu Asn Arg Arg  
20 25 30

Ala Asn Ala Leu Leu Ala Asn Gly Val Glu Leu Arg Asp Asn Gln Leu  
35 40 45

Val Val Pro Ser Glu Gly Leu Tyr Leu Ile Tyr Ser Gln Val Leu Phe  
50 55 60

Lys Gly Gln Gly Cys Pro Ser Thr His Val Leu Leu Thr His Thr Ile  
65 70 75 80

Ser Arg Ile Ala Val Ser Tyr Gln Thr Lys Val Asn Leu Leu Ser Ala  
85 90 95

Ile Lys Ser Pro Cys Gln Arg Glu Thr Pro Glu Gly Ala Glu Ala Lys  
100 105 110

Pro Trp Tyr Glu Pro Ile Tyr Leu Gly Gly Val Phe Gln Leu Glu Lys  
115 120 125

Gly Asp Arg Leu Ser Ala Glu Ile Asn Arg Pro Asp Tyr Leu Asp Phe  
130 135 140

Ala Glu Ser Gly Gln Val Tyr Phe Gly Ile Ile Ala Leu  
145 150 155

<210> 10  
<211> 15  
<212> DNA  
<213> Homo sapiens  
<400> 10  
agatatactacta tgcac 15

<210> 11  
<211> 51  
<212> DNA  
<213> Homo sapiens  
<400> 11  
gttatatcat ttgatggaa ag caataaaatac tacgttagact ccgtgaaggg c 51

<210> 12  
<211> 51  
<212> DNA  
<213> Homo sapiens  
<400> 12  
gaggcccgaaa gatcgtatgc ttttgatatac 30

<210> 13  
<211> 33  
<212> DNA  
<213> Homo sapiens  
<400> 13  
ctctcctgca gggccagtca gagtgtagc agctacttag cc 33

<210> 14  
<211> 21  
<212> DNA  
<213> Homo sapiens  
<400> 14  
gatgcattcca acagggcc 18

<210> 15  
<211> 30  
<212> DNA  
<213> Homo sapiens  
<400> 15  
cagcagcgta gcaactggcc t 21

(19) World Intellectual Property Organization  
International Bureau(43) International Publication Date  
14 February 2002 (14.02.2002)

PCT

(10) International Publication Number  
**WO 02/012502 A3**(51) International Patent Classification<sup>7</sup>: C12N 15/13, C07K 16/24, C12N 15/79, 5/10, A61K 39/395, C07K 16/42, G01N 33/50, 33/577, A61P 37/00

(74) Agents: JOHNSON, Philip, S. et al.; One Johnson &amp; Johnson Plaza, New Brunswick, NJ 08933 (US).

(21) International Application Number: PCT/US01/24785

(81) Designated States (*national*): AE, AG, AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, BZ, CA, CH, CN, CO, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM, DZ, EC, EE, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MA, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, MZ, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, UZ, VN, YU, ZA, ZW.

(22) International Filing Date: 7 August 2001 (07.08.2001)

(84) Designated States (*regional*): ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, MZ, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE, TR), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GQ, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

(25) Filing Language: English

**Published:**

(26) Publication Language: English

- with international search report
- with sequence listing part of description published separately in electronic form and available upon request from the International Bureau

(30) Priority Data:

(88) Date of publication of the international search report:  
31 October 2002

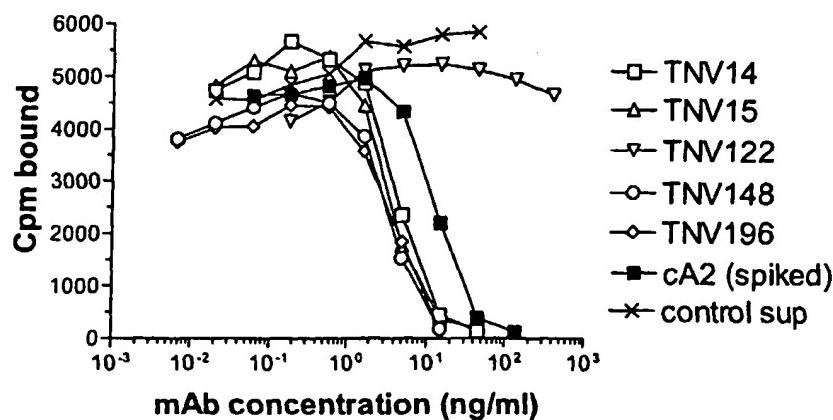
|            |                                |    |
|------------|--------------------------------|----|
| 60/223,360 | 7 August 2000 (07.08.2000)     | US |
| 60/236,826 | 29 September 2000 (29.09.2000) | US |
| 09/920,137 | 1 August 2001 (01.08.2001)     | US |

(71) Applicant: CENTOCOR, INC. [US/US]; 200 Great Valley Parkway, Malvern, PA 19355 (US).

(72) Inventors: GILES-KOMAR, Jill; 31 Blakely Road, Downingtown, PA 19355 (US). KNIGHT, David, M.; 2430 Whitehorse Road, Berwyn, PA 19312 (US). HEAVNER, George; 6 Oak Glen Drive, Malvern, PA 19355 (US). SCALLON, Bernard; 139 Hemlock Drive, Collegeville, PA 19426 (US). SHEALY, David; 1351 Perins Ridge Place, Downingtown, PA 19335 (US).

*[Continued on next page]*

(54) Title: ANTI-TNF ANTIBODIES, COMPOSITIONS, METHODS AND USES

**WO 02/012502 A3**

(57) Abstract: The present invention relates to at least one novel anti-TNF antibodies, including isolated nucleic acids that encode at least one anti-TNF antibody, TNF, vectors, host cells, transgenic animals or plants, and methods of making and using thereof, including therapeutic compositions, methods and devices.



*For two-letter codes and other abbreviations, refer to the "Guidance Notes on Codes and Abbreviations" appearing at the beginning of each regular issue of the PCT Gazette.*

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No

PCT/US 01/24785

## A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER

|                 |           |            |           |            |
|-----------------|-----------|------------|-----------|------------|
| IPC 7 C12N15/13 | C07K16/24 | C12N15/79  | C12N5/10  | A61K39/395 |
| C07K16/42       | G01N33/50 | G01N33/577 | A61P37/00 |            |

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

## B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

IPC 7 C07K

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

BIOSIS, EMBASE, CHEM ABS Data, WPI Data, PAJ, EPO-Internal, SEQUENCE SEARCH

## C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

| Category ° | Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages  | Relevant to claim No. |
|------------|---|-----------------------|
| X          | WO 97 29131 A (BASF AG)<br>14 August 1997 (1997-08-14)<br>the whole document<br>---   | 1-101                 |
| X          | US 5 654 407 A (BOYLE ET AL.)<br>5 August 1997 (1997-08-05)<br>the whole document<br>---  | 1-101                 |
| X          | M. MENDEZ ET AL.: "Functional transplant<br>of megabase human immunoglobulin loci<br>recapitulates human antibody response in<br>mice."<br>'NATURE GENETICS,<br>vol. 15, no. 2, February 1997 (1997-02),<br>pages 146-156, XP002067603<br>New York, NY, USA<br>the whole document<br>---<br>-/- | 1-101                 |

 Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C. Patent family members are listed in annex.

## ° Special categories of cited documents :

- \*A\* document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance
- \*E\* earlier document but published on or after the International filing date
- \*L\* document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)
- \*O\* document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means
- \*P\* document published prior to the International filing date but later than the priority date claimed

- \*T\* later document published after the International filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention
- \*X\* document of particular relevance; the claimed Invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone
- \*Y\* document of particular relevance; the claimed Invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.
- \*g\* document member of the same patent family

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Date of the actual completion of the International search  | Date of mailing of the International search report |
| 28 June 2002   | 05/07/2002   |
| Name and mailing address of the ISA<br>European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2<br>NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk<br>Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 651 epo nl,<br>Fax: (+31-70) 340-3016 | Authorized officer<br><br>Nooij, F                 |

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No

PCT/US 01/24785

## C.(Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

| Category ° | Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages  | Relevant to claim No. |
|------------|---|-----------------------|
| X          | WO 96 33735 A (CELL GENESYS INC.)<br>31 October 1996 (1996-10-31)<br>example 2<br>figure 4; table 2<br>claims<br>---  | 1-101                 |
| X          | S. STEPHENS ET AL.: "Comprehensive pharmacokinetics of a humanized antibody and analysis of residual anti-idiotypic responses."<br>IMMUNOLOGY,<br>vol. 85, no. 4, August 1995 (1995-08),<br>pages 668-674, XP000881488<br>Oxford, GB<br>abstract<br>discussion<br>---         | 1-101                 |
| X          | S. SIEGEL ET AL.: "The mouse/human chimeric monoclonal antibody cA2 neutralizes TNF in vitro and protects transgenic mice from cachexia and TNF lethality in vivo."<br>CYTOKINE,<br>vol. 7, no. 1, January 1995 (1995-01),<br>pages 15-25, XP000990566<br>abstract<br>---     | 1-80,101              |
| X          | E. RANKIN ET AL.: "The therapeutic effects of an engineered human anti-tumour necrosis factor alpha antibody (CDP571) in rheumatoid arthritis."<br>BRITISH JOURNAL OF RHEUMATOLOGY,<br>vol. 34, no. 4, April 1995 (1995-04),<br>pages 334-342, XP000674590<br>abstract<br>--- | 1-80,101              |
| X          | WO 91 09967 A (CELLTECH LTD.)<br>11 July 1991 (1991-07-11)<br>example 5<br>---  | 1-80,101              |
| X          | US 5 698 419 A (WOLPE ET AL.)<br>16 December 1997 (1997-12-16)<br>example<br>claims<br>---  | 1-80,101              |
| X          | EP 0 525 570 A (MILES INC.)<br>3 February 1993 (1993-02-03)<br>example<br>claims<br>-----   | 11,31,<br>51,71       |

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.  
PCT/US 01/24785

## Box I Observations where certain claims were found unsearchable (Continuation of item 1 of first sheet)

This International Search Report has not been established in respect of certain claims under Article 17(2)(a) for the following reasons:

1.  Claims Nos.: because they relate to subject matter not required to be searched by this Authority, namely:  
**see FURTHER INFORMATION sheet PCT/ISA/210**
2.  Claims Nos.: because they relate to parts of the International Application that do not comply with the prescribed requirements to such an extent that no meaningful International Search can be carried out, specifically:
3.  Claims Nos.: because they are dependent claims and are not drafted in accordance with the second and third sentences of Rule 6.4(a).

## Box II Observations where unity of invention is lacking (Continuation of item 2 of first sheet)

This International Searching Authority found multiple inventions in this international application, as follows:

1.  As all required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this International Search Report covers all searchable claims.
2.  As all searchable claims could be searched without effort justifying an additional fee, this Authority did not invite payment of any additional fee.
3.  As only some of the required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this International Search Report covers only those claims for which fees were paid, specifically claims Nos.:
4.  No required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant. Consequently, this International Search Report is restricted to the invention first mentioned in the claims; it is covered by claims Nos.:

### Remark on Protest

- The additional search fees were accompanied by the applicant's protest.  
 No protest accompanied the payment of additional search fees.

FURTHER INFORMATION CONTINUED FROM PCT/ISA/ 210

Continuation of Box I.1

Although claims 12-15, 32-35, 52-55, 72-75, 92-95 (all partially, as far as an *in vivo* method is concerned) are directed to a diagnostic method practised on the human/animal body or to a method of treatment of the human/animal body, the search has been carried out and based on the alleged effects of the compound/composition.

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

International Application No  
PCT/US 01/24785

| Patent document cited in search report |   | Publication date |    | Patent family member(s) | Publication date |
|--|---|------------------|----|-------------------------|------------------|
| WO 9729131                             | A | 14-08-1997       | US | 6090382 A               | 18-07-2000       |
|  |   |                  | AU | 722077 B2               | 20-07-2000       |
|  |   |                  | AU | 2122997 A               | 28-08-1997       |
|  |   |                  | BG | 102755 A                | 31-05-1999       |
|  |   |                  | BR | 9707379 A               | 13-04-1999       |
|  |   |                  | CA | 2243459 A1              | 14-08-1997       |
|  |   |                  | CN | 1215407 A               | 28-04-1999       |
|  |   |                  | CZ | 9802476 A3              | 11-11-1998       |
|  |   |                  | EP | 0929578 A1              | 21-07-1999       |
|  |   |                  | HU | 9901874 A2              | 28-09-1999       |
|  |   |                  | JP | 2000507810 T            | 27-06-2000       |
|  |   |                  | NO | 983627 A                | 07-10-1998       |
|  |   |                  | NZ | 331579 A                | 29-06-2001       |
|  |   |                  | PL | 328411 A1               | 18-01-1999       |
|  |   |                  | SI | 9720020 A ,B            | 31-10-1999       |
|  |   |                  | SK | 106298 A3               | 10-03-1999       |
|  |   |                  | TR | 9801532 T2              | 23-11-1998       |
|  |   |                  | WO | 9729131 A1              | 14-08-1997       |
|  |   |                  | US | 6258562 B1              | 10-07-2001       |
| US 5654407                             | A | 05-08-1997       | AT | 204299 T                | 15-09-2001       |
|  |   |                  | CA | 2116888 A1              | 06-09-1994       |
|  |   |                  | DE | 69427928 D1             | 20-09-2001       |
|  |   |                  | DE | 69427928 T2             | 29-11-2001       |
|  |   |                  | DK | 614984 T3               | 05-11-2001       |
|  |   |                  | EP | 0614984 A2              | 14-09-1994       |
|  |   |                  | ES | 2159529 T3              | 16-10-2001       |
|  |   |                  | JP | 6319587 A               | 22-11-1994       |
|  |   |                  | PT | 614984 T                | 28-12-2001       |
| WO 9633735                             | A | 31-10-1996       | AU | 5632296 A               | 18-11-1996       |
|  |   |                  | CA | 2219361 A1              | 31-10-1996       |
|  |   |                  | EP | 0822830 A1              | 11-02-1998       |
|  |   |                  | JP | 11505523 T              | 21-05-1999       |
|  |   |                  | WO | 9633735 A1              | 31-10-1996       |
|  |   |                  | US | 6075181 A               | 13-06-2000       |
|  |   |                  | US | 6150584 A               | 21-11-2000       |
| WO 9109967                             | A | 11-07-1991       | AT | 129017 T                | 15-10-1995       |
|  |   |                  | AT | 124459 T                | 15-07-1995       |
|  |   |                  | AT | 159299 T                | 15-11-1997       |
|  |   |                  | AT | 208794 T                | 15-11-2001       |
|  |   |                  | AU | 664801 B2               | 30-11-1995       |
|  |   |                  | AU | 6461294 A               | 22-12-1994       |
|  |   |                  | AU | 646009 B2               | 03-02-1994       |
|  |   |                  | AU | 6974091 A               | 24-07-1991       |
|  |   |                  | AU | 649645 B2               | 02-06-1994       |
|  |   |                  | AU | 7033091 A               | 24-07-1991       |
|  |   |                  | AU | 631481 B2               | 26-11-1992       |
|  |   |                  | AU | 7048691 A               | 24-07-1991       |
|  |   |                  | BG | 60462 B1                | 28-04-1995       |
|  |   |                  | BR | 9007197 A               | 28-01-1992       |
|  |   |                  | CA | 2037607 A1              | 07-09-1992       |
|  |   |                  | CA | 2046904 A1              | 22-06-1991       |
|  |   |                  | CA | 2050479 A1              | 22-06-1991       |
|  |   |                  | DE | 69020544 D1             | 03-08-1995       |
|  |   |                  | DE | 69020544 T2             | 18-01-1996       |
|  |   |                  | DE | 69022982 D1             | 16-11-1995       |

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

International Application No  
PCT/US 01/24785

| Patent document cited in search report |   | Publication date | Patent family member(s) | Publication date |
|--|---|------------------|-------------------------|------------------|
| WO 9109967                             | A |                  | DE 69022982 T2          | 28-03-1996       |
|  |   |                  | DE 69031591 D1          | 20-11-1997       |
|  |   |                  | DE 69031591 T2          | 12-03-1998       |
|  |   |                  | DE 69033857 D1          | 20-12-2001       |
|  |   |                  | DK 460167 T3            | 20-11-1995       |
|  |   |                  | DK 460171 T3            | 28-08-1995       |
|  |   |                  | DK 460178 T3            | 22-12-1997       |
|  |   |                  | DK 626390 T3            | 11-03-2002       |
|  |   |                  | EP 0460167 A1           | 11-12-1991       |
|  |   |                  | EP 0460171 A1           | 11-12-1991       |
|  |   |                  | EP 0460178 A1           | 11-12-1991       |
|  |   |                  | EP 0620276 A1           | 19-10-1994       |
|  |   |                  | EP 0626390 A1           | 30-11-1994       |
|  |   |                  | ES 2079638 T3           | 16-01-1996       |
|  |   |                  | ES 2074701 T3           | 16-09-1995       |
|  |   |                  | ES 2112270 T3           | 01-04-1998       |
|  |   |                  | ES 2165864 T3           | 01-04-2002       |
|  |   |                  | FI 108777 B1            | 28-03-2002       |
|  |   |                  | FI 108776 B1            | 28-03-2002       |
|  |   |                  | FI 108917 B1            | 30-04-2002       |
|  |   |                  | FI 990875 A             | 19-04-1999       |
|  |   |                  | WO 9109966 A1           | 11-07-1991       |
|  |   |                  | WO 9109967 A1           | 11-07-1991       |
|  |   |                  | WO 9109968 A1           | 11-07-1991       |
|  |   |                  | GB 2246781 A ,B         | 12-02-1992       |
|  |   |                  | GB 2246570 A ,B         | 05-02-1992       |
|  |   |                  | GB 2268744 A ,B         | 19-01-1994       |
|  |   |                  | GB 2268745 A ,B         | 19-01-1994       |
|  |   |                  | GR 3017734 T3           | 31-01-1996       |
|  |   |                  | GR 3025781 T3           | 31-03-1998       |
| US 5698419                             | A | 16-12-1997       | US 5700466 A            | 23-12-1997       |
|  |   |                  | US 4603106 A            | 29-07-1986       |
|  |   |                  | AT 114673 T             | 15-12-1994       |
|  |   |                  | AU 6151186 A            | 19-02-1987       |
|  |   |                  | AU 649019 B2            | 12-05-1994       |
|  |   |                  | AU 7262691 A            | 30-05-1991       |
|  |   |                  | DE 3650150 D1           | 12-01-1995       |
|  |   |                  | DE 3650150 T2           | 27-04-1995       |
|  |   |                  | EP 0212489 A2           | 04-03-1987       |
|  |   |                  | EP 0613006 A1           | 31-08-1994       |
|  |   |                  | JP 2506340 B2           | 12-06-1996       |
|  |   |                  | JP 62116599 A           | 28-05-1987       |
|  |   |                  | US 5650147 A            | 22-07-1997       |
|  |   |                  | US 5616688 A            | 01-04-1997       |
|  |   |                  | US 5703206 A            | 30-12-1997       |
|  |   |                  | US 5989836 A            | 23-11-1999       |
|  |   |                  | US 6019969 A            | 01-02-2000       |
|  |   |                  | US 5863535 A            | 26-01-1999       |
|  |   |                  | US 5942222 A            | 24-08-1999       |
|  |   |                  | US 6046309 A            | 04-04-2000       |
|  |   |                  | US 5760186 A            | 02-06-1998       |
|  |   |                  | US 5817763 A            | 06-10-1998       |
|  |   |                  | US 5145676 A            | 08-09-1992       |
|  |   |                  | US 6309640 B1           | 30-10-2001       |
|  |   |                  | US 5849873 A            | 15-12-1998       |
|  |   |                  | US 5741484 A            | 21-04-1998       |
|  |   |                  | US 4822776 A            | 18-04-1989       |

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

International Application No

PCT/US 01/24785

| Patent document cited in search report | Publication date |            | Patent family member(s)   | Publication date   |
|--|------------------|------------|---|--|
| US 5698419                             | A                |            | AT 115411 T<br>AU 560087 B2<br>AU 8990282 A<br>CA 1208546 A1<br>DE 3280462 D1<br>DE 3280462 T2<br>EP 0101681 A1<br>EP 0609722 A1<br>JP 11228445 A<br>JP 9291042 A<br>JP 58501544 T<br>WO 8300930 A1 | 15-12-1994<br>26-03-1987<br>28-03-1983<br>29-07-1986<br>26-01-1995<br>20-04-1995<br>07-03-1984<br>10-08-1994<br>24-08-1999<br>11-11-1997<br>16-09-1983<br>17-03-1983 |
| EP 525570                              | A                | 03-02-1993 | CA 2074662 A1<br>EP 0525570 A2<br>JP 5301900 A  | 01-02-1993<br>03-02-1993<br>16-11-1993   |

## CORRECTED VERSION

(19) World Intellectual Property Organization International Bureau



(43) International Publication Date  
14 February 2002 (14.02.2002)

PCT

(10) International Publication Number  
**WO 2002/012502 A3**

(51) International Patent Classification<sup>7</sup>: C12N 15/13, C07K 16/24, C12N 15/79, 5/10, A61K 39/395, C07K 16/42, G01N 33/50, 33/577, A61P 37/00

(74) Agents: JOHNSON, Philip, S. et al.; One Johnson & Johnson Plaza, New Brunswick, NJ 08933 (US).

(21) International Application Number:  
PCT/US2001/024785

(81) Designated States (*national*): AE, AG, AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, BZ, CA, CH, CN, CO, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM, DZ, EC, EE, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MA, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, MZ, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, UZ, VN, YU, ZA, ZW.

(22) International Filing Date: 7 August 2001 (07.08.2001)

(84) Designated States (*regional*): ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, MZ, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE, TR), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GQ, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

(25) Filing Language: English

**Published:**

(26) Publication Language: English

- with international search report,
- with sequence listing part of description published separately in electronic form and available upon request from the International Bureau

(30) Priority Data:

(88) Date of publication of the international search report:  
31 October 2002

|            |                                |    |
|------------|--------------------------------|----|
| 60/223,360 | 7 August 2000 (07.08.2000)     | US |
| 60/236,826 | 29 September 2000 (29.09.2000) | US |
| 09/920,137 | 1 August 2001 (01.08.2001)     | US |

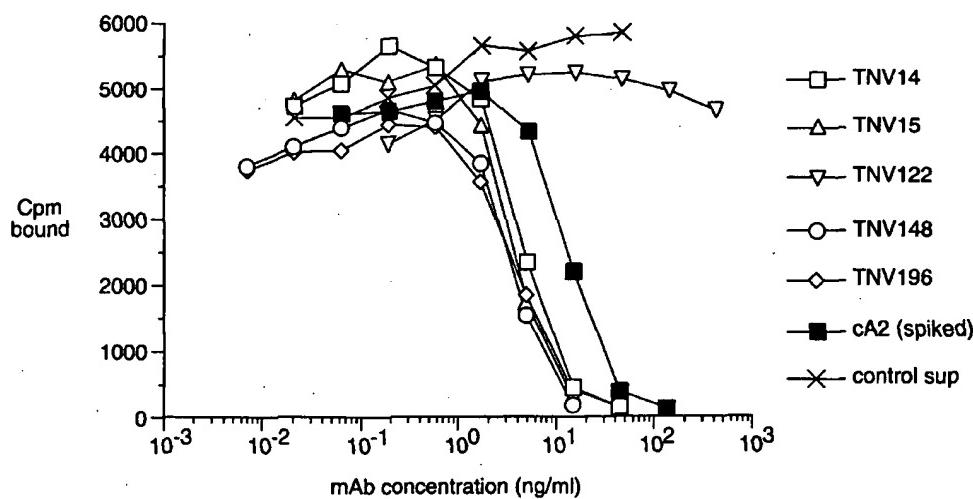
(71) Applicant: CENTOCOR, INC. [US/US]; 200 Great Valley Parkway, Malvern, PA 19355 (US).

(72) Inventors: GILES-KOMAR, Jill; 31 Blakely Road, Downingtown, PA 19355 (US). KNIGHT, David, M.; 2430 Whitehorse Road, Berwyn, PA 19312 (US). HEAVNER, George; 6 Oak Glen Drive, Malvern, PA 19355 (US). SCALLON, Bernard; 139 Hemlock Drive, Collegeville, PA 19426 (US). SHEALY, David; 1351 Penns Ridge Place, Downingtown, PA 19355 (US).

[Continued on next page]

(54) Title: ANTI-TNF ANTIBODIES, COMPOSITIONS, METHODS AND USES

WO 2002/012502 A3



(57) Abstract: The present invention relates to at least one novel anti-TNF antibodies, including isolated nucleic acids that encode at least one anti-TNF antibody, TNF, vectors, host cells, transgenic animals or plants, and methods of making and using thereof, including therapeutic compositions, methods and devices.



(48) Date of publication of this corrected version:

4 March 2004

*For two-letter codes and other abbreviations, refer to the "Guidance Notes on Codes and Abbreviations" appearing at the beginning of each regular issue of the PCT Gazette.*

(15) Information about Correction:

see PCT Gazette No. 10/2004 of 4 March 2004, Section II

**ANTI- TNF ANTIBODIES, COMPOSITIONS, METHODS AND USES****BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION****FIELD OF THE INVENTION**

This application is based in part on, and claims priority to, U.S. Provisional 60/223,360 filed August 7, 2000 and 60/236,826 filed September 29, 2000, each of which is entirely incorporated herein by reference.

The present invention relates to antibodies, including specified portions or variants, specific for at least one tumor necrosis factor alpha (TNF) protein or fragment thereof, as well as nucleic acids encoding such anti-TNF antibodies, complementary nucleic acids, vectors, host cells, and methods of making and using thereof, including therapeutic formulations, administration and devices.

**RELATED ART**

TNF alpha is a soluble homotrimer of 17 kD protein subunits (Smith et al., J. Biol. Chem. 262:6951-6954 (1987)). A membrane-bound 26 kD precursor form of TNF also exists (Kriegler et al., Cell 53:45-53 (1988)). For reviews of TNF, see Beutler et al., Nature 320:584 (1986); Old, Science 230:630 (1986); and Le et al., Lab. Invest. 56:234 (1987).

Cells other than monocytes or macrophages also produce TNF alpha. For example, human non-monocytic tumor cell lines produce TNF alpha (Rubin et al., J. Exp. Med. 164:1350 (1986); Spriggs et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 84:6563 (1987)). CD4+ and CD8+ peripheral blood T lymphocytes and some cultured T and B cell lines (Cuturi et al., J. Exp. Med. 165:1581 (1987); Sung et al., J. Exp. Med. 168:1539 (1988); Turner et al., Eur. J. Immunol. 17:1807-1814 (1987)) also produce TNF alpha.

TNF alpha causes pro-inflammatory actions which result in tissue injury, such as degradation of cartilage and bone (Saklatvala, Nature 322:547-549 (1986); Bertolini, Nature 319:516-518 (1986)), induction of adhesion molecules, inducing procoagulant activity on vascular endothelial cells (Pober et al., J. Immunol. 136:1680 (1986)), increasing the adherence of neutrophils and lymphocytes (Pober et al., J. Immunol. 138:3319 (1987)), and stimulating the release of platelet activating factor from macrophages, neutrophils and vascular endothelial cells (Camussi et al., J. Exp. Med. 166:1390 (1987)).

Recent evidence associates TNF alpha with infections (Cerami et al., Immunol. Today 9:28 (1988)), immune disorders, neoplastic pathologies (Oliff et al., Cell 50:555 (1987)), autoimmune pathologies and graft-versus-host pathologies (Piguet et al., J. Exp. Med. 166:1280 (1987)). The association of TNF alpha with cancer and infectious pathologies is

often related to the host's catabolic state. Cancer patients suffer from weight loss, usually associated with anorexia.

The extensive wasting which is associated with cancer, and other diseases, is known as "cachexia" (Kern et al., J. Parent. Enter. Nutr. 12:286-298 (1988)). Cachexia 5 includes progressive weight loss, anorexia, and persistent erosion of lean body mass in response to a malignant growth. The cachectic state causes much cancer morbidity and mortality. There is evidence that TNF alpha is involved in cachexia in cancer, infectious pathology, and other catabolic states (see, e.g., Beutler and Cerami, Ann. Rev. Immunol. 7:625-655 (1989)).

10 TNF alpha is believed to play a central role in gram-negative sepsis and endotoxic shock (Michie et al., Br. J. Surg. 76:670-671 (1989); Debets et al., Second Vienna Shock Forum, p. 463-466 (1989); Simpson et al., Crit. Care Clin. 5:27-47 (1989)), including fever, malaise, anorexia, and cachexia. Endotoxin strongly activates monocyte/macrophage production and secretion of TNF alpha and other cytokines (Kornbluth et al., J. Immunol. 137:2585-2591 (1986)). TNF alpha and other monocyte-derived cytokines mediate the metabolic and neurohormonal responses to endotoxin (Michie et al., New Engl. J. Med. 318:1481-1486 (1988)). Endotoxin administration to human volunteers produces acute illness with flu-like symptoms including fever, tachycardia, increased metabolic rate and stress hormone release (Revhaug et al., Arch. Surg. 123:162-170 (1988)). Circulating TNF alpha 15 increases in patients suffering from Gram-negative sepsis (Waage et al., Lancet 1:355-357 (1987); Hammerle et al., Second Vienna Shock Forum, p. 715-718 (1989); Debets et al., Crit. Care Med. 17:489-497 (1989); Calandra et al., J. Infect. Dis. 161:982-987 (1990)).

Thus, TNF alpha has been implicated in inflammatory diseases, autoimmune diseases, viral, bacterial and parasitic infections, malignancies, and/or neurogenerative diseases and is a 20 useful target for specific biological therapy in diseases, such as rheumatoid arthritis and Crohn's disease. Beneficial effects in open-label trials with a chimeric monoclonal antibody to TNF alpha (cA2) have been reported with suppression of inflammation and with successful 25 retreatment after relapse in rheumatoid arthritis (Elliott et al., Arthritis Rheum. 36:1681-1690 (1993); and Elliott et al., Lancet 344:1125-1127 (1994)) and in Crohn's disease (Van Dullemen et al., Gastroenterology 109:129-135 (1995)). Beneficial results in a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial with cA2 have also been reported in rheumatoid arthritis with 30 suppression of inflammation (Elliott et al., Lancet 344:1105-1110 (1994)). Antibodies to a "modulator" material which was characterized as cachectin (later found to be identical to TNF) were disclosed by Cerami et al. (EPO Patent Publication 0212489, March 4, 1987). 35 Such antibodies were said to be useful in diagnostic immunoassays and in therapy of shock in bacterial infections. Rubin et al. (EPO Patent Publication 0218868, April 22, 1987) disclosed

monoclonal antibodies to human TNF, the hybridomas secreting such antibodies, methods of producing such antibodies, and the use of such antibodies in immunoassay of TNF. Yone et al. (EPO Patent Publication 0288088, October 26, 1988) disclosed anti-TNF antibodies, including mAbs, and their utility in immunoassay diagnosis of pathologies, in particular Kawasaki's pathology and bacterial infection. The body fluids of patients with Kawasaki's pathology (infantile acute febrile mucocutaneous lymph node syndrome; Kawasaki, T., Allergy 16:178 (1967); Kawasaki, T., Shonica (Pediatrics) 26:935 (1985)) were said to contain elevated TNF levels which were related to progress of the pathology (Yone et al., *supra*).

Other investigators have described mAbs specific for recombinant human TNF which had neutralizing activity in vitro (Liang, C-M. et al. (*Biochem. Biophys. Res. Comm.* 137:847-854 (1986); Meager, A. et al., *Hybridoma* 6:305-311 (1987); Fendly et al., *Hybridoma* 6:359-369 (1987); Bringman, T.S. et al., *Hybridoma* 6:489-507 (1987); Hirai, M. et al., *J. Immunol. Meth.* 96:57-62 (1987); Moller, A. et al. (*Cytokine* 2:162-169 (1990)). Some of these mAbs were used to map epitopes of human TNF and develop enzyme immunoassays (Fendly et al., *supra*; Hirai et al., *supra*; Moller et al., *supra*) and to assist in the purification of recombinant TNF (Bringman et al., *supra*). However, these studies do not provide a basis for producing TNF neutralizing antibodies that can be used for in vivo diagnostic or therapeutic uses in humans, due to immunogenicity, lack of specificity and/or pharmaceutical suitability.

Neutralizing antisera or mAbs to TNF have been shown in mammals other than man to abrogate adverse physiological changes and prevent death after lethal challenge in experimental endotoxemia and bacteremia. This effect has been demonstrated, e.g., in rodent lethality assays and in primate pathology model systems (Mathison, J.C. et al., *J. Clin. Invest.* 81:1925-1937 (1988); Beutler, B. et al., *Science* 229:869-871 (1985); Tracey, K.J. et al., *Nature* 330:662-664 (1987); Shimamoto, Y. et al., *Immunol. Lett.* 17:311-318 (1988); Silva, A.T. et al., *J. Infect. Dis.* 162:421-427 (1990); Opal, S.M. et al., *J. Infect. Dis.* 161:1148-1152 (1990); Hinshaw, L.B. et al., *Circ. Shock* 30:279-292 (1990)).

Putative receptor binding loci of hTNF has been disclosed by Eck and Sprang (*J. Biol. Chem.* 264(29), 17595-17605 (1989), who identified the receptor binding loci of TNF- $\alpha$  as consisting of amino acids 11-13, 37-42, 49-57 and 155-157. PCT application WO91/02078 (priority date of August 7, 1989) discloses TNF ligands which can bind to monoclonal antibodies having the following epitopes: at least one of 1-20, 56-77, and 108-127; at least two of 1-20, 56-77, 108-127 and 138-149; all of 1-18, 58-65, 115-125 and 138-149; all of 1-18, and 108-128; all of 56-79, 110-127 and 135- or 136-155; all of 1-30, 117-128 and 141-153; all of 1-26, 117-128 and 141-153; all of 22-40, 49-96 or -97, 110-127 and 136-153; all of 12-22, 36-45, 96-105 and 132-157; all of both of 1-20 and 76-90; all of 22-40, 69-97, 105-128 and 135-

155; all of 22-31 and 146-157; all of 22-40 and 49-98; at least one of 22-40, 49-98 and 69-97, both of 22-40 and 70-87.

Non-human mammalian, chimeric, polyclonal (e.g., anti-sera) and/or monoclonal antibodies (Mabs) and fragments (e.g., proteolytic digestion or fusion protein products thereof) 5 are potential therapeutic agents that are being investigated in some cases to attempt to treat certain diseases. However, such antibodies or fragments can elicit an immune response when administered to humans. Such an immune response can result in an immune complex-mediated clearance of the antibodies or fragments from the circulation, and make repeated administration unsuitable for therapy, thereby reducing the therapeutic benefit to the patient 10 and limiting the readministration of the antibody or fragment. For example, repeated administration of antibodies or fragments comprising non-human portions can lead to serum sickness and/or anaphylaxis. In order to avoid these and other problems, a number of approaches have been taken to reduce the immunogenicity of such antibodies and portions thereof, including chimerization and humanization, as well known in the art. These and other 15 approaches, however, still can result in antibodies or fragments having some immunogenicity, low affinity, low avidity, or with problems in cell culture, scale up, production, and/or low yields. Thus, such antibodies or fragments can be less than ideally suited for manufacture or use as therapeutic proteins.

Accordingly, there is a need to provide anti-TNF antibodies or fragments that 20 overcome one more of these problems, as well as improvements over known antibodies or fragments thereof.

#### SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The present invention provides isolated human, primate, rodent, mammalian, chimeric, 25 humanized and/or CDR-grafted anti-TNF antibodies, immunoglobulins, cleavage products and other specified portions and variants thereof, as well as anti-TNF antibody compositions, encoding or complementary nucleic acids, vectors, host cells, compositions, formulations, devices, transgenic animals, transgenic plants, and methods of making and using thereof, as described and enabled herein, in combination with what is known in the art.

30 The present invention also provides at least one isolated anti-TNF antibody as described herein. An antibody according to the present invention includes any protein or peptide containing molecule that comprises at least a portion of an immunoglobulin molecule, such as but not limited to at least one complementarity determining region (CDR) of a heavy or light chain or a ligand binding portion thereof, a heavy chain or light chain variable region, a 35 heavy chain or light chain constant region, a framework region, or any portion thereof, that can be incorporated into an antibody of the present invention. An antibody of the invention can

include or be derived from any mammal, such as but not limited to a human, a mouse, a rabbit, a rat, a rodent, a primate, or any combination thereof, and the like.

The present invention provides, in one aspect, isolated nucleic acid molecules comprising, complementary, or hybridizing to, a polynucleotide encoding specific anti-TNF antibodies, comprising at least one specified sequence, domain, portion or variant thereof. The present invention further provides recombinant vectors comprising said anti-TNF antibody nucleic acid molecules, host cells containing such nucleic acids and/or recombinant vectors, as well as methods of making and/or using such antibody nucleic acids, vectors and/or host cells.

At least one antibody of the invention binds at least one specified epitope specific to at least one TNF protein, subunit, fragment, portion or any combination thereof. The at least one epitope can comprise at least one antibody binding region that comprises at least one portion of said protein, which epitope is preferably comprised of at least 1-5 amino acids of at least one portion thereof, such as but not limited to, at least one functional, extracellular, soluble, hydrophilic, external or cytoplasmic domain of said protein, or any portion thereof.

The at least one antibody can optionally comprise at least one specified portion of at least one complementarity determining region (CDR) (e.g., CDR1, CDR2 or CDR3 of the heavy or light chain variable region) and/or at least one constant or variable framework region or any portion thereof. The at least one antibody amino acid sequence can further optionally comprise at least one specified substitution, insertion or deletion as described herein or as known in the art.

The present invention also provides at least one isolated anti-TNF antibody as described herein, wherein the antibody has at least one activity, such as, but not limited to inhibition of TNF-induced cell adhesion molecules, inhibition of TNF binding to receptor, Arthritic index improvement in mouse model, (see, e.g., Examples 3-7). A(n) anti-TNF antibody can thus be screened for a corresponding activity according to known methods, such as but not limited to, at least one biological activity towards a TNF protein.

The present invention further provides at least one TNF anti-idiotype antibody to at least one TNF antibody of the present invention. The anti-idiotype antibody includes any protein or peptide containing molecule that comprises at least a portion of an immunoglobulin molecule, such as but not limited to at least one complementarity determining region (CDR) of a heavy or light chain or a ligand binding portion thereof, a heavy chain or light chain variable region, a heavy chain or light chain constant region, a framework region, or any portion thereof, that can be incorporated into an antibody of the present invention. An antibody of the invention can include or be derived from any mammal, such as but not limited to a human, a mouse, a rabbit, a rat, a rodent, a primate, and the like.

The present invention provides, in one aspect, isolated nucleic acid molecules comprising, complementary, or hybridizing to, a polynucleotide encoding at least one TNF anti-idiotype antibody, comprising at least one specified sequence, domain, portion or variant thereof. The present invention further provides recombinant vectors comprising said TNF 5 anti-idiotype antibody encoding nucleic acid molecules, host cells containing such nucleic acids and/or recombinant vectors, as well as methods of making and/or using such anti-idiotype antibody nucleic acids, vectors and/or host cells.

The present invention also provides at least one method for expressing at least one anti-TNF antibody, or TNF anti-idiotype antibody, in a host cell, comprising culturing a host 10 cell as described herein under conditions wherein at least one anti-TNF antibody is expressed in detectable and/or recoverable amounts.

The present invention also provides at least one composition comprising (a) an isolated anti-TNF antibody encoding nucleic acid and/or antibody as described herein; and (b) a suitable carrier or diluent. The carrier or diluent can optionally be pharmaceutically 15 acceptable, according to known carriers or diluents. The composition can optionally further comprise at least one further compound, protein or composition.

The present invention further provides at least one anti-TNF antibody method or composition, for administering a therapeutically effective amount to modulate or treat at least one TNF related condition in a cell, tissue, organ, animal or patient and/or, prior to, subsequent 20 to, or during a related condition, as known in the art and/or as described herein.

The present invention also provides at least one composition, device and/or method of delivery of a therapeutically or prophylactically effective amount of at least one anti-TNF antibody, according to the present invention.

The present invention further provides at least one anti-TNF antibody method or 25 composition, for diagnosing at least one TNF related condition in a cell, tissue, organ, animal or patient and/or, prior to, subsequent to, or during a related condition, as known in the art and/or as described herein.

The present invention also provides at least one composition, device and/or method of delivery for diagnosing of at least one anti-TNF antibody, according to the present invention.

## 30 DESCRIPTION OF THE FIGURES

Figure 1 shows a graphical representation showing an assay for ability of TNV mAbs in hybridoma cell supernatants to inhibit TNF $\alpha$  binding to recombinant TNF receptor.

Varying amounts of hybridoma cell supernatants containing known amounts of TNV mAb were preincubated with a fixed concentration (5 ng/ml) of  $^{125}\text{I}$ -labeled TNF $\alpha$ . The mixture 35 was transferred to 96-well Optiplates that had been previously coated with p55-sf2, a recombinant TNF receptor/IgG fusion protein. The amount of TNF $\alpha$  that bound to the p55

receptor in the presence of the mAbs was determined after washing away the unbound material and counting using a gamma counter. Although eight TNV mAb samples were tested in these experiments, for simplicity three of the mAbs that were shown by DNA sequence analyses to be identical to one of the other TNV mAbs (see Section 5.2.2) are not shown here. Each 5 sample was tested in duplicate. The results shown are representative of two independent experiments.

Figure 2 shows DNA sequences of the TNV mAb heavy chain variable regions. The germline gene shown is the DP-46 gene. 'TNVs' indicates that the sequence shown is the sequence of TNV14, TNV15, TNV148, and TNV196. The first three nucleotides in the TNV 10 sequence define the translation initiation Met codon. Dots in the TNV mAb gene sequences indicate the nucleotide is the same as in the germline sequence. The first 19 nucleotides (underlined) of the TNV sequences correspond to the oligonucleotide used to PCR-amplify the variable region. An amino acid translation (single letter abbreviations) starting with the mature mAb is shown only for the germline gene. The three CDR domains in the germline 15 amino acid translation are marked in bold and underlined. Lines labeled TNV148(B) indicate that the sequence shown pertains to both TNV148 and TNV148B. Gaps in the germline DNA sequence (CDR3) are due to the sequence not being known or not existing in the germline gene. The TNV mAb heavy chains use the J6 joining region.

Figure 3 shows DNA sequences of the TNV mAb light chain variable regions. The 20 germline gene shown is a representative member of the Vg/38K family of human kappa germline variable region genes. Dots in the TNV mAb gene sequences indicate the nucleotide is the same as in the germline sequence. The first 16 nucleotides (underlined) of the TNV sequences correspond to the oligonucleotide used to PCR-amplify the variable region. An amino acid translation of the mature mAb (single letter abbreviations) is shown only for the 25 germline gene. The three CDR domains in the germline amino acid translation are marked in bold and underlined. Lines labeled TNV148(B) indicate that the sequence shown pertains to both TNV148 and TNV148B. Gaps in the germline DNA sequence (CDR3) are due to the sequence not being known or not existing in the germline gene. The TNV mAb light chains use the J3 joining sequence.

30 Figure 4 shows deduced amino acid sequences of the TNV mAb heavy chain variable regions. The amino acid sequences shown (single letter abbreviations) were deduced from DNA sequence determined from both uncloned PCR products and cloned PCR products. The amino sequences are shown partitioned into the secretory signal sequence (signal), framework (FW), and complementarity determining region (CDR) domains. The amino acid sequence for 35 the DP-46 germline gene is shown on the top line for each domain. Dots indicate that the

amino acid in the TNV mAb is identical to the germline gene. TNV148(B) indicates that the sequence shown pertains to both TNV148 and TNV148B. 'TNVs' indicates that the sequence shown pertains to all TNV mAbs unless a different sequence is shown. Dashes in the germline sequence (CDR3) indicate that the sequences are not known or do not exist in the germline  
5 gene.

Figure 5 shows deduced amino acid sequences of the TNV mAb light chain variable regions. The amino acid sequences shown (single letter abbreviations) were deduced from DNA sequence determined from both uncloned PCR products and cloned PCR products. The amino sequences are shown partitioned into the secretory signal sequence (signal), framework  
10 (FW), and complementarity determining region (CDR) domains. The amino acid sequence for the Vg/38K-type light chain germline gene is shown on the top line for each domain. Dots indicate that the amino acid in the TNV mAb is identical to the germline gene. TNV148(B) indicates that the sequence shown pertains to both TNV148 and TNV148B. 'All' indicates that the sequence shown pertains to TNV14, TNV15, TNV148, TNV148B, and TNV186.  
15

Figure 6 shows schematic illustrations of the heavy and light chain expression plasmids used to make the rTNV148B-expressing C466 cells. p1783 is the heavy chain plasmid and p1776 is the light chain plasmid. The rTNV148B variable and constant region coding domains are shown as black boxes. The immunoglobulin enhancers in the J-C introns are shown as gray boxes. Relevant restriction sites are shown. The plasmids are shown  
20 oriented such that transcription of the Ab genes proceeds in a clockwise direction. Plasmid p1783 is 19.53 kb in length and plasmid p1776 is 15.06 kb in length. The complete nucleotide sequences of both plasmids are known. The variable region coding sequence in p1783 can be easily replaced with another heavy chain variable region sequence by replacing the BsiWI/BstBI restriction fragment. The variable region coding sequence in p1776 can be  
25 replaced with another variable region sequence by replacing the SalI/AfI restriction fragment.

Figure 7 shows graphical representation of growth curve analyses of five rTNV148B-producing cell lines. Cultures were initiated on day 0 by seeding cells into T75 flasks in I5Q+MHX media to have a viable cell density of  $1.0 \times 10^5$  cells/ml in a 30 ml volume. The cell cultures used for these studies had been in continuous culture since transfections and  
30 subclonings were performed. On subsequent days, cells in the T flasks were thoroughly resuspended and a 0.3 ml aliquot of the culture was removed. The growth curve studies were terminated when cell counts dropped below  $1.5 \times 10^5$  cells/ml. The number of live cells in the aliquot was determined by typan blue exclusion and the remainder of the aliquot stored for later mAb concentration determination. An ELISA for human IgG was performed on all  
35 sample aliquots at the same time.

Figure 8 shows a graphical representation of the comparison of cell growth rates in the presence of varying concentrations of MHX selection. Cell subclones C466A and C466B were thawed into MHX-free media (IMDM, 5% FBS, 2 mM glutamine) and cultured for two additional days. Both cell cultures were then divided into three cultures that contained either 5 no MHX, 0.2X MHX, or 1X MHX. One day later, fresh T75 flasks were seeded with the cultures at a starting density of  $1 \times 10^5$  cells/ml and cells counted at 24 hour intervals for one week. Doubling times during the first 5 days were calculated using the formula in SOP PD32.025 and are shown above the bars.

Figure 9 shows graphical representations of the stability of mAb production over time 10 from two rTNV148B-producing cell lines. Cell subclones that had been in continuous culture since performing transfections and subclonings were used to start long-term serial cultures in 24-well culture dishes. Cells were cultured in I5Q media with and without MHX selection. Cells were continually passaged by splitting the cultures every 4 to 6 days to maintain new 15 viable cultures while previous cultures were allowed to go spent. Aliquots of spent cell supernatant were collected shortly after cultures were spent and stored until the mAb concentrations were determined. An ELISA for human IgG was performed on all sample aliquots at the same time.

Figure 10 shows arthritis mouse model mice Tg 197 weight changes in response to anti-TNF antibodies of the present invention as compared to controls in Example 4. At 20 approximately 4 weeks of age the Tg197 study mice were assigned, based on gender and body weight, to one of 9 treatment groups and treated with a single intraperitoneal bolus dose of Dulbecco's PBS (D-PBS) or an anti-TNF antibody of the present invention (TNV14, TNV148 or TNV196) at either 1 mg/kg or 10 mg/kg. When the weights were analyzed as a change from pre-dose, the animals treated with 10 mg/kg cA2 showed consistently higher weight gain than 25 the D-PBS-treated animals throughout the study. This weight gain was significant at weeks 3-7. The animals treated with 10 mg/kg TNV148 also achieved significant weight gain at week 7 of the study.

Figures 11A-C represent the progression of disease severity based on the arthritic index as presented in Example 4. The 10 mg/kg cA2-treated group's arthritic index was lower 30 than the D-PBS control group starting at week 3 and continuing throughout the remainder of the study (week 7). The animals treated with 1 mg/kg TNV14 and the animals treated with 1 mg/kg cA2 failed to show significant reduction in AI after week 3 when compared to the D-PBS-treated Group. There were no significant differences between the 10 mg/kg treatment groups when each was compared to the others of similar dose (10 mg/kg cA2 compared to 10 35 mg/kg TNV14, 148 and 196). When the 1 mg/kg treatment groups were compared, the 1

mg/kg TNV148 showed a significantly lower AI than 1 mg/kg cA2 at 3, 4 and 7 weeks. The 1 mg/kg TNV148 was also significantly lower than the 1 mg/kg TNV14-treated Group at 3 and 4 weeks. Although TNV196 showed significant reduction in AI up to week 6 of the study (when compared to the D-PBS-treated Group), TNV148 was the only 1 mg/kg treatment that remained significant at the conclusion of the study.

Figure 12 shows arthritis mouse model mice Tg 197 weight changes in response to anti-TNF antibodies of the present invention as compared to controls in Example 5. At approximately 4 weeks of age the Tg197 study mice were assigned, based on body weight, to one of 8 treatment groups and treated with a intraperitoneal bolus dose of control article (D-PBS) or antibody (TNV14, TNV148) at 3 mg/kg (week 0). Injections were repeated in all animals at weeks 1, 2, 3, and 4. Groups 1-6 were evaluated for test article efficacy. Serum samples, obtained from animals in Groups 7 and 8 were evaluated for immune response induction and pharmacokinetic clearance of TNV14 or TNV148 at weeks 2, 3 and 4.

Figures 13A-C are graphs representing the progression of disease severity in Example 5 based on the arthritic index. The 10 mg/kg cA2-treated group's arthritic index was significantly lower than the D-PBS control group starting at week 2 and continuing throughout the remainder of the study (week 5). The animals treated with 1 mg/kg or 3 mg/kg of cA2 and the animals treated with 3 mg/kg TNV14 failed to achieve any significant reduction in AI at any time throughout the study when compared to the d-PBS control group. The animals treated with 3 mg/kg TNV148 showed a significant reduction when compared to the d-PBS-treated group starting at week 3 and continuing through week 5. The 10 mg/kg cA2-treated animals showed a significant reduction in AI when compared to both the lower doses (1 mg/kg and 3 mg/kg) of cA2 at weeks 4 and 5 of the study and was also significantly lower than the TNV14-treated animals at weeks 3-5. Although there appeared to be no significant differences between any of the 3mg/kg treatment groups, the AI for the animals treated with 3 mg/kg TNV14 were significantly higher at some time points than the 10 mg/kg whereas the animals treated with TNV148 were not significantly different from the animals treated with 10 mg/kg of cA2.

Figure 14 shows arthritis mouse model mice Tg 197 weight changes in response to anti-TNF antibodies of the present invention as compared to controls in Example 6. At approximately 4 weeks of age the Tg197 study mice were assigned, based on gender and body weight, to one of 6 treatment groups and treated with a single intraperitoneal bolus dose of antibody (cA2, or TNV148) at either 3 mg/kg or 5 mg/kg. This study utilized the D-PBS and 10 mg/kg cA2 control Groups.

Figure 15 represents the progression of disease severity based on the arthritic index as presented in Example 6. All treatment groups showed some protection at the earlier time

points, with the 5 mg/kg cA2 and the 5 mg/kg TNV148 showing significant reductions in AI at weeks 1-3 and all treatment groups showing a significant reduction at week 2. Later in the study the animals treated with 5 mg/kg cA2 showed some protection, with significant reductions at weeks 4, 6 and 7. The low dose (3 mg/kg) of both the cA2 and the TNV148 showed significant reductions at 6 and all treatment groups showed significant reductions at week 7. None of the treatment groups were able to maintain a significant reduction at the conclusion of the study (week 8). There were no significant differences between any of the treatment groups (excluding the saline control group) at any time point.

Figure 16 shows arthritis mouse model mice Tg 197 weight changes in response to anti-TNF antibodies of the present invention as compared to controls in Example 7. To compare the efficacy of a single intraperitoneal dose of TNV148 (derived from hybridoma cells) and rTNV148B (derived from transfected cells). At approximately 4 weeks of age the Tg197 study mice were assigned, based on gender and body weight, to one of 9 treatment groups and treated with a single intraperitoneal bolus dose of Dulbecco's PBS (D-PBS) or antibody (TNV148, rTNV148B) at 1 mg/kg.

Figure 17 represents the progression of disease severity based on the arthritic index as presented in Example 7. The 10 mg/kg cA2-treated group's arthritic index was lower than the D-PBS control group starting at week 4 and continuing throughout the remainder of the study (week 8). Both of the TNV148-treated Groups and the 1 mg/kg cA2-treated Group showed a significant reduction in AI at week 4. Although a previous study (P-099-017) showed that TNV148 was slightly more effective at reducing the Arthritic Index following a single 1 mg/kg intraperitoneal bolus, this study showed that the AI from both versions of the TNV antibody-treated groups was slightly higher. Although (with the exception of week 6) the 1 mg/kg cA2-treated Group was not significantly increased when compared to the 10 mg/kg cA2 group and the TNV148-treated Groups were significantly higher at weeks 7 and 8, there were no significant differences in AI between the 1 mg/kg cA2, 1 mg/kg TNV148 and 1 mg/kg TNV148B at any point in the study.

#### DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

The present invention provides isolated, recombinant and/or synthetic anti-TNF human, primate, rodent, mammalian, chimeric, humanized or CDR-grafted, antibodies and TNF anti-idiotype antibodies thereto, as well as compositions and encoding nucleic acid molecules comprising at least one polynucleotide encoding at least one anti-TNF antibody or anti-idiotype antibody. The present invention further includes, but is not limited to, methods

of making and using such nucleic acids and antibodies and anti-idiotype antibodies, including diagnostic and therapeutic compositions, methods and devices.

- As used herein, an "anti-tumor necrosis factor alpha antibody," "anti-TNF antibody," "anti-TNF antibody portion," or "anti-TNF antibody fragment" and/or "anti-TNF antibody variant" and the like include any protein or peptide containing molecule that comprises at least a portion of an immunoglobulin molecule, such as but not limited to at least one complementarity determining region (CDR) of a heavy or light chain or a ligand binding portion thereof, a heavy chain or light chain variable region, a heavy chain or light chain constant region, a framework region, or any portion thereof, or at least one portion of an TNF receptor or binding protein, which can be incorporated into an antibody of the present invention. Such antibody optionally further affects a specific ligand, such as but not limited to where such antibody modulates, decreases, increases, antagonizes, agonizes, mitigates, alleviates, blocks, inhibits, abrogates and/or interferes with at least one TNF activity or binding, or with TNF receptor activity or binding, *in vitro*, *in situ* and/or *in vivo*. As a non-limiting example, a suitable anti-TNF antibody, specified portion or variant of the present invention can bind at least one TNF, or specified portions, variants or domains thereof. A suitable anti-TNF antibody, specified portion, or variant can also optionally affect at least one of TNF activity or function, such as but not limited to, RNA, DNA or protein synthesis, TNF release, TNF receptor signaling, membrane TNF cleavage, TNF activity, TNF production and/or synthesis.
- The term "antibody" is further intended to encompass antibodies, digestion fragments, specified portions and variants thereof, including antibody mimetics or comprising portions of antibodies that mimic the structure and/or function of an antibody or specified fragment or portion thereof, including single chain antibodies and fragments thereof. Functional fragments include antigen-binding fragments that bind to a mammalian TNF. For example, antibody fragments capable of binding to TNF or portions thereof, including, but not limited to Fab (e.g., by papain digestion), Fab' (e.g., by pepsin digestion and partial reduction) and F(ab')<sub>2</sub> (e.g., by pepsin digestion), facb (e.g., by plasmin digestion), pFc' (e.g., by pepsin or plasmin digestion), Fd (e.g., by pepsin digestion, partial reduction and reaggregation), Fv or scFv (e.g., by molecular biology techniques) fragments, are encompassed by the invention (see, e.g., Colligan, Immunology, supra).

- Such fragments can be produced by enzymatic cleavage, synthetic or recombinant techniques, as known in the art and/or as described herein. Antibodies can also be produced in a variety of truncated forms using antibody genes in which one or more stop codons have been introduced upstream of the natural stop site. For example, a combination gene encoding a F(ab')<sub>2</sub> heavy chain portion can be designed to include DNA sequences encoding the CH<sub>1</sub> domain and/or hinge region of the heavy chain. The various portions of antibodies can be

joined together chemically by conventional techniques, or can be prepared as a contiguous protein using genetic engineering techniques.

- As used herein, the term "human antibody" refers to an antibody in which substantially every part of the protein (e.g., CDR, framework, C<sub>L</sub>, C<sub>H</sub> domains (e.g., C<sub>H</sub>1, C<sub>H</sub>2, C<sub>H</sub>3), hinge, 5 (V<sub>L</sub>, V<sub>H</sub>)) is substantially non-immunogenic in humans, with only minor sequence changes or variations. Similarly, antibodies designated primate (monkey, baboon, chimpanzee, etc.), rodent (mouse, rat, rabbit, guinea pig, hamster, and the like) and other mammals designate such species, sub-genus, genus, sub-family, family specific antibodies. Further, chimeric antibodies include any combination of the above. Such changes or variations optionally and 10 preferably retain or reduce the immunogenicity in humans or other species relative to non-modified antibodies. Thus, a human antibody is distinct from a chimeric or humanized antibody. It is pointed out that a human antibody can be produced by a non-human animal or prokaryotic or eukaryotic cell that is capable of expressing functionally rearranged human immunoglobulin (e.g., heavy chain and/or light chain) genes. Further, when a human antibody 15 is a single chain antibody, it can comprise a linker peptide that is not found in native human antibodies. For example, an Fv can comprise a linker peptide, such as two to about eight glycine or other amino acid residues, which connects the variable region of the heavy chain and the variable region of the light chain. Such linker peptides are considered to be of human origin.
- 20 Bispecific, heterospecific, heteroconjugate or similar antibodies can also be used that are monoclonal, preferably human or humanized, antibodies that have binding specificities for at least two different antigens. In the present case, one of the binding specificities is for at least one TNF protein, the other one is for any other antigen. Methods for making bispecific antibodies are known in the art. Traditionally, the recombinant production of bispecific 25 antibodies is based on the co-expression of two immunoglobulin heavy chain-light chain pairs, where the two heavy chains have different specificities (Milstein and Cuello, Nature 305:537 (1983)). Because of the random assortment of immunoglobulin heavy and light chains, these hybridomas (quadromas) produce a potential mixture of 10 different antibody molecules, of which only one has the correct bispecific structure. The purification of the correct molecule, 30 which is usually done by affinity chromatography steps, is rather cumbersome, and the product yields are low. Similar procedures are disclosed, e.g., in WO 93/08829, US Patent Nos, 6210668, 6193967, 6132992, 6106833, 6060285, 6037453, 6010902, 5989530, 5959084, 5959083, 5932448, 5833985, 5821333, 5807706, 5643759, 5601819, 5582996, 5496549, 4676980, WO 91/00360, WO 92/00373, EP 03089, Traunecker et al., EMBO J. 10:3655 35 (1991), Suresh et al., Methods in Enzymology 121:210 (1986), each entirely incorporated herein by reference.

Anti-TNF antibodies (also termed TNF antibodies) useful in the methods and compositions of the present invention can optionally be characterized by high affinity binding to TNF and optionally and preferably having low toxicity. In particular, an antibody, specified fragment or variant of the invention, where the individual components, such as the variable 5 region, constant region and framework, individually and/or collectively, optionally and preferably possess low immunogenicity, is useful in the present invention. The antibodies that can be used in the invention are optionally characterized by their ability to treat patients for extended periods with measurable alleviation of symptoms and low and/or acceptable toxicity. Low or acceptable immunogenicity and/or high affinity, as well as other suitable properties, 10 can contribute to the therapeutic results achieved. "Low immunogenicity" is defined herein as raising significant HAHA, HACA or HAMA responses in less than about 75%, or preferably less than about 50% of the patients treated and/or raising low titres in the patient treated (less than about 300, preferably less than about 100 measured with a double antigen enzyme immunoassay) (Elliott *et al.*, *Lancet* 344:1125-1127 (1994), entirely incorporated herein by 15 reference).

#### *Utility*

The isolated nucleic acids of the present invention can be used for production of at least one anti-TNF antibody or specified variant thereof, which can be used to measure or effect in an cell, tissue, organ or animal (including mammals and humans), to diagnose, monitor, 20 modulate, treat, alleviate, help prevent the incidence of, or reduce the symptoms of, at least one TNF condition, selected from, but not limited to, at least one of an immune disorder or disease, a cardiovascular disorder or disease, an infectious, malignant, and/or neurologic disorder or disease.

Such a method can comprise administering an effective amount of a composition or a 25 pharmaceutical composition comprising at least one anti-TNF antibody to a cell, tissue, organ, animal or patient in need of such modulation, treatment, alleviation, prevention, or reduction in symptoms, effects or mechanisms. The effective amount can comprise an amount of about 0.001 to 500 mg/kg per single (e.g., bolus), multiple or continuous administration, or to achieve a serum concentration of 0.01-5000 µg/ml serum concentration per single, multiple, or 30 continuous administration, or any effective range or value therein, as done and determined using known methods, as described herein or known in the relevant arts.

#### *Citations*

All publications or patents cited herein are entirely incorporated herein by reference as they show the state of the art at the time of the present invention and/or to provide description 35 and enablement of the present invention. Publications refer to any scientific or patent

publications, or any other information available in any media format, including all recorded, electronic or printed formats. The following references are entirely incorporated herein by reference: Ausubel, et al., ed., Current Protocols in Molecular Biology, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., NY, NY (1987-2001); Sambrook, et al., Molecular Cloning: A Laboratory Manual, 2<sup>nd</sup> Edition, Cold Spring Harbor, NY (1989); Harlow and Lane, antibodies, a Laboratory Manual, Cold Spring Harbor, NY (1989); Colligan, et al., eds., Current Protocols in Immunology, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., NY (1994-2001); Colligan et al., Current Protocols in Protein Science, John Wiley & Sons, NY, NY, (1997-2001).

*Antibodies of the Present Invention*

At least one anti-TNF antibody of the present invention can be optionally produced by a cell line, a mixed cell line, an immortalized cell or clonal population of immortalized cells, as well known in the art. See, e.g., Ausubel, et al., ed., Current Protocols in Molecular Biology, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., NY, NY (1987-2001); Sambrook, et al., Molecular Cloning: A Laboratory Manual, 2<sup>nd</sup> Edition, Cold Spring Harbor, NY (1989); Harlow and Lane, antibodies, a Laboratory Manual, Cold Spring Harbor, NY (1989); Colligan, et al., eds., Current Protocols in Immunology, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., NY (1994-2001); Colligan et al., Current Protocols in Protein Science, John Wiley & Sons, NY, NY, (1997-2001), each entirely incorporated herein by reference.

Human antibodies that are specific for human TNF proteins or fragments thereof can be raised against an appropriate immunogenic antigen, such as isolated and/or TNF protein or a portion thereof (including synthetic molecules, such as synthetic peptides). Other specific or general mammalian antibodies can be similarly raised. Preparation of immunogenic antigens, and monoclonal antibody production can be performed using any suitable technique.

In one approach, a hybridoma is produced by fusing a suitable immortal cell line (e.g., a myeloma cell line such as, but not limited to, Sp2/0, Sp2/0-AG14, NSO, NS1, NS2, AE-1, L.5, >243, P3X63Ag8.653, Sp2 SA3, Sp2 MAI, Sp2 SS1, Sp2 SA5, U937, MLA 144, ACT IV, MOLT4, DA-1, JURKAT, WEHI, K-562, COS, RAJI, NIH 3T3, HL-60, MLA 144, NAMAIWA, NEURO 2A, or the like, or heteromylomas, fusion products thereof, or any cell or fusion cell derived therefrom, or any other suitable cell line as known in the art. See, e.g., www.atcc.org, www.lifetech.com., and the like, with antibody producing cells, such as, but not limited to, isolated or cloned spleen, peripheral blood, lymph, tonsil, or other immune or B cell containing cells, or any other cells expressing heavy or light chain constant or variable or framework or CDR sequences, either as endogenous or heterologous nucleic acid, as recombinant or endogenous, viral, bacterial, algal, prokaryotic, amphibian, insect, reptilian, fish, mammalian, rodent, equine, ovine, goat, sheep, primate, eukaryotic, genomic DNA, cDNA, rDNA, mitochondrial DNA or RNA, chloroplast DNA or RNA, hnRNA, mRNA,

tRNA, single, double or triple stranded, hybridized, and the like or any combination thereof. See, e.g., Ausubel, *supra*, and Colligan, *Immunology*, *supra*, chapter 2, entirely incorporated herein by reference.

antibody producing cells can also be obtained from the peripheral blood or, preferably  
5 the spleen or lymph nodes, of humans or other suitable animals that have been immunized with the antigen of interest. Any other suitable host cell can also be used for expressing heterologous or endogenous nucleic acid encoding an antibody, specified fragment or variant thereof, of the present invention. The fused cells (hybridomas) or recombinant cells can be isolated using selective culture conditions or other suitable known methods, and cloned by  
10 limiting dilution or cell sorting, or other known methods. Cells which produce antibodies with the desired specificity can be selected by a suitable assay (e.g., ELISA).

Other suitable methods of producing or isolating antibodies of the requisite specificity can be used, including, but not limited to, methods that select recombinant antibody from a peptide or protein library (e.g., but not limited to, a bacteriophage, ribosome, oligonucleotide,  
15 RNA, cDNA, or the like, display library; e.g., as available from Cambridge antibody Technologies, Cambridgeshire, UK; MorphoSys, Martinsreid/Planegg, DE; Biovation, Aberdeen, Scotland, UK; BioInvent, Lund, Sweden; Dyax Corp., Enzon, Affymax/Biosite; Xoma, Berkeley, CA; Ixsys. See, e.g., EP 368,684, PCT/GB91/01134; PCT/GB92/01755; PCT/GB92/002240; PCT/GB92/00883; PCT/GB93/00605; US 08/350260(5/12/94);  
20 PCT/GB94/01422; PCT/GB94/02662; PCT/GB97/01835; (CAT/MRC); WO90/14443; WO90/14424; WO90/14430; PCT/US94/1234; WO92/18619; WO96/07754; (Scripps); EP 614 989 (MorphoSys); WO95/16027 (BioInvent); WO88/06630; WO90/3809 (Dyax); US 4,704,692 (Enzon); PCT/US91/02989 (Affymax); WO89/06283; EP 371 998; EP 550 400; (Xoma); EP 229 046; PCT/US91/07149 (Ixsys); or stochastically generated peptides or  
25 proteins - US 5723323, 5763192, 5814476, 5817483, 5824514, 5976862, WO 86/05803, EP 590 689 (Ixsys, now Applied Molecular Evolution (AME), each entirely incorporated herein by reference) or that rely upon immunization of transgenic animals (e.g., SCID mice, Nguyen et al., *Microbiol. Immunol.* 41:901-907 (1997); Sandhu et al., *Crit. Rev. Biotechnol.* 16:95-118 (1996); Eren et al., *Immunol.* 93:154-161 (1998), each entirely incorporated by reference as  
30 well as related patents and applications) that are capable of producing a repertoire of human antibodies, as known in the art and/or as described herein. Such techniques, include, but are not limited to, ribosome display (Hanes et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 94:4937-4942 (May 1997); Hanes et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 95:14130-14135 (Nov. 1998)); single cell antibody producing technologies (e.g., selected lymphocyte antibody method ("SLAM") (US  
35 pat. No. 5,627,052, Wen et al., *J. Immunol.* 17:887-892 (1987); Babcock et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 93:7843-7848 (1996)); gel microdroplet and flow cytometry (Powell et al.,

Biotechnol. 8:333-337 (1990); One Cell Systems, Cambridge, MA; Gray et al., J. Imm. Meth. 182:155-163 (1995); Kenny et al., Bio/Technol. 13:787-790 (1995); B-cell selection (Steenbakkers et al., Molec. Biol. Reports 19:125-134 (1994); Jonak et al., Progress Biotech, Vol. 5, In Vitro Immunization in Hybridoma Technology, Borrebaeck, ed., Elsevier Science Publishers B.V., Amsterdam, Netherlands (1988)).

Methods for engineering or humanizing non-human or human antibodies can also be used and are well known in the art. Generally, a humanized or engineered antibody has one or more amino acid residues from a source which is non-human, e.g., but not limited to mouse, rat, rabbit, non-human primate or other mammal. These human amino acid residues are often referred to as "import" residues, which are typically taken from an "import" variable, constant or other domain of a known human sequence. Known human Ig sequences are disclosed, e.g., www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/entrez/query.fcgi; www.atcc.org/phage/hdb.html; www.sciquest.com/; www.abcam.com/; www.antibodyresource.com/onlinecomp.html; www.public.iastate.edu/~pedro/research\_tools.html; www.mgen.uni-heidelberg.de/SD/IT/IT.html; www.whfreeman.com/immunology/CH05/kuby05.htm; www.library.thinkquest.org/12429/Immune/Antibody.html; www.hhmi.org/grants/lectures/1996/vlab/; www.path.cam.ac.uk/~mrc7/mikeimages.html; www.antibodyresource.com/; mcb.harvard.edu/BioLinks/Immunology.html; www.immunologylink.com/; pathbox.wustl.edu/~hcenter/index.html; www.biotech.ufl.edu/~hcl/; www.pebio.com/pa/340913/340913.html; www.nal.usda.gov/awic/pubs/antibody/; www.m.ehime-u.ac.jp/~yasuhito/Elisa.html; www.biodesign.com/table.asp; www.icnet.uk/axp/facs/davies/links.html; www.biotech.ufl.edu/~fccl/protocol.html; www.isac-net.org/sites\_geo.html; aximt1.imt.uni-marburg.de/~rek/AEPStart.html; baserv.uci.kun.nl/~jraats/links1.html; www.recab.uni-hd.de/immuno.bme.nwu.edu/; www.mrc-cpe.cam.ac.uk/imt-doc/public/INTRO.html; www.ibt.unam.mx/vir/V\_mice.html; imgt.cnusc.fr:8104/; www.biochem.ucl.ac.uk/~martin/abs/index.html; antibody.bath.ac.uk/; abgen.cvm.tamu.edu/lab/wwwabgen.html; www.unizh.ch/~honegger/AHOseminar/Slide01.html; www.cryst.bbk.ac.uk/~ubcg07s/; www.nimr.mrc.ac.uk/CC/ccaewg/ccaewg.htm; www.path.cam.ac.uk/~mrc7/humanisation/TAHHP.html; www.ibt.unam.mx/vir/structure/stat\_aim.html; www.biosci.missouri.edu/smithgp/index.html; www.cryst.bioc.cam.ac.uk/~fmolina/Web-pages/Pept/spottech.html; www.jerini.de/fr\_products.htm; www.patents.ibm.com/ibm.html.Kabat et al., Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest, U.S. Dept. Health (1983), each entirely incorporated herein by reference.

Such imported sequences can be used to reduce immunogenicity or reduce, enhance or modify binding, affinity, on-rate, off-rate, avidity, specificity, half-life, or any other suitable characteristic, as known in the art. Generally part or all of the non-human or human CDR sequences are maintained while the non-human sequences of the variable and constant regions 5 are replaced with human or other amino acids. Antibodies can also optionally be humanized with retention of high affinity for the antigen and other favorable biological properties. To achieve this goal, humanized antibodies can be optionally prepared by a process of analysis of the parental sequences and various conceptual humanized products using three-dimensional models of the parental and humanized sequences. Three-dimensional immunoglobulin models 10 are commonly available and are familiar to those skilled in the art. Computer programs are available which illustrate and display probable three-dimensional conformational structures of selected candidate immunoglobulin sequences. Inspection of these displays permits analysis of the likely role of the residues in the functioning of the candidate immunoglobulin sequence, i.e., the analysis of residues that influence the ability of the candidate immunoglobulin to bind 15 its antigen. In this way, FR residues can be selected and combined from the consensus and import sequences so that the desired antibody characteristic, such as increased affinity for the target antigen(s), is achieved. In general, the CDR residues are directly and most substantially involved in influencing antigen binding. Humanization or engineering of antibodies of the present invention can be performed using any known method, such as but not limited to those 20 described in, Winter (Jones et al., Nature 321:522 (1986); Riechmann et al., Nature 332:323 (1988); Verhoeven et al., Science 239:1534 (1988)), Sims et al., J. Immunol. 151: 2296 (1993); Chothia and Lesk, J. Mol. Biol. 196:901 (1987), Carter et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 89:4285 (1992); Presta et al., J. Immunol. 151:2623 (1993), US patent Nos: 5723323, 5976862, 5824514, 5817483, 5814476, 5763192, 5723323, 5,766886, 5714352, 6204023, 25 6180370, 5693762, 5530101, 5585089, 5225539; 4816567, PCT/ US98/16280, US96/18978, US91/09630, US91/05939, US94/01234, GB89/01334, GB91/01134, GB92/01755; WO90/14443, WO90/14424, WO90/14430, EP 229246, each entirely incorporated herein by reference, included references cited therein.

The anti-TNF antibody can also be optionally generated by immunization of a 30 transgenic animal (e.g., mouse, rat, hamster, non-human primate, and the like) capable of producing a repertoire of human antibodies, as described herein and/or as known in the art. Cells that produce a human anti-TNF antibody can be isolated from such animals and immortalized using suitable methods, such as the methods described herein.

Transgenic mice that can produce a repertoire of human antibodies that bind to human 35 antigens can be produced by known methods (e.g., but not limited to, U.S. Pat. Nos: 5,770,428, 5,569,825, 5,545,806, 5,625,126, 5,625,825, 5,633,425, 5,661,016 and 5,789,650 issued to

Lonberg *et al.*; Jakobovits *et al.* WO 98/50433, Jakobovits *et al.* WO 98/24893, Lonberg *et al.* WO 98/24884, Lonberg *et al.* WO 97/13852, Lonberg *et al.* WO 94/25585, Kucherlapate *et al.* WO 96/34096, Kucherlapate *et al.* EP 0463 151 B1, Kucherlapate *et al.* EP 0710 719 A1, Surani *et al.* US. Pat. No. 5,545,807, Bruggemann *et al.* WO 90/04036, Bruggemann *et al.* EP 5 0438 474 B1, Lonberg *et al.* EP 0814 259 A2, Lonberg *et al.* GB 2 272 440 A, Lonberg *et al.* *Nature* 368:856-859 (1994), Taylor *et al.*, *Int. Immunol.* 6(4):579-591 (1994), Green *et al.*, *Nature Genetics* 7:13-21 (1994), Mendez *et al.*, *Nature Genetics* 15:146-156 (1997), Taylor *et al.*, *Nucleic Acids Research* 20(23):6287-6295 (1992), Tuailion *et al.*, *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 90(8):3720-3724 (1993), Lonberg *et al.*, *Int Rev Immunol* 13(1):65-93 (1995) and Fishwald *et al.*, *Nat Biotechnol* 14(7):845-851 (1996), which are each entirely incorporated herein by reference). Generally, these mice comprise at least one transgene comprising DNA from at least one human immunoglobulin locus that is functionally rearranged, or which can undergo functional rearrangement. The endogenous immunoglobulin loci in such mice can be disrupted or deleted to eliminate the capacity of the animal to produce antibodies encoded by 10 endogenous genes.

Screening antibodies for specific binding to similar proteins or fragments can be conveniently achieved using peptide display libraries. This method involves the screening of large collections of peptides for individual members having the desired function or structure. antibody screening of peptide display libraries is well known in the art. The displayed peptide 20 sequences can be from 3 to 5000 or more amino acids in length, frequently from 5-100 amino acids long, and often from about 8 to 25 amino acids long. In addition to direct chemical synthetic methods for generating peptide libraries, several recombinant DNA methods have been described. One type involves the display of a peptide sequence on the surface of a bacteriophage or cell. Each bacteriophage or cell contains the nucleotide sequence encoding the particular 25 displayed peptide sequence. Such methods are described in PCT Patent Publication Nos. 91/17271, 91/18980, 91/19818, and 93/08278. Other systems for generating libraries of peptides have aspects of both in vitro chemical synthesis and recombinant methods. See, PCT Patent Publication Nos. 92/05258, 92/14843, and 96/19256. See also, U.S. Patent Nos. 5,658,754; and 5,643,768. Peptide display libraries, vector, and screening kits are commercially available from 30 such suppliers as Invitrogen (Carlsbad, CA), and Cambridge antibody Technologies (Cambridgeshire, UK). See, e.g., U.S. Pat. Nos. 4704692, 4939666, 4946778, 5260203, 5455030, 5518889, 5534621, 5656730, 5763733, 5767260, 5856456, assigned to Enzon; 5223409, 5403484, 5571698, 5837500, assigned to Dyax, 5427908, 5580717, assigned to Affymax; 5885793, assigned to Cambridge antibody Technologies; 5750373, assigned to 35 Genentech, 5618920, 5595898, 5576195, 5698435, 5693493, 5698417, assigned to Xoma,

Colligan, *supra*; Ausubel, *supra*; or Sambrook, *supra*, each of the above patents and publications entirely incorporated herein by reference.

Antibodies of the present invention can also be prepared using at least one anti-TNF antibody encoding nucleic acid to provide transgenic animals or mammals, such as goats, cows, horses, sheep, and the like, that produce such antibodies in their milk. Such animals can be provided using known methods. See, e.g., but not limited to, US patent nos. 5,827,690; 5,849,992; 4,873,316; 5,849,992; 5,994,616; 5,565,362; 5,304,489, and the like, each of which is entirely incorporated herein by reference.

Antibodies of the present invention can additionally be prepared using at least one anti-TNF antibody encoding nucleic acid to provide transgenic plants and cultured plant cells (e.g., but not limited to tobacco and maize) that produce such antibodies, specified portions or variants in the plant parts or in cells cultured therefrom. As a non-limiting example, transgenic tobacco leaves expressing recombinant proteins have been successfully used to provide large amounts of recombinant proteins, e.g., using an inducible promoter. See, e.g., Cramer et al., Curr. Top. Microbiol. Immunol. 240:95-118 (1999) and references cited therein. Also, transgenic maize have been used to express mammalian proteins at commercial production levels, with biological activities equivalent to those produced in other recombinant systems or purified from natural sources. See, e.g., Hood et al., Adv. Exp. Med. Biol. 464:127-147 (1999) and references cited therein. Antibodies have also been produced in large amounts from transgenic plant seeds including antibody fragments, such as single chain antibodies (scFv's), including tobacco seeds and potato tubers. See, e.g., Conrad et al., Plant Mol. Biol. 38:101-109 (1998) and reference cited therein. Thus, antibodies of the present invention can also be produced using transgenic plants, according to known methods. See also, e.g., Fischer et al., Biotechnol. Appl. Biochem. 30:99-108 (Oct., 1999), Ma et al., Trends Biotechnol. 13:522-7 (1995); Ma et al., Plant Physiol. 109:341-6 (1995); Whitelam et al., Biochem. Soc. Trans. 22:940-944 (1994); and references cited therein. See, also generally for plant expression of antibodies, but not limited to, Each of the above references is entirely incorporated herein by reference.

The antibodies of the invention can bind human TNF with a wide range of affinities ( $K_D$ ). In a preferred embodiment, at least one human mAb of the present invention can optionally bind human TNF with high affinity. For example, a human mAb can bind human TNF with a  $K_D$  equal to or less than about  $10^{-7}$  M, such as but not limited to, 0.1-9.9 (or any range or value therein)  $\times 10^{-7}$ ,  $10^{-8}$ ,  $10^{-9}$ ,  $10^{-10}$ ,  $10^{-11}$ ,  $10^{-12}$ ,  $10^{-13}$  or any range or value therein.

The affinity or avidity of an antibody for an antigen can be determined experimentally using any suitable method. (See, for example, Berzofsky, *et al.*, "Antibody-Antigen Interactions," In *Fundamental Immunology*, Paul, W. E., Ed., Raven Press: New York, NY

(1984); Kuby, Janis *Immunology*, W. H. Freeman and Company: New York, NY (1992); and methods described herein). The measured affinity of a particular antibody-antigen interaction can vary if measured under different conditions (e.g., salt concentration, pH). Thus, measurements of affinity and other antigen-binding parameters (e.g.,  $K_D$ ,  $K_a$ ,  $K_d$ ) are preferably made with standardized solutions of antibody and antigen, and a standardized buffer, such as the buffer described herein.

#### 5 Nucleic Acid Molecules

Using the information provided herein, such as the nucleotide sequences encoding at least 70-100% of the contiguous amino acids of at least one of SEQ ID NOS:1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 10 8, specified fragments, variants or consensus sequences thereof, or a deposited vector comprising at least one of these sequences, a nucleic acid molecule of the present invention encoding at least one anti-TNF antibody can be obtained using methods described herein or as known in the art.

Nucleic acid molecules of the present invention can be in the form of RNA, such as 15 mRNA, hnRNA, tRNA or any other form, or in the form of DNA, including, but not limited to, cDNA and genomic DNA obtained by cloning or produced synthetically, or any combinations thereof. The DNA can be triple-stranded, double-stranded or single-stranded, or any combination thereof. Any portion of at least one strand of the DNA or RNA can be the coding strand, also known as the sense strand, or it can be the non-coding strand, also referred to as 20 the anti-sense strand.

Isolated nucleic acid molecules of the present invention can include nucleic acid molecules comprising an open reading frame (ORF), optionally with one or more introns, e.g., but not limited to, at least one specified portion of at least one CDR, as CDR1, CDR2 and/or 25 CDR3 of at least one heavy chain (e.g., SEQ ID NOS:1-3) or light chain (e.g., SEQ ID NOS: 4-6); nucleic acid molecules comprising the coding sequence for an anti-TNF antibody or variable region (e.g., SEQ ID NOS:7,8); and nucleic acid molecules which comprise a nucleotide sequence substantially different from those described above but which, due to the degeneracy of the genetic code, still encode at least one anti-TNF antibody as described herein and/or as known in the art. Of course, the genetic code is well known in the art. Thus, it 30 would be routine for one skilled in the art to generate such degenerate nucleic acid variants that code for specific anti-TNF antibodies of the present invention. See, e.g., Ausubel, et al., *supra*, and such nucleic acid variants are included in the present invention. Non-limiting examples of isolated nucleic acid molecules of the present invention include SEQ ID NOS:10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, corresponding to non-limiting examples of a nucleic acid encoding, 35 respectively, HC CDR1, HC CDR2, HC CDR3, LC CDR1, LC CDR2, LC CDR3, HC variable region and LC variable region.

In another aspect, the invention provides isolated nucleic acid molecules encoding a(n) anti-TNF antibody having an amino acid sequence as encoded by the nucleic acid contained in the plasmid deposited as designated clone names \_\_\_\_\_ and ATCC Deposit Nos. \_\_\_\_\_, respectively, deposited 5 on \_\_\_\_\_.

As indicated herein, nucleic acid molecules of the present invention which comprise a nucleic acid encoding an anti-TNF antibody can include, but are not limited to, those encoding the amino acid sequence of an antibody fragment, by itself; the coding sequence for the entire antibody or a portion thereof; the coding sequence for an antibody, fragment or portion, as well 10 as additional sequences, such as the coding sequence of at least one signal leader or fusion peptide, with or without the aforementioned additional coding sequences, such as at least one intron, together with additional, non-coding sequences, including but not limited to, non-coding 5' and 3' sequences, such as the transcribed, non-translated sequences that play a role in transcription, mRNA processing, including splicing and polyadenylation signals (for 15 example - ribosome binding and stability of mRNA); an additional coding sequence that codes for additional amino acids, such as those that provide additional functionalities. Thus, the sequence encoding an antibody can be fused to a marker sequence, such as a sequence encoding a peptide that facilitates purification of the fused antibody comprising an antibody fragment or portion.

20 **Polynucleotides Which Selectively Hybridize to a Polynucleotide as Described Herein**

The present invention provides isolated nucleic acids that hybridize under selective hybridization conditions to a polynucleotide disclosed herein. Thus, the polynucleotides of this embodiment can be used for isolating, detecting, and/or quantifying nucleic acids comprising 25 such polynucleotides. For example, polynucleotides of the present invention can be used to identify, isolate, or amplify partial or full-length clones in a deposited library. In some embodiments, the polynucleotides are genomic or cDNA sequences isolated, or otherwise complementary to, a cDNA from a human or mammalian nucleic acid library.

Preferably, the cDNA library comprises at least 80% full-length sequences, preferably at 30 least 85% or 90% full-length sequences, and more preferably at least 95% full-length sequences. The cDNA libraries can be normalized to increase the representation of rare sequences. Low or moderate stringency hybridization conditions are typically, but not exclusively, employed with sequences having a reduced sequence identity relative to complementary sequences. Moderate and high stringency conditions can optionally be employed for sequences of greater identity. 35 Low stringency conditions allow selective hybridization of sequences having about 70% sequence identity and can be employed to identify orthologous or paralogous sequences.

Optionally, polynucleotides of this invention will encode at least a portion of an antibody encoded by the polynucleotides described herein. The polynucleotides of this invention embrace nucleic acid sequences that can be employed for selective hybridization to a polynucleotide encoding an antibody of the present invention. See, e.g., Ausubel, *supra*; Colligan, *supra*, each entirely incorporated herein by reference.

#### Construction of Nucleic Acids

The isolated nucleic acids of the present invention can be made using (a) recombinant methods, (b) synthetic techniques, (c) purification techniques, or combinations thereof, as well-known in the art.

The nucleic acids can conveniently comprise sequences in addition to a polynucleotide of the present invention. For example, a multi-cloning site comprising one or more endonuclease restriction sites can be inserted into the nucleic acid to aid in isolation of the polynucleotide. Also, translatable sequences can be inserted to aid in the isolation of the translated polynucleotide of the present invention. For example, a hexa-histidine marker sequence provides a convenient means to purify the proteins of the present invention. The nucleic acid of the present invention - excluding the coding sequence - is optionally a vector, adapter, or linker for cloning and/or expression of a polynucleotide of the present invention.

Additional sequences can be added to such cloning and/or expression sequences to optimize their function in cloning and/or expression, to aid in isolation of the polynucleotide, or to improve the introduction of the polynucleotide into a cell. Use of cloning vectors, expression vectors, adapters, and linkers is well known in the art. (See, e.g., Ausubel, *supra*; or Sambrook, *supra*)

#### Recombinant Methods for Constructing Nucleic Acids

The isolated nucleic acid compositions of this invention, such as RNA, cDNA, genomic DNA, or any combination thereof, can be obtained from biological sources using any number of cloning methodologies known to those of skill in the art. In some embodiments, oligonucleotide probes that selectively hybridize, under stringent conditions, to the polynucleotides of the present invention are used to identify the desired sequence in a cDNA or genomic DNA library. The isolation of RNA, and construction of cDNA and genomic libraries, is well known to those of ordinary skill in the art. (See, e.g., Ausubel, *supra*; or Sambrook, *supra*)

#### Nucleic Acid Screening and Isolation Methods

A cDNA or genomic library can be screened using a probe based upon the sequence of a polynucleotide of the present invention, such as those disclosed herein. Probes can be used to hybridize with genomic DNA or cDNA sequences to isolate homologous genes in the same or different organisms. Those of skill in the art will appreciate that various degrees of stringency of hybridization can be employed in the assay; and either the hybridization or the wash medium can

be stringent. As the conditions for hybridization become more stringent, there must be a greater degree of complementarity between the probe and the target for duplex formation to occur. The degree of stringency can be controlled by one or more of temperature, ionic strength, pH and the presence of a partially denaturing solvent such as formamide. For example, the stringency of  
5 hybridization is conveniently varied by changing the polarity of the reactant solution through, for example, manipulation of the concentration of formamide within the range of 0% to 50%. The degree of complementarity (sequence identity) required for detectable binding will vary in accordance with the stringency of the hybridization medium and/or wash medium. The degree of complementarity will optimally be 100%, or 70-100%, or any range or value therein. However,  
10 it should be understood that minor sequence variations in the probes and primers can be compensated for by reducing the stringency of the hybridization and/or wash medium.

Methods of amplification of RNA or DNA are well known in the art and can be used according to the present invention without undue experimentation, based on the teaching and guidance presented herein.

15 Known methods of DNA or RNA amplification include, but are not limited to, polymerase chain reaction (PCR) and related amplification processes (see, e.g., U.S. Patent Nos. 4,683,195, 4,683,202, 4,800,159, 4,965,188, to Mullis, et al.; 4,795,699 and 4,921,794 to Tabor, et al; 5,142,033 to Innis; 5,122,464 to Wilson, et al.; 5,091,310 to Innis; 5,066,584 to Gyllensten, et al; 4,889,818 to Gelfand, et al; 4,994,370 to Silver, et al; 4,766,067 to Biswas;  
20 4,656,134 to Ringold) and RNA mediated amplification that uses anti-sense'RNA to the target sequence as a template for double-stranded DNA synthesis (U.S. Patent No. 5,130,238 to Malek, et al, with the tradename NASBA), the entire contents of which references are incorporated herein by reference. (See, e.g., Ausubel, *supra*; or Sambrook, *supra*.)

For instance, polymerase chain reaction (PCR) technology can be used to amplify the  
25 sequences of polynucleotides of the present invention and related genes directly from genomic DNA or cDNA libraries. PCR and other in vitro amplification methods can also be useful, for example, to clone nucleic acid sequences that code for proteins to be expressed, to make nucleic acids to use as probes for detecting the presence of the desired mRNA in samples, for nucleic acid sequencing, or for other purposes. Examples of techniques sufficient to direct persons of  
30 skill through in vitro amplification methods are found in Berger, *supra*, Sambrook, *supra*, and Ausubel, *supra*, as well as Mullis, et al., U.S. Patent No. 4,683,202 (1987); and Innis, et al., PCR Protocols A Guide to Methods and Applications, Eds., Academic Press Inc., San Diego, CA (1990). Commercially available kits for genomic PCR amplification are known in the art. See, e.g., Advantage-GC Genomic PCR Kit (Clontech). Additionally, e.g., the T4 gene 32 protein  
35 (Boehringer Mannheim) can be used to improve yield of long PCR products.

#### Synthetic Methods for Constructing Nucleic Acids

The isolated nucleic acids of the present invention can also be prepared by direct chemical synthesis by known methods (see, e.g., Ausubel, et al., supra). Chemical synthesis generally produces a single-stranded oligonucleotide, which can be converted into double-stranded DNA by hybridization with a complementary sequence, or by polymerization with a 5 DNA polymerase using the single strand as a template. One of skill in the art will recognize that while chemical synthesis of DNA can be limited to sequences of about 100 or more bases, longer sequences can be obtained by the ligation of shorter sequences.

#### Recombinant Expression Cassettes

The present invention further provides recombinant expression cassettes comprising a 10 nucleic acid of the present invention. A nucleic acid sequence of the present invention, for example a cDNA or a genomic sequence encoding an antibody of the present invention, can be used to construct a recombinant expression cassette that can be introduced into at least one desired host cell. A recombinant expression cassette will typically comprise a polynucleotide of the present invention operably linked to transcriptional initiation regulatory sequences that will 15 direct the transcription of the polynucleotide in the intended host cell. Both heterologous and non-heterologous (i.e., endogenous) promoters can be employed to direct expression of the nucleic acids of the present invention.

In some embodiments, isolated nucleic acids that serve as promoter, enhancer, or other elements can be introduced in the appropriate position (upstream, downstream or in intron) of a 20 non-heterologous form of a polynucleotide of the present invention so as to up or down regulate expression of a polynucleotide of the present invention. For example, endogenous promoters can be altered *in vivo* or *in vitro* by mutation, deletion and/or substitution.

#### Vectors And Host Cells

The present invention also relates to vectors that include isolated nucleic acid 25 molecules of the present invention, host cells that are genetically engineered with the recombinant vectors, and the production of at least one anti-TNF antibody by recombinant techniques, as is well known in the art. See, e.g., Sambrook, et al., supra; Ausubel, et al., supra, each entirely incorporated herein by reference.

The polynucleotides can optionally be joined to a vector containing a selectable 30 marker for propagation in a host. Generally, a plasmid vector is introduced in a precipitate, such as a calcium phosphate precipitate, or in a complex with a charged lipid. If the vector is a virus, it can be packaged *in vitro* using an appropriate packaging cell line and then transduced into host cells.

The DNA insert should be operatively linked to an appropriate promoter. The 35 expression constructs will further contain sites for transcription initiation, termination and, in the transcribed region, a ribosome binding site for translation. The coding portion of the

mature transcripts expressed by the constructs will preferably include a translation initiating at the beginning and a termination codon (e.g., UAA, UGA or UAG) appropriately positioned at the end of the mRNA to be translated, with UAA and UAG preferred for mammalian or eukaryotic cell expression.

5 Expression vectors will preferably but optionally include at least one selectable marker. Such markers include, e.g., but not limited to, methotrexate (MTX), dihydrofolate reductase (DHFR, US Pat.Nos. 4,399,216; 4,634,665; 4,656,134; 4,956,288; 5,149,636; 5,179,017, ampicillin, neomycin (G418), mycophenolic acid, or glutamine synthetase (GS, US Pat.Nos. 5,122,464; 5,770,359; 5,827,739) resistance for eukaryotic cell culture, and 10 tetracycline or ampicillin resistance genes for culturing in *E. coli* and other bacteria or prokaryotics (the above patents are entirely incorporated hereby by reference). Appropriate culture mediums and conditions for the above-described host cells are known in the art. Suitable vectors will be readily apparent to the skilled artisan. Introduction of a vector construct into a host cell can be effected by calcium phosphate transfection, DEAE-dextran 15 mediated transfection, cationic lipid-mediated transfection, electroporation, transduction, infection or other known methods. Such methods are described in the art, such as Sambrook, supra, Chapters 1-4 and 16-18; Ausubel, supra, Chapters 1, 9, 13, 15, 16.

At least one antibody of the present invention can be expressed in a modified form, such as a fusion protein, and can include not only secretion signals, but also additional 20 heterologous functional regions. For instance, a region of additional amino acids, particularly charged amino acids, can be added to the N-terminus of an antibody to improve stability and persistence in the host cell, during purification, or during subsequent handling and storage. Also, peptide moieties can be added to an antibody of the present invention to facilitate 25 purification. Such regions can be removed prior to final preparation of an antibody or at least one fragment thereof. Such methods are described in many standard laboratory manuals, such as Sambrook, supra, Chapters 17.29-17.42 and 18.1-18.74; Ausubel, supra, Chapters 16, 17 and 18.

Those of ordinary skill in the art are knowledgeable in the numerous expression systems available for expression of a nucleic acid encoding a protein of the present invention.

30 Alternatively, nucleic acids of the present invention can be expressed in a host cell by turning on (by manipulation) in a host cell that contains endogenous DNA encoding an antibody of the present invention. Such methods are well known in the art, e.g., as described in US patent Nos. 5,580,734, 5,641,670, 5,733,746, and 5,733,761, entirely incorporated herein by reference.

Illustrative of cell cultures useful for the production of the antibodies, specified portions 35 or variants thereof, are mammalian cells. Mammalian cell systems often will be in the form of monolayers of cells although mammalian cell suspensions or bioreactors can also be used. A

number of suitable host cell lines capable of expressing intact glycosylated proteins have been developed in the art, and include the COS-1 (e.g., ATCC CRL 1650), COS-7 (e.g., ATCC CRL-1651), HEK293, BHK21 (e.g., ATCC CRL-10), CHO (e.g., ATCC CRL 1610) and BSC-1 (e.g., ATCC CRL-26) cell lines, Cos-7 cells, CHO cells, hep G2 cells, P3X63Ag8.653, SP2/0-Ag14, 5 293 cells, HeLa cells and the like, which are readily available from, for example, American Type Culture Collection, Manassas, Va ([www.atcc.org](http://www.atcc.org)). Preferred host cells include cells of lymphoid origin such as myeloma and lymphoma cells. Particularly preferred host cells are P3X63Ag8.653 cells (ATCC Accession Number CRL-1580) and SP2/0-Ag14 cells (ATCC Accession Number CRL-1851). In a particularly preferred embodiment, the recombinant cell 10 is a P3X63Ab8.653 or a SP2/0-Ag14 cell.

Expression vectors for these cells can include one or more of the following expression control sequences, such as, but not limited to an origin of replication; a promoter (e.g., late or early SV40 promoters, the CMV promoter (US Pat.Nos. 5,168,062; 5,385,839), an HSV tk promoter, a pgk (phosphoglycerate kinase) promoter, an EF-1 alpha promoter (US Pat.No. 15 5,266,491), at least one human immunoglobulin promoter; an enhancer, and/or processing information sites, such as ribosome binding sites, RNA splice sites, polyadenylation sites (e.g., an SV40 large T Ag poly A addition site), and transcriptional terminator sequences. See, e.g., Ausubel et al., *supra*; Sambrook, et al., *supra*. Other cells useful for production of nucleic acids or proteins of the present invention are known and/or available, for instance, from the American 20 Type Culture Collection Catalogue of Cell Lines and Hybridomas ([www.atcc.org](http://www.atcc.org)) or other known or commercial sources.

When eukaryotic host cells are employed, polyadenylation or transcription terminator sequences are typically incorporated into the vector. An example of a terminator sequence is the polyadenylation sequence from the bovine growth hormone gene. Sequences for accurate 25 splicing of the transcript can also be included. An example of a splicing sequence is the VP1 intron from SV40 (Sprague, et al., *J. Virol.* 45:773-781 (1983)). Additionally, gene sequences to control replication in the host cell can be incorporated into the vector, as known in the art.

#### Purification of an Antibody

An anti-TNF antibody can be recovered and purified from recombinant cell cultures by well-known methods including, but not limited to, protein A purification, ammonium sulfate or ethanol precipitation, acid extraction, anion or cation exchange chromatography, phosphocellulose chromatography, hydrophobic interaction chromatography, affinity chromatography, hydroxylapatite chromatography and lectin chromatography. High 30 performance liquid chromatography ("HPLC") can also be employed for purification. See, e.g., Colligan, *Current Protocols in Immunology*, or *Current Protocols in Protein Science*, John 35

Wiley & Sons, NY, NY, (1997-2001), e.g., Chapters 1, 4, 6, 8, 9, 10, each entirely incorporated herein by reference.

Antibodies of the present invention include naturally purified products, products of chemical synthetic procedures, and products produced by recombinant techniques from a eukaryotic host, including, for example, yeast, higher plant, insect and mammalian cells. Depending upon the host employed in a recombinant production procedure, the antibody of the present invention can be glycosylated or can be non-glycosylated, with glycosylated preferred. Such methods are described in many standard laboratory manuals, such as Sambrook, *supra*, Sections 17.37-17.42; Ausubel, *supra*, Chapters 10, 12, 13, 16, 18 and 20, Colligan, *Protein Science*, *supra*, Chapters 12-14, all entirely incorporated herein by reference.

#### Anti-TNF Antibodies

The isolated antibodies of the present invention comprise an antibody amino acid sequences disclosed herein encoded by any suitable polynucleotide, or any isolated or prepared antibody. Preferably, the human antibody or antigen-binding fragment binds human TNF and, thereby partially or substantially neutralizes at least one biological activity of the protein. An antibody, or specified portion or variant thereof, that partially or preferably substantially neutralizes at least one biological activity of at least one TNF protein or fragment can bind the protein or fragment and thereby inhibit activity mediated through the binding of TNF to the TNF receptor or through other TNF-dependent or mediated mechanisms. As used herein, the term "neutralizing antibody" refers to an antibody that can inhibit an TNF-dependent activity by about 20-120%, preferably by at least about 10, 20, 30, 40, 50, 55, 60, 65, 70, 75, 80, 85, 90, 91, 92, 93, 94, 95, 96, 97, 98, 99, 100% or more depending on the assay. The capacity of an anti-TNF antibody to inhibit an TNF-dependent activity is preferably assessed by at least one suitable TNF protein or receptor assay, as described herein and/or as known in the art. A human antibody of the invention can be of any class (IgG, IgA, IgM, IgE, IgD, etc.) or isotype and can comprise a kappa or lambda light chain. In one embodiment, the human antibody comprises an IgG heavy chain or defined fragment, for example, at least one of isotypes, IgG1, IgG2, IgG3 or IgG4. Antibodies of this type can be prepared by employing a transgenic mouse or other transgenic non-human mammal comprising at least one human light chain (e.g., IgG, IgA and IgM (e.g.,  $\gamma_1$ ,  $\gamma_2$ ,  $\gamma_3$ ,  $\gamma_4$ ) transgenes as described herein and/or as known in the art. In another embodiment, the anti-human TNF human antibody comprises an IgG1 heavy chain and a IgG1 light chain.

At least one antibody of the invention binds at least one specified epitope specific to at least one TNF protein, subunit, fragment, portion or any combination thereof. The at least one

epitope can comprise at least one antibody binding region that comprises at least one portion of said protein, which epitope is preferably comprised of at least one extracellular, soluble, hydrophilic, external or cytoplasmic portion of said protein. The at least one specified epitope can comprise any combination of at least one amino acid sequence of at least 1-3 amino acids  
5 to the entire specified portion of contiguous amino acids of the SEQ ID NO:9.

Generally, the human antibody or antigen-binding fragment of the present invention will comprise an antigen-binding region that comprises at least one human complementarity determining region (CDR1, CDR2 and CDR3) or variant of at least one heavy chain variable region and at least one human complementarity determining region (CDR1, CDR2 and CDR3)  
10 or variant of at least one light chain variable region. As a non-limiting example, the antibody or antigen-binding portion or variant can comprise at least one of the heavy chain CDR3 having the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:3, and/or a light chain CDR3 having the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:6. In a particular embodiment, the antibody or antigen-binding fragment can have an antigen-binding region that comprises at least a portion of at least one  
15 heavy chain CDR (i.e., CDR1, CDR2 and/or CDR3) having the amino acid sequence of the corresponding CDRs 1, 2 and/or 3 (e.g., SEQ ID NOS:1, 2, and/or 3). In another particular embodiment, the antibody or antigen-binding portion or variant can have an antigen-binding region that comprises at least a portion of at least one light chain CDR (i.e., CDR1, CDR2 and/or CDR3) having the amino acid sequence of the corresponding CDRs 1, 2 and/or 3 (e.g.,  
20 SEQ ID NOS: 4, 5, and/or 6). In a preferred embodiment the three heavy chain CDRs and the three light chain CDRs of the antibody or antigen-binding fragment have the amino acid sequence of the corresponding CDR of at least one of mAb TNV148, TNV14, TNV15, TNV196, TNV15, TNV118, TNV32, TNV86, as described herein. Such antibodies can be prepared by chemically joining together the various portions (e.g., CDRs, framework) of the  
25 antibody using conventional techniques, by preparing and expressing a (i.e., one or more) nucleic acid molecule that encodes the antibody using conventional techniques of recombinant DNA technology or by using any other suitable method.

The anti-TNF antibody can comprise at least one of a heavy or light chain variable region having a defined amino acid sequence. For example, in a preferred embodiment, the  
30 anti-TNF antibody comprises at least one of at least one heavy chain variable region, optionally having the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:7 and/or at least one light chain variable region, optionally having the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:8. Antibodies that bind to human TNF and that comprise a defined heavy or light chain variable region can be prepared using suitable methods, such as phage display (Katsume, Y., et al., *Int J Mol. Med.*, 1(5):863-868 (1998)) or methods that employ transgenic animals, as known in the art and/or as described herein. For example, a transgenic mouse, comprising a functionally rearranged

human immunoglobulin heavy chain transgene and a transgene comprising DNA from a human immunoglobulin light chain locus that can undergo functional rearrangement, can be immunized with human TNF or a fragment thereof to elicit the production of antibodies. If desired, the antibody producing cells can be isolated and hybridomas or other immortalized antibody-producing cells can be prepared as described herein and/or as known in the art. Alternatively, the antibody, specified portion or variant can be expressed using the encoding nucleic acid or portion thereof in a suitable host cell.

The invention also relates to antibodies, antigen-binding fragments, immunoglobulin chains and CDRs comprising amino acids in a sequence that is substantially the same as an amino acid sequence described herein. Preferably, such antibodies or antigen-binding fragments and antibodies comprising such chains or CDRs can bind human TNF with high affinity (e.g.,  $K_D$  less than or equal to about  $10^{-9}$  M). Amino acid sequences that are substantially the same as the sequences described herein include sequences comprising conservative amino acid substitutions, as well as amino acid deletions and/or insertions. A conservative amino acid substitution refers to the replacement of a first amino acid by a second amino acid that has chemical and/or physical properties (e.g., charge, structure, polarity, hydrophobicity/ hydrophilicity) that are similar to those of the first amino acid. Conservative substitutions include replacement of one amino acid by another within the following groups: lysine (K), arginine (R) and histidine (H); aspartate (D) and glutamate (E); asparagine (N), glutamine (Q), serine (S), threonine (T), tyrosine (Y), K, R, H, D and E; alanine (A), valine (V), leucine (L), isoleucine (I), proline (P), phenylalanine (F), tryptophan (W), methionine (M), cysteine (C) and glycine (G); F, W and Y; C, S and T.

#### Amino Acid Codes

The amino acids that make up anti-TNF antibodies of the present invention are often abbreviated. The amino acid designations can be indicated by designating the amino acid by its single letter code, its three letter code, name, or three nucleotide codon(s) as is well understood in the art (see Alberts, B., et al., Molecular Biology of The Cell, Third Ed., Garland Publishing, Inc., New York, 1994):

| SINGLE LETTER CODE | THREE LETTER CODE | NAME          | THREE NUCLEOTIDE CODON(S) |
|--------------------|-------------------|---------------|---------------------------|
| A                  | Ala               | Alanine       | GCA, GCC, GCG, GCU        |
| C                  | Cys               | Cysteine      | UGC, UGU                  |
| D                  | Asp               | Aspartic acid | GAC, GAU                  |
| E                  | Glu               | Glutamic acid | GAA, GAG                  |
| F                  | Phe               | Phenylalanine | UUC, UUU                  |
| G                  | Gly               | Glycine       | GGA, GGC, GGG, GGU        |
| H                  | His               | Histidine     | CAC, CAU                  |

|   |     |            |                              |
|---|-----|------------|------------------------------|
| I | Ile | Isoleucine | AUA, AUC, AUU                |
| K | Lys | Lysine     | AAA, AAG                     |
| L | Leu | Leucine    | UUA, UUG, CUA, CUC, CUG, CUU |
| M | Met | Methionine | AUG                          |
| N | Asn | Asparagine | AAC, AAU                     |
| P | Pro | Proline    | CCA, CCC, CCG, CCU           |
| Q | Gln | Glutamine  | CAA, CAG                     |
| R | Arg | Arginine   | AGA, AGG, CGA, CGC, CGG, CGU |
| S | Ser | Serine     | AGC, AGU, UCA, UCC, UCG, UCU |
| T | Thr | Threonine  | ACA, ACC, ACG, ACU           |
| V | Val | Valine     | GUA, GUC, GUG, GUU           |
| W | Trp | Tryptophan | UGG                          |
| Y | Tyr | Tyrosine   | UAC, UAU                     |

An anti-TNF antibody of the present invention can include one or more amino acid substitutions, deletions or additions, either from natural mutations or human manipulation, as specified herein.

5 Of course, the number of amino acid substitutions a skilled artisan would make depends on many factors, including those described above. Generally speaking, the number of amino acid substitutions, insertions or deletions for any given anti-TNF antibody, fragment or variant will not be more than 40, 30, 20, 19, 18, 17, 16, 15, 14, 13, 12, 11, 10, 9, 8, 7, 6, 5, 4, 3, 2, 1, such as 1-30 or any range or value therein, as specified herein.

10 Amino acids in an anti-TNF antibody of the present invention that are essential for function can be identified by methods known in the art, such as site-directed mutagenesis or alanine-scanning mutagenesis (e.g., Ausubel, *supra*, Chapters 8, 15; Cunningham and Wells, *Science* 244:1081-1085 (1989)). The latter procedure introduces single alanine mutations at every residue in the molecule. The resulting mutant molecules are then tested for biological 15 activity, such as, but not limited to at least one TNF neutralizing activity. Sites that are critical for antibody binding can also be identified by structural analysis such as crystallization, nuclear magnetic resonance or photoaffinity labeling (Smith, et al., *J. Mol. Biol.* 224:899-904 (1992) and de Vos, et al., *Science* 255:306-312 (1992)).

20 Anti-TNF antibodies of the present invention can include, but are not limited to, at least one portion, sequence or combination selected from 5 to all of the contiguous amino acids of at least one of SEQ ID NOS:1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6.

A(n) anti-TNF antibody can further optionally comprise a polypeptide of at least one of 70-100% of the contiguous amino acids of at least one of SEQ ID NOS:7, 8.

25 In one embodiment, the amino acid sequence of an immunoglobulin chain, or portion thereof (e.g., variable region, CDR) has about 70-100% identity (e.g., 70, 71, 72, 73, 74, 75,

76, 77, 78, 79, 80, 81, 82, 83, 84, 85, 86, 87, 88, 89, 90, 91, 92, 93, 94, 95, 96, 97, 98, 99, 100 or any range or value therein) to the amino acid sequence of the corresponding chain of at least one of SEQ ID NOS:7, 8. For example, the amino acid sequence of a light chain variable region can be compared with the sequence of SEQ ID NO:8, or the amino acid sequence of a heavy chain CDR3 can be compared with SEQ ID NO:7. Preferably, 70-100% amino acid identity (i.e., 90, 91, 92, 93, 94, 95, 96, 97, 98, 99, 100 or any range or value therein) is determined using a suitable computer algorithm, as known in the art.

Exemplary heavy chain and light chain variable regions sequences are provided in SEQ ID NOS: 7, 8. The antibodies of the present invention, or specified variants thereof, can comprise any number of contiguous amino acid residues from an antibody of the present invention, wherein that number is selected from the group of integers consisting of from 10-100% of the number of contiguous residues in an anti-TNF antibody. Optionally, this subsequence of contiguous amino acids is at least about 10, 20, 30, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 110, 120, 130, 140, 150, 160, 170, 180, 190, 200, 210, 220, 230, 240, 250 or more amino acids in length, or any range or value therein. Further, the number of such subsequences can be any integer selected from the group consisting of from 1 to 20, such as at least 2, 3, 4, or 5.

As those of skill will appreciate, the present invention includes at least one biologically active antibody of the present invention. Biologically active antibodies have a specific activity at least 20%, 30%, or 40%, and preferably at least 50%, 60%, or 70%, and most preferably at least 80%, 90%, or 95%-1000% of that of the native (non-synthetic), endogenous or related and known antibody. Methods of assaying and quantifying measures of enzymatic activity and substrate specificity, are well known to those of skill in the art.

In another aspect, the invention relates to human antibodies and antigen-binding fragments, as described herein, which are modified by the covalent attachment of an organic moiety. Such modification can produce an antibody or antigen-binding fragment with improved pharmacokinetic properties (e.g., increased *in vivo* serum half-life). The organic moiety can be a linear or branched hydrophilic polymeric group, fatty acid group, or fatty acid ester group. In particular embodiments, the hydrophilic polymeric group can have a molecular weight of about 800 to about 120,000 Daltons and can be a polyalkane glycol (e.g., polyethylene glycol (PEG), polypropylene glycol (PPG)), carbohydrate polymer, amino acid polymer or polyvinyl pyrrolidone, and the fatty acid or fatty acid ester group can comprise from about eight to about forty carbon atoms.

The modified antibodies and antigen-binding fragments of the invention can comprise one or more organic moieties that are covalently bonded, directly or indirectly, to the antibody. Each organic moiety that is bonded to an antibody or antigen-binding fragment of the invention can independently be a hydrophilic polymeric group, a fatty acid group or a fatty

acid ester group. As used herein, the term "fatty acid" encompasses mono-carboxylic acids and di-carboxylic acids. A "hydrophilic polymeric group," as the term is used herein, refers to an organic polymer that is more soluble in water than in octane. For example, polylysine is more soluble in water than in octane. Thus, an antibody modified by the covalent attachment 5 of polylysine is encompassed by the invention. Hydrophilic polymers suitable for modifying antibodies of the invention can be linear or branched and include, for example, polyalkane glycols (e.g., PEG, monomethoxy-polyethylene glycol (mPEG), PPG and the like), carbohydrates (e.g., dextran, cellulose, oligosaccharides, polysaccharides and the like), polymers of hydrophilic amino acids (e.g., polylysine, polyarginine, polyaspartate and the 10 like), polyalkane oxides (e.g., polyethylene oxide, polypropylene oxide and the like) and polyvinyl pyrrolidone. Preferably, the hydrophilic polymer that modifies the antibody of the invention has a molecular weight of about 800 to about 150,000 Daltons as a separate molecular entity. For example  $\text{PEG}_{5000}$  and  $\text{PEG}_{20,000}$ , wherein the subscript is the average 15 molecular weight of the polymer in Daltons, can be used. The hydrophilic polymeric group can be substituted with one to about six alkyl, fatty acid or fatty acid ester groups. Hydrophilic polymers that are substituted with a fatty acid or fatty acid ester group can be prepared by employing suitable methods. For example, a polymer comprising an amine group can be coupled to a carboxylate of the fatty acid or fatty acid ester, and an activated carboxylate (e.g., activated with N, N-carbonyl diimidazole) on a fatty acid or fatty acid ester can be coupled to a 20 hydroxyl group on a polymer.

Fatty acids and fatty acid esters suitable for modifying antibodies of the invention can be saturated or can contain one or more units of unsaturation. Fatty acids that are suitable for modifying antibodies of the invention include, for example, n-dodecanoate ( $C_{12}$ , laurate), n-tetradecanoate ( $C_{14}$ , myristate), n-octadecanoate ( $C_{18}$ , stearate), n-eicosanoate ( $C_{20}$ , arachidate) 25 , n-docosanoate ( $C_{22}$ , behenate), n-triacontanoate ( $C_{30}$ ), n-tetracontanoate ( $C_{40}$ ), *cis*- $\Delta 9$ -octadecanoate ( $C_{18}$ , oleate), all *cis*- $\Delta 5,8,11,14$ -eicosatetraenoate ( $C_{20}$ , arachidonate), octanedioic acid, tetradecanedioic acid, octadecanedioic acid, docosanedioic acid, and the like. Suitable fatty acid esters include mono-esters of dicarboxylic acids that comprise a linear or branched lower alkyl group. The lower alkyl group can comprise from one to about twelve, 30 preferably one to about six, carbon atoms.

The modified human antibodies and antigen-binding fragments can be prepared using suitable methods, such as by reaction with one or more modifying agents. A "modifying agent" as the term is used herein, refers to a suitable organic group (e.g., hydrophilic polymer, a fatty acid, a fatty acid ester) that comprises an activating group. An "activating group" is a 35 chemical moiety or functional group that can, under appropriate conditions, react with a second chemical group thereby forming a covalent bond between the modifying agent and the

second chemical group. For example, amine-reactive activating groups include electrophilic groups such as tosylate, mesylate, halo (chloro, bromo, fluoro, iodo), N-hydroxysuccinimidyl esters (NHS), and the like. Activating groups that can react with thiols include, for example, maleimide, iodoacetyl, acryloyl, pyridyl disulfides, 5-thiol-2-nitrobenzoic acid thiol (TNB-thiol), and the like. An aldehyde functional group can be coupled to amine- or hydrazide-containing molecules, and an azide group can react with a trivalent phosphorous group to form phosphoramidate or phosphorimide linkages. Suitable methods to introduce activating groups into molecules are known in the art (see for example, Hermanson, G. T., *Bioconjugate Techniques*. Academic Press: San Diego, CA (1996)). An activating group can be bonded directly to the organic group (e.g., hydrophilic polymer, fatty acid, fatty acid ester), or through a linker moiety, for example a divalent C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> group wherein one or more carbon atoms can be replaced by a heteroatom such as oxygen, nitrogen or sulfur. Suitable linker moieties include, for example, tetraethylene glycol, -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub>-, -NH-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>6</sub>-NH-, -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>-NH- and -CH<sub>2</sub>-O-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O-CH-NH-. Modifying agents that comprise a linker moiety can be produced, for example, by reacting a mono-Boc-alkyldiamine (e.g., mono-Boc-ethylenediamine, mono-Boc-diaminohexane) with a fatty acid in the presence of 1-ethyl-3-(3-dimethylaminopropyl) carbodiimide (EDC) to form an amide bond between the free amine and the fatty acid carboxylate. The Boc protecting group can be removed from the product by treatment with trifluoroacetic acid (TFA) to expose a primary amine that can be coupled to another carboxylate as described, or can be reacted with maleic anhydride and the resulting product cyclized to produce an activated maleimido derivative of the fatty acid. (See, for example, Thompson, *et al.*, WO 92/16221 the entire teachings of which are incorporated herein by reference.)

The modified antibodies of the invention can be produced by reacting a human antibody or antigen-binding fragment with a modifying agent. For example, the organic moieties can be bonded to the antibody in a non-site specific manner by employing an amine-reactive modifying agent, for example, an NHS ester of PEG. Modified human antibodies or antigen-binding fragments can also be prepared by reducing disulfide bonds (e.g., intra-chain disulfide bonds) of an antibody or antigen-binding fragment. The reduced antibody or antigen-binding fragment can then be reacted with a thiol-reactive modifying agent to produce the modified antibody of the invention. Modified human antibodies and antigen-binding fragments comprising an organic moiety that is bonded to specific sites of an antibody of the present invention can be prepared using suitable methods, such as reverse proteolysis (Fisch *et al.*, *Bioconjugate Chem.*, 3:147-153 (1992); Werlen *et al.*, *Bioconjugate Chem.*, 5:411-417 (1994); Kumaran *et al.*, *Protein Sci.* 6(10):2233-2241 (1997); Itoh *et al.*, *Bioorg. Chem.*, 24(1): 59-68 (1996); Capellas *et al.*, *Biotechnol. Bioeng.*, 56(4):456-463 (1997)), and the methods

described in Hermanson, G. T., *Bioconjugate Techniques*, Academic Press: San Diego, CA (1996).

#### ANTI-IDIOTYPE ANTIBODIES TO ANTI-TNF ANTIBODY COMPOSITIONS

In addition to monoclonal or chimeric anti-TNF antibodies, the present invention is also directed to an anti-idiotypic (anti-Id) antibody specific for such antibodies of the invention. An anti-Id antibody is an antibody which recognizes unique determinants generally associated with the antigen-binding region of another antibody. The anti-Id can be prepared by immunizing an animal of the same species and genetic type (e.g. mouse strain) as the source of the Id antibody with the antibody or a CDR containing region thereof. The immunized animal will recognize and respond to the idotypic determinants of the immunizing antibody and produce an anti-Id antibody. The anti-Id antibody may also be used as an "immunogen" to induce an immune response in yet another animal, producing a so-called anti-anti-Id antibody.

#### ANTI-TNF ANTIBODY COMPOSITIONS

The present invention also provides at least one anti-TNF antibody composition comprising at least one, at least two, at least three, at least four, at least five, at least six or more anti-TNF antibodies thereof, as described herein and/or as known in the art that are provided in a non-naturally occurring composition, mixture or form. Such compositions comprise non-naturally occurring compositions comprising at least one or two full length, C- and/or N-terminally deleted variants, domains, fragments, or specified variants, of the anti-TNF antibody amino acid sequence selected from the group consisting of 70-100% of the contiguous amino acids of SEQ ID NOS:1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, or specified fragments, domains or variants thereof. Preferred anti-TNF antibody compositions include at least one or two full length, fragments, domains or variants as at least one CDR or LBR containing portions of the anti-TNF antibody sequence of 70-100% of SEQ ID NOS:1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, or specified fragments, domains or variants thereof. Further preferred compositions comprise 40-99% of at least one of 70-100% of SEQ ID NOS:1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, or specified fragments, domains or variants thereof. Such composition percentages are by weight, volume, concentration, molarity, or molality as liquid or dry solutions, mixtures, suspension, emulsions or colloids, as known in the art or as described herein.

Anti-TNF antibody compositions of the present invention can further comprise at least one of any suitable and effective amount of a composition or pharmaceutical composition comprising at least one anti-TNF antibody to a cell, tissue, organ, animal or patient in need of such modulation, treatment or therapy, optionally further comprising at least one selected from at least one TNF antagonist (e.g., but not limited to a TNF antibody or fragment, a soluble TNF receptor or fragment, fusion proteins thereof, or a small molecule TNF antagonist), an

antirheumatic (e.g., methotrexate, auranofin, aurothioglucose, azathioprine, etanercept, gold sodium thiomalate, hydroxychloroquine sulfate, leflunomide, sulfasalzine), a muscle relaxant, a narcotic, a non-steroid anti-inflammatory drug (NSAID), an analgesic, an anesthetic, a sedative, a local anesthetic, a neuromuscular blocker, an antimicrobial (e.g., aminoglycoside, an 5 antifungal, an antiparasitic, an antiviral, a carbapenem, cephalosporin, a flurorquinolone, a macrolide, a penicillin, a sulfonamide, a tetracycline, another antimicrobial), an antipsoriatic, a corticosteroid, an anabolic steroid, a diabetes related agent, a mineral, a nutritional, a thyroid agent, a vitamin, a calcium related hormone, an antidiarrheal, an antitussive, an antiemetic, an antiulcer, a laxative, an anticoagulant, an erythropoietin (e.g., epoetin alpha), a filgrastim (e.g., 10 G-CSF, Neupogen), a sargramostim (GM-CSF, Leukine), an immunization, an immunoglobulin, an immunosuppressive (e.g., basiliximab, cyclosporine, daclizumab), a growth hormone, a hormone replacement drug, an estrogen receptor modulator, a mydriatic, a cycloplegic, an alkylating agent, an antimetabolite, a mitotic inhibitor, a radiopharmaceutical, an antidepressant, antimanic agent, an antipsychotic, an anxiolytic, a hypnotic, a 15 sympathomimetic, a stimulant, donepezil, tacrine, an asthma medication, a beta agonist, an inhaled steroid, a leukotriene inhibitor, a methylxanthine, a cromolyn, an epinephrine or analog, dornase alpha (Pulmozyme), a cytokine or a cytokine antagonist. Non-limiting examples of such cytokines include, but are not limited to, any of IL-1 to IL-23. Suitable dosages are well known in the art. See, e.g., Wells et al., eds., *Pharmacotherapy Handbook*, 2<sup>nd</sup> Edition, Appleton and Lange, Stamford, CT (2000); *PDR Pharmacopoeia, Tarascon Pocket Pharmacopoeia 2000*, Deluxe Edition, Tarascon Publishing, Loma Linda, CA (2000), each of which references are entirely incorporated herein by reference.

Such anti-cancer or anti-infectives can also include toxin molecules that are associated, bound, co-formulated or co-administered with at least one antibody of the present invention. The toxin can optionally act to selectively kill the pathologic cell or tissue. The pathologic cell can be a cancer or other cell. Such toxins can be, but are not limited to,

5      purified or recombinant toxin or toxin fragment comprising at least one functional cytotoxic domain of toxin, e.g., selected from at least one of ricin, diphtheria toxin, a venom toxin, or a bacterial toxin. The term toxin also includes both endotoxins and exotoxins produced by any naturally occurring, mutant or recombinant bacteria or viruses which may cause any pathological condition in humans and other mammals, including toxin shock, which can result

10     in death. Such toxins may include, but are not limited to, enterotoxigenic *E. coli* heat-labile enterotoxin (LT), heat-stable enterotoxin (ST), *Shigella* cytotoxin, *Aeromonas* enterotoxins, toxic shock syndrome toxin-1 (TSST-1), Staphylococcal enterotoxin A (SEA), B (SEB), or C (SEC), Streptococcal enterotoxins and the like. Such bacteria include, but are not limited to, strains of a species of enterotoxigenic *E. coli* (ETEC), enterohemorrhagic *E. coli* (e.g., strains

15     of serotype 0157:H7), *Staphylococcus* species (e.g., *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Staphylococcus pyogenes*), *Shigella* species (e.g., *Shigella dysenteriae*, *Shigella flexneri*, *Shigella boydii*, and *Shigella sonnei*), *Salmonella* species (e.g., *Salmonella typhi*, *Salmonella cholera-suis*, *Salmonella enteritidis*), *Clostridium* species (e.g., *Clostridium perfringens*, *Clostridium difficile*, *Clostridium botulinum*), *Camphlobacter* species (e.g., *Camphlobacter jejuni*,  
20     *Camphlobacter fetus*), *Helicobacter* species, (e.g., *Helicobacter pylori*), *Aeromonas* species (e.g., *Aeromonas sobria*, *Aeromonas hydrophila*, *Aeromonas caviae*), *Plesiomonas shigelloides*, *Yersina enterocolitica*, *Vibrios* species (e.g., *Vibrios cholerae*, *Vibrios parahemolyticus*), *Klebsiella* species, *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, and *Streptococci*. See, e.g., Stein, ed., INTERNAL MEDICINE, 3rd ed., pp 1-13, Little, Brown and Co., Boston, (1990); Evans et al.,  
25     eds., Bacterial Infections of Humans: Epidemiology and Control, 2d. Ed., pp 239-254, Plenum Medical Book Co., New York (1991); Mandell et al, Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases, 3d. Ed., Churchill Livingstone, New York (1990); Berkow et al, eds., *The Merck Manual*, 16th edition, Merck and Co., Rahway, N.J., 1992; Wood et al, FEMS Microbiology Immunology, 76:121-134 (1991); Marrack et al, Science, 248:705-711 (1990), the contents of  
30     which references are incorporated entirely herein by reference.

Anti-TNF antibody compounds, compositions or combinations of the present invention can further comprise at least one of any suitable auxiliary, such as, but not limited to, diluent, binder, stabilizer, buffers, salts, lipophilic solvents, preservative, adjuvant or the like. Pharmaceutically acceptable auxiliaries are preferred. Non-limiting examples of, and methods 5 of preparing such sterile solutions are well known in the art, such as, but limited to, Gennaro, Ed., *Remington's Pharmaceutical Sciences*, 18<sup>th</sup> Edition, Mack Publishing Co. (Easton, PA) 1990. Pharmaceutically acceptable carriers can be routinely selected that are suitable for the mode of administration, solubility and/or stability of the anti-TNF antibody, fragment or variant composition as well known in the art or as described herein.

10 Pharmaceutical excipients and additives useful in the present composition include but are not limited to proteins, peptides, amino acids, lipids, and carbohydrates (e.g., sugars, including monosaccharides, di-, tri-, tetra-, and oligosaccharides; derivatized sugars such as alditols, aldonic acids, esterified sugars and the like; and polysaccharides or sugar polymers), which can be present singly or in combination, comprising alone or in combination 1-99.99% 15 by weight or volume. Exemplary protein excipients include serum albumin such as human serum albumin (HSA), recombinant human albumin (rHA), gelatin, casein, and the like. Representative amino acid/antibody components, which can also function in a buffering capacity, include alanine, glycine, arginine, betaine, histidine, glutamic acid, aspartic acid, cysteine, lysine, leucine, isoleucine, valine, methionine, phenylalanine, aspartame, and the 20 like. One preferred amino acid is glycine.

Carbohydrate excipients suitable for use in the invention include, for example, monosaccharides such as fructose, maltose, galactose, glucose, D-mannose, sorbose, and the like; disaccharides, such as lactose, sucrose, trehalose, cellobiose, and the like; polysaccharides, such as raffinose, melezitose, maltodextrins, dextrans, starches, and the like; 25 and alditols, such as mannitol, xylitol, maltitol, lactitol, xylitol sorbitol (glucitol), myoinositol and the like. Preferred carbohydrate excipients for use in the present invention are mannitol, trehalose, and raffinose.

Anti-TNF antibody compositions can also include a buffer or a pH adjusting agent; typically, the buffer is a salt prepared from an organic acid or base. Representative buffers 30 include organic acid salts such as salts of citric acid, ascorbic acid, gluconic acid, carbonic acid, tartaric acid, succinic acid, acetic acid, or phthalic acid; Tris, tromethamine hydrochloride, or phosphate buffers. Preferred buffers for use in the present compositions are organic acid salts such as citrate.

Additionally, anti-TNF antibody compositions of the invention can include polymeric 35 excipients/additives such as polyvinylpyrrolidones, ficolls (a polymeric sugar), dextrates (e.g.,

cyclodextrins, such as 2-hydroxypropyl- $\beta$ -cyclodextrin), polyethylene glycols, flavoring agents, antimicrobial agents, sweeteners, antioxidants, antistatic agents, surfactants (e.g., polysorbates such as "TWEEN 20" and "TWEEN 80"), lipids (e.g., phospholipids, fatty acids), steroids (e.g., cholesterol), and chelating agents (e.g., EDTA).

- 5        These and additional known pharmaceutical excipients and/or additives suitable for use in the anti-TNF antibody, portion or variant compositions according to the invention are known in the art, e.g., as listed in "Remington: The Science & Practice of Pharmacy", 19<sup>th</sup> ed., Williams & Williams, (1995), and in the "Physician's Desk Reference", 52<sup>nd</sup> ed., Medical Economics, Montvale, NJ (1998), the disclosures of which are entirely incorporated herein by reference. Preferred carrier or excipient materials are carbohydrates (e.g., saccharides and alditols) and buffers (e.g., citrate) or polymeric agents.

#### Formulations

- As noted above, the invention provides for stable formulations, which is preferably a phosphate buffer with saline or a chosen salt, as well as preserved solutions and 15 formulations containing a preservative as well as multi-use preserved formulations suitable for pharmaceutical or veterinary use, comprising at least one anti-TNF antibody in a pharmaceutically acceptable formulation. Preserved formulations contain at least one known preservative or optionally selected from the group consisting of at least one phenol, m-cresol, p-cresol, o-cresol, chlorocresol, benzyl alcohol, phenylmercuric nitrite, phenoxyethanol, 20 formaldehyde, chlorobutanol, magnesium chloride (e.g., hexahydrate), alkylparaben (methyl, ethyl, propyl, butyl and the like), benzalkonium chloride, benzethonium chloride, sodium dehydroacetate and thimerosal, or mixtures thereof in an aqueous diluent. Any suitable concentration or mixture can be used as known in the art, such as 0.001-5%, or any range or value therein, such as, but not limited to 0.001, 0.003, 0.005, 0.009, 0.01, 0.02, 0.03, 0.05, 25 0.09, 0.1, 0.2, 0.3, 0.4, 0.5, 0.6, 0.7, 0.8, 0.9, 1.0, 1.1, 1.2, 1.3, 1.4, 1.5, 1.6, 1.7, 1.8, 1.9, 2.0, 2.1, 2.2, 2.3, 2.4, 2.5, 2.6, 2.7, 2.8, 2.9, 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.3, 3.4, 3.5, 3.6, 3.7, 3.8, 3.9, 4.0, 4.3, 4.5, 4.6, 4.7, 4.8, 4.9, or any range or value therein. Non-limiting examples include, no preservative, 0.1-2% m-cresol (e.g., 0.2, 0.3, 0.4, 0.5, 0.9, 1.0%), 0.1-3% benzyl alcohol (e.g., 0.5, 0.9, 1.1, 1.5, 1.9, 2.0, 2.5%), 0.001-0.5% thimerosal (e.g., 0.005, 0.01), 0.001-2.0% 30 phenol (e.g., 0.05, 0.25, 0.28, 0.5, 0.9, 1.0%), 0.0005-1.0% alkylparaben(s) (e.g., 0.00075, 0.0009, 0.001, 0.002, 0.005, 0.0075, 0.009, 0.01, 0.02, 0.05, 0.075, 0.09, 0.1, 0.2, 0.3, 0.5, 0.75, 0.9, 1.0%), and the like.

- As noted above, the invention provides an article of manufacture, comprising packaging material and at least one vial comprising a solution of at least one anti-TNF 35 antibody with the prescribed buffers and/or preservatives, optionally in an aqueous diluent, wherein said packaging material comprises a label that indicates that such solution can be held

over a period of 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 9, 12, 18, 20, 24, 30, 36, 40, 48, 54, 60, 66, 72 hours or greater. The invention further comprises an article of manufacture, comprising packaging material, a first vial comprising lyophilized at least one anti-TNF antibody, and a second vial comprising an aqueous diluent of prescribed buffer or preservative, wherein said packaging material

- 5 comprises a label that instructs a patient to reconstitute the at least one anti-TNF antibody in the aqueous diluent to form a solution that can be held over a period of twenty-four hours or greater.

The at least one anti-TNF antibody used in accordance with the present invention can be produced by recombinant means, including from mammalian cell or transgenic 10 preparations, or can be purified from other biological sources, as described herein or as known in the art.

The range of at least one anti-TNF antibody in the product of the present invention includes amounts yielding upon reconstitution, if in a wet/dry system, concentrations from about 1.0 µg/ml to about 1000 mg/ml, although lower and higher concentrations are operable 15 and are dependent on the intended delivery vehicle, e.g., solution formulations will differ from transdermal patch, pulmonary, transmucosal, or osmotic or micro pump methods.

Preferably, the aqueous diluent optionally further comprises a pharmaceutically acceptable preservative. Preferred preservatives include those selected from the group consisting of phenol, m-cresol, p-cresol, o-cresol, chlorocresol, benzyl alcohol, alkylparaben 20 (methyl, ethyl, propyl, butyl and the like), benzalkonium chloride, benzethonium chloride, sodium dehydroacetate and thimerosal, or mixtures thereof. The concentration of preservative used in the formulation is a concentration sufficient to yield an anti-microbial effect. Such concentrations are dependent on the preservative selected and are readily determined by the skilled artisan.

25 Other excipients, e.g. isotonicity agents, buffers, antioxidants, preservative enhancers, can be optionally and preferably added to the diluent. An isotonicity agent, such as glycerin, is commonly used at known concentrations. A physiologically tolerated buffer is preferably added to provide improved pH control. The formulations can cover a wide range of pHs, such as from about pH 4 to about pH 10, and preferred ranges from about pH 5 to about pH 9, and a 30 most preferred range of about 6.0 to about 8.0. Preferably the formulations of the present invention have pH between about 6.8 and about 7.8. Preferred buffers include phosphate buffers, most preferably sodium phosphate, particularly phosphate buffered saline (PBS).

Other additives, such as a pharmaceutically acceptable solubilizers like Tween 20 (polyoxyethylene (20) sorbitan monolaurate), Tween 40 (polyoxyethylene (20) sorbitan 35 monopalmitate), Tween 80 (polyoxyethylene (20) sorbitan monooleate), Pluronic F68 (polyoxyethylene polyoxypropylene block copolymers), and PEG (polyethylene glycol) or

non-ionic surfactants such as polysorbate 20 or 80 or poloxamer 184 or 188, Pluronic® polyols, other block co-polymers, and chelators such as EDTA and EGTA can optionally be added to the formulations or compositions to reduce aggregation. These additives are particularly useful if a pump or plastic container is used to administer the formulation. The presence of 5 pharmaceutically acceptable surfactant mitigates the propensity for the protein to aggregate.

The formulations of the present invention can be prepared by a process which comprises mixing at least one anti-TNF antibody and a preservative selected from the group consisting of phenol, m-cresol, p-cresol, o-cresol, chlorocresol, benzyl alcohol, alkylparaben, (methyl, ethyl, propyl, butyl and the like), benzalkonium chloride, benzethonium chloride, 10 sodium dehydroacetate and thimerosal or mixtures thereof in an aqueous diluent. Mixing the at least one anti-TNF antibody and preservative in an aqueous diluent is carried out using conventional dissolution and mixing procedures. To prepare a suitable formulation, for example, a measured amount of at least one anti-TNF antibody in buffered solution is combined with the desired preservative in a buffered solution in quantities sufficient to provide 15 the protein and preservative at the desired concentrations. Variations of this process would be recognized by one of ordinary skill in the art. For example, the order the components are added, whether additional additives are used, the temperature and pH at which the formulation is prepared, are all factors that can be optimized for the concentration and means of administration used.

20 The claimed formulations can be provided to patients as clear solutions or as dual vials comprising a vial of lyophilized at least one anti-TNF antibody that is reconstituted with a second vial containing water, a preservative and/or excipients, preferably a phosphate buffer and/or saline and a chosen salt, in an aqueous diluent. Either a single solution vial or dual vial requiring reconstitution can be reused multiple times and can suffice for a single or 25 multiple cycles of patient treatment and thus can provide a more convenient treatment regimen than currently available.

The present claimed articles of manufacture are useful for administration over a period of immediately to twenty-four hours or greater. Accordingly, the presently claimed articles of manufacture offer significant advantages to the patient. Formulations of the 30 invention can optionally be safely stored at temperatures of from about 2 to about 40°C and retain the biologically activity of the protein for extended periods of time, thus, allowing a package label indicating that the solution can be held and/or used over a period of 6, 12, 18, 24, 36, 48, 72, or 96 hours or greater. If preserved diluent is used, such label can include use up to 1-12 months, one-half, one and a half, and/or two years.

35 The solutions of at least one anti-TNF antibody in the invention can be prepared by a process that comprises mixing at least one antibody in an aqueous diluent.

Mixing is carried out using conventional dissolution and mixing procedures. To prepare a suitable diluent, for example, a measured amount of at least one antibody in water or buffer is combined in quantities sufficient to provide the protein and optionally a preservative or buffer at the desired concentrations. Variations of this process would be recognized by one of ordinary skill in the art. For example, the order the components are added, whether additional additives are used, the temperature and pH at which the formulation is prepared, are all factors that can be optimized for the concentration and means of administration used.

The claimed products can be provided to patients as clear solutions or as dual vials comprising a vial of lyophilized at least one anti-TNF antibody that is reconstituted with a second vial containing the aqueous diluent. Either a single solution vial or dual vial requiring reconstitution can be reused multiple times and can suffice for a single or multiple cycles of patient treatment and thus provides a more convenient treatment regimen than currently available.

The claimed products can be provided indirectly to patients by providing to pharmacies, clinics, or other such institutions and facilities, clear solutions or dual vials comprising a vial of lyophilized at least one anti-TNF antibody that is reconstituted with a second vial containing the aqueous diluent. The clear solution in this case can be up to one liter or even larger in size, providing a large reservoir from which smaller portions of the at least one antibody solution can be retrieved one or multiple times for transfer into smaller vials and provided by the pharmacy or clinic to their customers and/or patients..

Recognized devices comprising these single vial systems include those pen-injector devices for delivery of a solution such as BD Pens, BD Autojector®, Humaject®, NovoPen®, B-D®Pen, AutoPen®, and OptiPen®, GenotropinPen®, Genotronorm Pen®, Humatro Pen®, Reco-Pen®, Roferon Pen®, Biojector®, iject®, J-tip Needle-Free Injector®, Inraject®, Medi-Ject®, e.g., as made or developed by Becton Dickensen (Franklin Lakes, NJ, [www.bectondickenson.com](http://www.bectondickenson.com)), Disetronic (Burgdorf, Switzerland, [www.disetronic.com](http://www.disetronic.com); Bioject, Portland, Oregon ([www.bioject.com](http://www.bioject.com)); National Medical Products , Weston Medical (Peterborough, UK, [www.weston-medical.com](http://www.weston-medical.com)), Medi-Ject Corp (Minneapolis, MN, [www.mediject.com](http://www.mediject.com)). Recognized devices comprising a dual vial system include those pen-injector systems for reconstituting a lyophilized drug in a cartridge for delivery of the reconstituted solution such as the HumatroPen®.

The products presently claimed include packaging material. The packaging material provides, in addition to the information required by the regulatory agencies, the conditions under which the product can be used. The packaging material of the present invention provides instructions to the patient to reconstitute the at least one anti-TNF antibody in the aqueous diluent to form a solution and to use the solution over a period of 2-24 hours or

greater for the two vial, wet/dry, product. For the single vial, solution product, the label indicates that such solution can be used over a period of 2-24 hours or greater. The presently claimed products are useful for human pharmaceutical product use.

The formulations of the present invention can be prepared by a process that  
5 comprises mixing at least one anti-TNF antibody and a selected buffer, preferably a phosphate buffer containing saline or a chosen salt. Mixing the at least one antibody and buffer in an aqueous diluent is carried out using conventional dissolution and mixing procedures. To prepare a suitable formulation, for example, a measured amount of at least one antibody in water or buffer is combined with the desired buffering agent in water in quantities sufficient to  
10 provide the protein and buffer at the desired concentrations. Variations of this process would be recognized by one of ordinary skill in the art. For example, the order the components are added, whether additional additives are used, the temperature and pH at which the formulation is prepared, are all factors that can be optimized for the concentration and means of administration used.

15 The claimed stable or preserved formulations can be provided to patients as clear solutions or as dual vials comprising a vial of lyophilized at least one anti-TNF antibody that is reconstituted with a second vial containing a preservative or buffer and excipients in an aqueous diluent. Either a single solution vial or dual vial requiring reconstitution can be reused multiple times and can suffice for a single or multiple cycles of patient treatment and  
20 thus provides a more convenient treatment regimen than currently available.

At least one anti-TNF antibody in either the stable or preserved formulations or  
solutions described herein, can be administered to a patient in accordance with the present invention via a variety of delivery methods including SC or IM injection; transdermal, pulmonary, transmucosal, implant, osmotic pump, cartridge, micro pump, or other means  
25 appreciated by the skilled artisan, as well-known in the art.

#### Therapeutic Applications

The present invention also provides a method for modulating or treating at least one TNF related disease, in a cell, tissue, organ, animal, or patient, as known in the art or as described herein, using at least one dual integrin antibody of the present invention.

30 The present invention also provides a method for modulating or treating at least one TNF related disease, in a cell, tissue, organ, animal, or patient including, but not limited to, at least one of obesity, an immune related disease, a cardiovascular disease, an infectious disease, a malignant disease or a neurologic disease.

35 The present invention also provides a method for modulating or treating at least one immune related disease, in a cell, tissue, organ, animal, or patient including, but not limited to, at least one of rheumatoid arthritis, juvenile rheumatoid arthritis, systemic onset juvenile

rheumatoid arthritis, psoriatic arthritis, ankylosing spondilitis, gastric ulcer, seronegative arthropathies, osteoarthritis, inflammatory bowel disease, ulcerative colitis, systemic lupus erythematosus, antiphospholipid syndrome, iridocyclitis/uveitis/optic neuritis, idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis, systemic vasculitis/wegener's granulomatosis, sarcoidosis,

5       orchitis/vasectomy reversal procedures, allergic/atopic diseases, asthma, allergic rhinitis, eczema, allergic contact dermatitis, allergic conjunctivitis, hypersensitivity pneumonitis, transplants, organ transplant rejection, graft-versus-host disease, systemic inflammatory response syndrome, sepsis syndrome, gram positive sepsis, gram negative sepsis, culture negative sepsis, fungal sepsis, neutropenic fever, urosepsis, meningococcemia,

10      trauma/hemorrhage, burns, ionizing radiation exposure, acute pancreatitis, adult respiratory distress syndrome, rheumatoid arthritis, alcohol-induced hepatitis, chronic inflammatory pathologies, sarcoidosis, Crohn's pathology, sickle cell anemia, diabetes, nephrosis, atopic diseases, hypersensitivity reactions, allergic rhinitis, hay fever, perennial rhinitis, conjunctivitis, endometriosis, asthma, urticaria, systemic anaphylaxis, dermatitis, pernicious anemia,

15      hemolytic disease, thrombocytopenia, graft rejection of any organ or tissue, kidney transplant rejection, heart transplant rejection, liver transplant rejection, pancreas transplant rejection, lung transplant rejection, bone marrow transplant (BMT) rejection, skin allograft rejection, cartilage transplant rejection, bone graft rejection, small bowel transplant rejection, fetal thymus implant rejection, parathyroid transplant rejection, xenograft rejection of any

20      organ or tissue, allograft rejection, anti-receptor hypersensitivity reactions, Graves disease, Raynaud's disease, type B insulin-resistant diabetes, asthma, myasthenia gravis, antibody-mediated cytotoxicity, type III hypersensitivity reactions, systemic lupus erythematosus, POEMS syndrome (polyneuropathy, organomegaly, endocrinopathy, monoclonal gammopathy, and skin changes syndrome), polyneuropathy, organomegaly, endocrinopathy,

25      monoclonal gammopathy, skin changes syndrome, antiphospholipid syndrome, pemphigus, scleroderma, mixed connective tissue disease, idiopathic Addison's disease, diabetes mellitus, chronic active hepatitis, primary biliary cirrhosis, vitiligo, vasculitis, post-MI cardiotomy syndrome, type IV hypersensitivity, contact dermatitis, hypersensitivity pneumonitis, allograft rejection, granulomas due to intracellular organisms, drug sensitivity, metabolic/idiopathic,

30      Wilson's disease, hemachromatosis, alpha-1-antitrypsin deficiency, diabetic retinopathy, hashimoto's thyroiditis, osteoporosis, hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis evaluation, primary biliary cirrhosis, thyroiditis, encephalomyelitis, cachexia, cystic fibrosis, neonatal chronic lung disease, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), familial hematophagocytic lymphohistiocytosis, dermatologic conditions, psoriasis, alopecia, nephrotic syndrome,

35      nephritis, glomerular nephritis, acute renal failure, hemodialysis, uremia, toxicity, preeclampsia, okt3 therapy, anti-cd3 therapy, cytokine therapy, chemotherapy, radiation

therapy (e.g., including but not limited to anemia, cachexia, and the like), chronic salicylate intoxication, and the like. See, e.g., the Merck Manual, 12th-17th Editions, Merck & Company, Rahway, NJ (1972, 1977, 1982, 1987, 1992, 1999), Pharmacotherapy Handbook, Wells et al., eds., Second Edition, Appleton and Lange, Stamford, Conn. (1998, 2000), each 5 entirely incorporated by reference.

The present invention also provides a method for modulating or treating at least one cardiovascular disease in a cell, tissue, organ, animal, or patient, including, but not limited to, at least one of cardiac stun syndrome, myocardial infarction, congestive heart failure, stroke, ischemic stroke, hemorrhage, arteriosclerosis, atherosclerosis, restenosis, diabetic 10 atherosclerotic disease, hypertension, arterial hypertension, renovascular hypertension, syncope, shock, syphilis of the cardiovascular system, heart failure, cor pulmonale, primary pulmonary hypertension, cardiac arrhythmias, atrial ectopic beats, atrial flutter, atrial fibrillation (sustained or paroxysmal), post perfusion syndrome, cardiopulmonary bypass inflammation response, chaotic or multifocal atrial tachycardia, regular narrow QRS 15 tachycardia, specific arrhythmias, ventricular fibrillation, His bundle arrhythmias, atrioventricular block, bundle branch block, myocardial ischemic disorders, coronary artery disease, angina pectoris, myocardial infarction, cardiomyopathy, dilated congestive cardiomyopathy, restrictive cardiomyopathy, valvular heart diseases, endocarditis, pericardial disease, cardiac tumors, aortic and peripheral aneurysms, aortic dissection, inflammation of 20 the aorta, occlusion of the abdominal aorta and its branches, peripheral vascular disorders, occlusive arterial disorders, peripheral atherosclerotic disease, thromboangiitis obliterans, functional peripheral arterial disorders, Raynaud's phenomenon and disease, acrocyanosis, erythromelalgia, venous diseases, venous thrombosis, varicose veins, arteriovenous fistula, lymphedema, lipedema, unstable angina, reperfusion injury, post pump syndrome, ischemia-reperfusion injury, and the like. Such a method can optionally comprise administering an 25 effective amount of a composition or pharmaceutical composition comprising at least one anti-TNF antibody to a cell, tissue, organ, animal or patient in need of such modulation, treatment or therapy.

The present invention also provides a method for modulating or treating at least one infectious disease in a cell, tissue, organ, animal or patient, including, but not limited to, at 30 least one of: acute or chronic bacterial infection, acute and chronic parasitic or infectious processes, including bacterial, viral and fungal infections, HIV infection/HIV neuropathy, meningitis, hepatitis (A,B or C, or the like), septic arthritis, peritonitis, pneumonia, epiglottitis, e. coli 0157:h7, hemolytic uremic syndrome/thrombolytic thrombocytopenic purpura, malaria, 35 dengue hemorrhagic fever, leishmaniasis, leprosy, toxic shock syndrome, streptococcal myositis, gas gangrene, mycobacterium tuberculosis, mycobacterium avium intracellulare,

pneumocystis carinii pneumonia, pelvic inflammatory disease, orchitis/epididymitis, legionella, lyme disease, influenza a, epstein-barr virus, vital-associated hemaphagocytic syndrome, vital encephalitis/aseptic meningitis, and the like;

- The present invention also provides a method for modulating or treating at least one malignant disease in a cell, tissue, organ, animal or patient, including, but not limited to, at least one of: leukemia, acute leukemia, acute lymphoblastic leukemia (ALL), B-cell, T-cell or FAB ALL, acute myeloid leukemia (AML), chronic myelocytic leukemia (CML), chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL), hairy cell leukemia, myelodysplastic syndrome (MDS), a lymphoma, Hodgkin's disease, a malignant lymphoma, non-hodgkin's lymphoma, Burkitt's lymphoma, multiple myeloma, Kaposi's sarcoma, colorectal carcinoma, pancreatic carcinoma, nasopharyngeal carcinoma, malignant histiocytosis, paraneoplastic syndrome/hypercalcemia of malignancy, solid tumors, adenocarcinomas, sarcomas, malignant melanoma, hemangioma, metastatic disease, cancer related bone resorption, cancer related bone pain, and the like.
- The present invention also provides a method for modulating or treating at least one neurologic disease in a cell, tissue, organ, animal or patient, including, but not limited to, at least one of: neurodegenerative diseases, multiple sclerosis, migraine headache, AIDS dementia complex, demyelinating diseases, such as multiple sclerosis and acute transverse myelitis; extrapyramidal and cerebellar disorders' such as lesions of the corticospinal system; disorders of the basal ganglia or cerebellar disorders; hyperkinetic movement disorders such as Huntington's Chorea and senile chorea; drug-induced movement disorders, such as those induced by drugs which block CNS dopamine receptors; hypokinetic movement disorders, such as Parkinson's disease; Progressive supranucleo Palsy; structural lesions of the cerebellum; spinocerebellar degenerations, such as spinal ataxia, Friedreich's ataxia, cerebellar cortical degenerations, multiple systems degenerations (Mencel, Dejerine-Thomas, Shi-Drager, and Machado-Joseph); systemic disorders (Refsum's disease, abetalipoproteinemia, ataxia, telangiectasia, and mitochondrial multi-system disorder); demyelinating core disorders, such as multiple sclerosis, acute transverse myelitis; and disorders of the motor unit' such as neurogenic muscular atrophies (anterior horn cell degeneration, such as amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, infantile spinal muscular atrophy and juvenile spinal muscular atrophy); Alzheimer's disease; Down's Syndrome in middle age; Diffuse Lewy body disease; Senile Dementia of Lewy body type; Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome; chronic alcoholism; Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease; Subacute sclerosing panencephalitis, Hallervorden-Spatz disease; and Dementia pugilistica, and the like. Such a method can optionally comprise administering an effective amount of a composition or pharmaceutical composition comprising at least one TNF antibody or specified portion or variant to a cell, tissue, organ, animal or patient in need of such

modulation, treatment or therapy. See, e.g., the Merck Manual, 16<sup>th</sup> Edition, Merck & Company, Rahway, NJ (1992)

Any method of the present invention can comprise administering an effective amount of a composition or pharmaceutical composition comprising at least one anti-TNF antibody to a cell, tissue, organ, animal or patient in need of such modulation, treatment or therapy. Such a method can optionally further comprise co-administration or combination therapy for treating such immune diseases, wherein the administering of said at least one anti-TNF antibody, specified portion or variant thereof, further comprises administering, before concurrently, and/or after, at least one selected from at least one TNF antagonist (e.g., but not limited to a TNF antibody or fragment, a soluble TNF receptor or fragment, fusion proteins thereof, or a small molecule TNF antagonist), an antirheumatic (e.g., methotrexate, auranofin, aurothioglucose, azathioprine, etanercept, gold sodium thiomalate, hydroxychloroquine sulfate, leflunomide, sulfasalazine), a muscle relaxant, a narcotic, a non-steroid anti-inflammatory drug (NSAID), an analgesic, an anesthetic, a sedative, a local anesthetic, a neuromuscular blocker, an antimicrobial (e.g., aminoglycoside, an antifungal, an antiparasitic, an antiviral, a carbapenem, cephalosporin, a flurorquinolone, a macrolide, a penicillin, a sulfonamide, a tetracycline, another antimicrobial), an antipsoriatic, a corticosteroid, an anabolic steroid, a diabetes related agent, a mineral, a nutritional, a thyroid agent, a vitamin, a calcium related hormone, an antidiarrheal, an antitussive, an antiemetic, an antiulcer, a laxative, an anticoagulant, an erythropoietin (e.g., epoetin alpha), a filgrastim (e.g., G-CSF, Neupogen), a sargramostim (GM-CSF, Leukine), an immunization, an immunoglobulin, an immunosuppressive (e.g., basiliximab, cyclosporine, daclizumab), a growth hormone, a hormone replacement drug, an estrogen receptor modulator, a mydriatic, a cycloplegic, an alkylating agent, an antimetabolite, a mitotic inhibitor, a radiopharmaceutical, an antidepressant, antimanic agent, an antipsychotic, an anxiolytic, a hypnotic, a sympathomimetic, a stimulant, donepezil, tacrine, an asthma medication, a beta agonist, an inhaled steroid, a leukotriene inhibitor, a methylxanthine, a cromolyn, an epinephrine or analog, dornase alpha (Pulmozyme), a cytokine or a cytokine antagonist. Suitable dosages are well known in the art. See, e.g., Wells et al., eds., *Pharmacotherapy Handbook*, 2<sup>nd</sup> Edition, Appleton and Lange, Stamford, CT (2000); *PDR Pharmacopoeia*, Tarascon Pocket Pharmacopoeia 2000, Deluxe Edition, Tarascon Publishing, Loma Linda, CA (2000), each of which references are entirely incorporated herein by reference.

TNF antagonists suitable for compositions, combination therapy, co-administration, devices and/or methods of the present invention (further comprising at least one anti body, specified portion and variant thereof, of the present invention), include, but are not limited to, anti-TNF antibodies, antigen-binding fragments thereof, and receptor molecules which bind

specifically to TNF; compounds which prevent and/or inhibit TNF synthesis, TNF release or its action on target cells, such as thalidomide, tenidap, phosphodiesterase inhibitors (e.g., pentoxifylline and rolipram), A2b adenosine receptor agonists and A2b adenosine receptor enhancers; compounds which prevent and/or inhibit TNF receptor signalling, such as mitogen

5 activated protein (MAP) kinase inhibitors; compounds which block and/or inhibit membrane TNF cleavage, such as metalloproteinase inhibitors; compounds which block and/or inhibit TNF activity, such as angiotensin converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors (e.g., captopril); and compounds which block and/or inhibit TNF production and/or synthesis, such as MAP kinase inhibitors.

10 As used herein, a "tumor necrosis factor antibody," "TNF antibody," "TNF $\alpha$  antibody," or fragment and the like decreases, blocks, inhibits, abrogates or interferes with TNF $\alpha$  activity *in vitro*, *in situ* and/or preferably *in vivo*. For example, a suitable TNF human antibody of the present invention can bind TNF $\alpha$  and includes anti-TNF antibodies, antigen-binding fragments thereof, and specified mutants or domains thereof that bind specifically to  
15 TNF $\alpha$ . A suitable TNF antibody or fragment can also decrease block, abrogate, interfere, prevent and/or inhibit TNF RNA, DNA or protein synthesis, TNF release, TNF receptor signaling, membrane TNF cleavage, TNF activity, TNF production and/or synthesis.

Chimeric antibody cA2 consists of the antigen binding variable region of the high-affinity neutralizing mouse anti-human TNF $\alpha$  IgG1 antibody, designated A2, and the constant 20 regions of a human IgG1, kappa immunoglobulin. The human IgG1 Fc region improves allogeneic antibody effector function, increases the circulating serum half-life and decreases the immunogenicity of the antibody. The avidity and epitope specificity of the chimeric antibody cA2 is derived from the variable region of the murine antibody A2. In a particular embodiment, a preferred source for nucleic acids encoding the variable region of the murine 25 antibody A2 is the A2 hybridoma cell line.

Chimeric A2 (cA2) neutralizes the cytotoxic effect of both natural and recombinant human TNF $\alpha$  in a dose dependent manner. From binding assays of chimeric antibody cA2 and recombinant human TNF $\alpha$ , the affinity constant of chimeric antibody cA2 was calculated to be 1.04x10<sup>10</sup>M<sup>-1</sup>. Preferred methods for determining monoclonal antibody specificity and affinity 30 by competitive inhibition can be found in Harlow, *et al.*, *Antibodies: A Laboratory Manual*, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press, Cold Spring Harbor, New York, 1988; Colligan *et al.*, eds., *Current Protocols in Immunology*, Greene Publishing Assoc. and Wiley Interscience, New York, (1992-2000); Kozbor *et al.*, *Immunol. Today*, 4:72-79 (1983); Ausubel *et al.*, eds. *Current Protocols in Molecular Biology*, Wiley Interscience, New York (1987-2000); and 35 Muller, *Meth. Enzymol.*, 92:589-601 (1983), which references are entirely incorporated herein by reference.

In a particular embodiment, murine monoclonal antibody A2 is produced by a cell line designated c134A. Chimeric antibody cA2 is produced by a cell line designated c168A.

Additional examples of monoclonal anti-TNF antibodies that can be used in the present invention are described in the art (see, e.g., U.S. Patent No. 5,231,024; Möller, A. *et al.*, *Cytokine* 2(3):162-169 (1990); U.S. Application No. 07/943,852 (filed September 11, 1992); Rathjen *et al.*, International Publication No. WO 91/02078 (published February 21, 1991); Rubin *et al.*, EPO Patent Publication No. 0 218 868 (published April 22, 1987); Yone *et al.*, EPO Patent Publication No. 0 288 088 (October 26, 1988); Liang, *et al.*, *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Comm.* 137:847-854 (1986); Meager, *et al.*, *Hybridoma* 6:305-311 (1987); Fendly *et al.*, *Hybridoma* 6:359-369 (1987); Bringman, *et al.*, *Hybridoma* 6:489-507 (1987); and Hirai, *et al.*, *J. Immunol. Meth.* 96:57-62 (1987), which references are entirely incorporated herein by reference).

### TNF Receptor Molecules

Preferred TNF receptor molecules useful in the present invention are those that bind TNF $\alpha$  with high affinity (see, e.g., Feldmann *et al.*, International Publication No. WO 92/07076 (published April 30, 1992); Schall *et al.*, *Cell* 61:361-370 (1990); and Loetscher *et al.*, *Cell* 61:351-359 (1990), which references are entirely incorporated herein by reference) and optionally possess low immunogenicity. In particular, the 55 kDa (p55 TNF-R) and the 75 kDa (p75 TNF-R) TNF cell surface receptors are useful in the present invention. Truncated forms of these receptors, comprising the extracellular domains (ECD) of the receptors or functional portions thereof (see, e.g., Corcoran *et al.*, *Eur. J. Biochem.* 223:831-840 (1994)), are also useful in the present invention. Truncated forms of the TNF receptors, comprising the ECD, have been detected in urine and serum as 30 kDa and 40 kDa TNF $\alpha$  inhibitory binding proteins (Engelmann, H. *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 265:1531-1536 (1990)). TNF receptor multimeric molecules and TNF immunoreceptor fusion molecules, and derivatives and fragments or portions thereof, are additional examples of TNF receptor molecules which are useful in the methods and compositions of the present invention. The TNF receptor molecules which can be used in the invention are characterized by their ability to treat patients for extended periods with good to excellent alleviation of symptoms and low toxicity. Low immunogenicity and/or high affinity, as well as other undefined properties, can contribute to the therapeutic results achieved.

TNF receptor multimeric molecules useful in the present invention comprise all or a functional portion of the ECD of two or more TNF receptors linked via one or more polypeptide linkers or other nonpeptide linkers, such as polyethylene glycol (PEG). The multimeric molecules can further comprise a signal peptide of a secreted protein to direct

expression of the multimeric molecule. These multimeric molecules and methods for their production have been described in U.S. Application No. 08/437,533 (filed May 9, 1995), the content of which is entirely incorporated herein by reference.

- TNF immunoreceptor fusion molecules useful in the methods and compositions of the present invention comprise at least one portion of one or more immunoglobulin molecules and all or a functional portion of one or more TNF receptors. These immunoreceptor fusion molecules can be assembled as monomers, or hetero- or homo-multimers. The immunoreceptor fusion molecules can also be monovalent or multivalent. An example of such a TNF immunoreceptor fusion molecule is TNF receptor/IgG fusion protein. TNF immunoreceptor fusion molecules and methods for their production have been described in the art (Lesslauer *et al.*, *Eur. J. Immunol.* 21:2883-2886 (1991); Ashkenazi *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 88:10535-10539 (1991); Peppel *et al.*, *J. Exp. Med.* 174:1483-1489 (1991); Kolls *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 91:215-219 (1994); Butler *et al.*, *Cytokine* 6(6):616-623 (1994); Baker *et al.*, *Eur. J. Immunol.* 24:2040-2048 (1994); Beutler *et al.*, U.S. Patent No. 5,447,851; and U.S. Application No. 08/442,133 (filed May 16, 1995), each of which references are entirely incorporated herein by reference). Methods for producing immunoreceptor fusion molecules can also be found in Capon *et al.*, U.S. Patent No. 5,116,964; Capon *et al.*, U.S. Patent No. 5,225,538; and Capon *et al.*, *Nature* 337:525-531 (1989), which references are entirely incorporated herein by reference.
- A functional equivalent, derivative, fragment or region of TNF receptor molecule refers to the portion of the TNF receptor molecule, or the portion of the TNF receptor molecule sequence which encodes TNF receptor molecule, that is of sufficient size and sequences to functionally resemble TNF receptor molecules that can be used in the present invention (e.g., bind TNF with high affinity and possess low immunogenicity). A functional equivalent of TNF receptor molecule also includes modified TNF receptor molecules that functionally resemble TNF receptor molecules that can be used in the present invention (e.g., bind TNF with high affinity and possess low immunogenicity). For example, a functional equivalent of TNF receptor molecule can contain a "SILENT" codon or one or more amino acid substitutions, deletions or additions (e.g., substitution of one acidic amino acid for another acidic amino acid; or substitution of one codon encoding the same or different hydrophobic amino acid for another codon encoding a hydrophobic amino acid). See Ausubel *et al.*, *Current Protocols in Molecular Biology*, Greene Publishing Assoc. and Wiley-Interscience, New York (1987-2000).
- Cytokines include any known cytokine. See, e.g., CopewithCytokines.com. Cytokine antagonists include, but are not limited to, any antibody, fragment or mimetic, any soluble receptor, fragment or mimetic, any small molecule antagonist, or any combination thereof.

**Therapeutic Treatments.** Any method of the present invention can comprise a method for treating a TNF mediated disorder, comprising administering an effective amount of a composition or pharmaceutical composition comprising at least one anti-TNF antibody to a cell, tissue, organ, animal or patient in need of such modulation, treatment or therapy. Such a 5 method can optionally further comprise co-administration or combination therapy for treating such immune diseases, wherein the administering of said at least one anti-TNF antibody, specified portion or variant thereof, further comprises administering, before concurrently, and/or after, at least one selected from at least one at least one selected from at least one TNF antagonist (e.g., but not limited to a TNF antibody or fragment, a soluble TNF receptor or 10 fragment, fusion proteins thereof, or a small molecule TNF antagonist), an antirheumatic (e.g., methotrexate, auranofin, aurothioglucose, azathioprine, etanercept, gold sodium thiomalate, hydroxychloroquine sulfate, leflunomide, sulfasalzine), a muscle relaxant, a narcotic, a non-steroid anti-inflammatory drug (NSAID), an analgesic, an anesthetic, a sedative, a local 15 anesthetic, a neuromuscular blocker, an antimicrobial (e.g., aminoglycoside, an antifungal, an antiparasitic, an antiviral, a carbapenem, cephalosporin, a fluorquinolone, a macrolide, a penicillin, a sulfonamide, a tetracycline, another antimicrobial), an antipsoriatic, a corticosteroid, an anabolic steroid, a diabetes related agent, a mineral, a nutritional, a thyroid agent, a vitamin, a calcium related hormone, an antidiarrheal, an antitussive, an antiemetic, an antiulcer, a laxative, an anticoagulant, an erythropoietin (e.g., epoetin alpha), a filgrastim (e.g., 20 G-CSF, Neupogen), a sargramostim (GM-CSF, Leukine), an immunization, an immunoglobulin, an immunosuppressive (e.g., basiliximab, cyclosporine, daclizumab), a growth hormone, a hormone replacement drug, an estrogen receptor modulator, a mydriatic, a cycloplegic, an alkylating agent, an antimetabolite, a mitotic inhibitor, a radiopharmaceutical, an antidepressant, antimanic agent, an antipsychotic, an anxiolytic, a hypnotic, a 25 sympathomimetic, a stimulant, donepezil, tacrine, an asthma medication, a beta agonist, an inhaled steroid, a leukotriene inhibitor, a methylxanthine, a cromolyn, an epinephrine or analog, dornase alpha (Pulmozyme), a cytokine or a cytokine antagonist.

Typically, treatment of pathologic conditions is effected by administering an effective amount or dosage of at least one anti-TNF antibody composition that total, on average, a range 30 from at least about 0.01 to 500 milligrams of at least one anti-TNF antibody per kilogram of patient per dose, and preferably from at least about 0.1 to 100 milligrams antibody/kilogram of patient per single or multiple administration, depending upon the specific activity of contained in the composition. Alternatively, the effective serum concentration can comprise 0.1-5000 µg/ml serum concentration per single or multiple administration. Suitable dosages are known to medical 35 practitioners and will, of course, depend upon the particular disease state, specific activity of the composition being administered, and the particular patient undergoing treatment. In some

instances, to achieve the desired therapeutic amount, it can be necessary to provide for repeated administration, *i.e.*, repeated individual administrations of a particular monitored or metered dose, where the individual administrations are repeated until the desired daily dose or effect is achieved.

5 Preferred doses can optionally include 0.1, 0.2, 0.3, 0.4, 0.5, 0.6, 0.7, 0.8, 0.9, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39, 40, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 46, 47, 48, 49, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 62, 63, 64, 65, 66, 67, 68, 69, 70, 71, 72, 73, 74, 75, 76, 77, 78, 79, 80, 81, 82, 83, 84, 85, 86, 87, 88, 89, 90, 91, 92, 93, 94, 95, 96, 97, 98, 99 and/or 100-500 mg/kg/administration, or any  
10 range, value or fraction thereof, or to achieve a serum concentration of 0.1, 0.5, 0.9, 1.0, 1.1, 1.2, 1.5, 1.9, 2.0, 2.5, 2.9, 3.0, 3.5, 3.9, 4.0, 4.5, 4.9, 5.0, 5.5, 5.9, 6.0, 6.5, 6.9, 7.0, 7.5, 7.9, 8.0, 8.5, 8.9, 9.0, 9.5, 9.9, 10, 10.5, 10.9, 11, 11.5, 11.9, 20, 12.5, 12.9, 13.0, 13.5, 13.9, 14.0, 14.5, 4.9, 5.0, 5.5, 5.9, 6.0, 6.5, 6.9, 7.0, 7.5, 7.9, 8.0, 8.5, 8.9, 9.0, 9.5, 9.9, 10, 10.5, 10.9, 11, 11.5, 11.9, 12, 12.5, 12.9, 13.0, 13.5, 13.9, 14, 14.5, 15, 15.5, 15.9, 16, 16.5, 16.9, 17, 17.5, 17.9, 18, 18.5,  
15 18.9, 19, 19.5, 19.9, 20, 20.5, 20.9, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, 55, 60, 65, 70, 75, 80, 85, 90, 96, 100, 200, 300, 400, 500, 600, 700, 800, 900, 1000, 1500, 2000, 2500, 3000, 3500, 4000, 4500, and/or 5000 µg/ml serum concentration per single or multiple administration, or any range, value or fraction thereof.

Alternatively, the dosage administered can vary depending upon known factors, such  
20 as the pharmacodynamic characteristics of the particular agent, and its mode and route of administration; age, health, and weight of the recipient; nature and extent of symptoms, kind of concurrent treatment, frequency of treatment, and the effect desired. Usually a dosage of active ingredient can be about 0.1 to 100 milligrams per kilogram of body weight. Ordinarily 0.1 to 50, and preferably 0.1 to 10 milligrams per kilogram per administration or in sustained release form is effective to obtain desired results.  
25

As a non-limiting example, treatment of humans or animals can be provided as a one-time or periodic dosage of at least one antibody of the present invention 0.1 to 100 mg/kg, such as 0.5, 0.9, 1.0, 1.1, 1.5, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 40, 45, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90 or 100 mg/kg, per day, on at least one  
30 of day 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39, or 40, or alternatively or additionally, at least one of week 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39, 40, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 46, 47, 48, 49, 50, 51, or 52, or alternatively or additionally, at least one of 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, or 20 years, or any combination thereof, using single, infusion or repeated doses.  
35

Dosage forms (composition) suitable for internal administration generally contain from about 0.1 milligram to about 500 milligrams of active ingredient per unit or container. In these pharmaceutical compositions the active ingredient will ordinarily be present in an amount of about 0.5-99.999% by weight based on the total weight of the composition.

- 5       For parenteral administration, the antibody can be formulated as a solution, suspension, emulsion or lyophilized powder in association, or separately provided, with a pharmaceutically acceptable parenteral vehicle. Examples of such vehicles are water, saline, Ringer's solution, dextrose solution, and 1-10% human serum albumin. Liposomes and nonaqueous vehicles such as fixed oils can also be used. The vehicle or lyophilized powder  
10      can contain additives that maintain isotonicity (e.g., sodium chloride, mannitol) and chemical stability (e.g., buffers and preservatives). The formulation is sterilized by known or suitable techniques.

Suitable pharmaceutical carriers are described in the most recent edition of Remington's Pharmaceutical Sciences, A. Osol, a standard reference text in this field.

15      **Alternative Administration**

Many known and developed modes of can be used according to the present invention for administering pharmaceutically effective amounts of at least one anti-TNF antibody according to the present invention. While pulmonary administration is used in the following description, other modes of administration can be used according to the present invention with  
20      suitable results.

TNF antibodies of the present invention can be delivered in a carrier, as a solution, emulsion, colloid, or suspension, or as a dry powder, using any of a variety of devices and methods suitable for administration by inhalation or other modes described here within or known in the art.

25      **Parenteral Formulations and Administration**

Formulations for parenteral administration can contain as common excipients sterile water or saline, polyalkylene glycols such as polyethylene glycol, oils of vegetable origin, hydrogenated naphthalenes and the like. Aqueous or oily suspensions for injection can be prepared by using an appropriate emulsifier or humidifier and a suspending agent, according to  
30      known methods. Agents for injection can be a non-toxic, non-orally administrable diluting agent such as aqueous solution or a sterile injectable solution or suspension in a solvent. As the usable vehicle or solvent, water, Ringer's solution, isotonic saline, etc. are allowed; as an ordinary solvent, or suspending solvent, sterile involatile oil can be used. For these purposes, any kind of involatile oil and fatty acid can be used, including natural or synthetic or  
35      semisynthetic fatty oils or fatty acids; natural or synthetic or semisynthetic mono- or di- or triglycerides. Parental administration is known in the art and includes, but is not limited to,

conventional means of injections, a gas pressured needle-less injection device as described in U.S. Pat. No. 5,851,198, and a laser perforator device as described in U.S. Pat. No. 5,839,446 entirely incorporated herein by reference.

#### Alternative Delivery

- 5 The invention further relates to the administration of at least one anti-TNF antibody by parenteral, subcutaneous, intramuscular, intravenous, intrarticular, intrabronchial, intraabdominal, intracapsular, intracartilaginous, intracavitory, intracelial, intracelebellar, intracerebroventricular, intracolic, intracervical, intragastric, intrahepatic, intramyocardial, intraosteal, intrapelvic, intrapericardiac, intraperitoneal, intrapleural, intraprostatic, 10 intrapulmonary, intrarectal, intrarenal, intraretinal, intraspinal, intrasynovial, intrathoracic, intrauterine, intravesical, bolus, vaginal, rectal, buccal, sublingual, intranasal, or transdermal means. At least one anti-TNF antibody composition can be prepared for use for parenteral (subcutaneous, intramuscular or intravenous) or any other administration particularly in the form of liquid solutions or suspensions; for use in vaginal or rectal administration particularly 15 in semisolid forms such as, but not limited to, creams and suppositories; for buccal, or sublingual administration such as, but not limited to, in the form of tablets or capsules; or intranasally such as, but not limited to, the form of powders, nasal drops or aerosols or certain agents; or transdermally such as not limited to a gel, ointment, lotion, suspension or patch delivery system with chemical enhancers such as dimethyl sulfoxide to either modify the skin 20 structure or to increase the drug concentration in the transdermal patch (Junginger, et al. In "Drug Permeation Enhancement"; Hsieh, D. S., Eds., pp. 59-90 (Marcel Dekker, Inc. New York 1994, entirely incorporated herein by reference), or with oxidizing agents that enable the application of formulations containing proteins and peptides onto the skin (WO 98/53847), or applications of electric fields to create transient transport pathways such as electroporation, or 25 to increase the mobility of charged drugs through the skin such as iontophoresis, or application of ultrasound such as sonophoresis (U.S. Pat. Nos. 4,309,989 and 4,767,402) (the above publications and patents being entirely incorporated herein by reference).

#### Pulmonary/Nasal Administration

- For pulmonary administration, preferably at least one anti-TNF antibody composition 30 is delivered in a particle size effective for reaching the lower airways of the lung or sinuses. According to the invention, at least one anti-TNF antibody can be delivered by any of a variety of inhalation or nasal devices known in the art for administration of a therapeutic agent by inhalation. These devices capable of depositing aerosolized formulations in the sinus cavity or alveoli of a patient include metered dose inhalers, nebulizers, dry powder generators, sprayers, 35 and the like. Other devices suitable for directing the pulmonary or nasal administration of antibodies are also known in the art. All such devices can use of formulations suitable for the

administration for the dispensing of antibody in an aerosol. Such aerosols can be comprised of either solutions (both aqueous and non aqueous) or solid particles. Metered dose inhalers like the Ventolin® metered dose inhaler, typically use a propellant gas and require actuation during inspiration (See, e.g., WO 94/16970, WO 98/35888). Dry powder inhalers like Turbuhaler™ (Astra), Rotahaler® (Glaxo), Diskus® (Glaxo), Spiros™ inhaler (Dura), devices marketed by Inhale Therapeutics, and the Spinhaler® powder inhaler (Fisons), use breath-actuation of a mixed powder (US 4668218 Astra, EP 237507 Astra, WO 97/25086 Glaxo, WO 94/08552 Dura, US 5458135 Inhale, WO 94/06498 Fisons, entirely incorporated herein by reference). Nebulizers like AERx™ Aradigm, the Ultravent® nebulizer (Mallinckrodt), and the Acorn II® nebulizer (Marquest Medical Products) (US 5404871 Aradigm, WO 97/22376), the above references entirely incorporated herein by reference, produce aerosols from solutions, while metered dose inhalers, dry powder inhalers, etc. generate small particle aerosols. These specific examples of commercially available inhalation devices are intended to be a representative of specific devices suitable for the practice of this invention, and are not intended as limiting the scope of the invention. Preferably, a composition comprising at least one anti-TNF antibody is delivered by a dry powder inhaler or a sprayer. There are several desirable features of an inhalation device for administering at least one antibody of the present invention. For example, delivery by the inhalation device is advantageously reliable, reproducible, and accurate. The inhalation device can optionally deliver small dry particles, e.g. less than about 10 µm, preferably about 1-5 µm, for good respirability.

#### **Administration of TNF antibody Compositions as a Spray**

A spray including TNF antibody composition protein can be produced by forcing a suspension or solution of at least one anti-TNF antibody through a nozzle under pressure. The nozzle size and configuration, the applied pressure, and the liquid feed rate can be chosen to achieve the desired output and particle size. An electrospray can be produced, for example, by an electric field in connection with a capillary or nozzle feed. Advantageously, particles of at least one anti-TNF antibody composition protein delivered by a sprayer have a particle size less than about 10 µm, preferably in the range of about 1 µm to about 5 µm, and most preferably about 2 µm to about 3 µm.

Formulations of at least one anti-TNF antibody composition protein suitable for use with a sprayer typically include antibody composition protein in an aqueous solution at a concentration of about 0.1 mg to about 100 mg of at least one anti-TNF antibody composition protein per ml of solution or mg/gm, or any range or value therein, e.g., but not limited to, .1, .2, .3, .4, .5, .6, .7, .8, .9, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 40, 45, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90 or 100 mg/ml or mg/gm. The formulation can include agents such as an excipient, a buffer, an isotonicity agent, a

preservative, a surfactant, and, preferably, zinc. The formulation can also include an excipient or agent for stabilization of the antibody composition protein, such as a buffer, a reducing agent, a bulk protein, or a carbohydrate. Bulk proteins useful in formulating antibody composition proteins include albumin, protamine, or the like. Typical carbohydrates useful in formulating antibody composition proteins include sucrose, mannitol, lactose, trehalose, glucose, or the like. The antibody composition protein formulation can also include a surfactant, which can reduce or prevent surface-induced aggregation of the antibody composition protein caused by atomization of the solution in forming an aerosol. Various conventional surfactants can be employed, such as polyoxyethylene fatty acid esters and alcohols, and polyoxyethylene sorbitol fatty acid esters. Amounts will generally range between 0.001 and 14% by weight of the formulation. Especially preferred surfactants for purposes of this invention are polyoxyethylene sorbitan monooleate, polysorbate 80, polysorbate 20, or the like. Additional agents known in the art for formulation of a protein such as TNF antibodies, or specified portions or variants, can also be included in the formulation.

#### **Administration of TNF antibody compositions by a Nebulizer**

antibody composition protein can be administered by a nebulizer, such as jet nebulizer or an ultrasonic nebulizer. Typically, in a jet nebulizer, a compressed air source is used to create a high-velocity air jet through an orifice. As the gas expands beyond the nozzle, a low-pressure region is created, which draws a solution of antibody composition protein through a capillary tube connected to a liquid reservoir. The liquid stream from the capillary tube is sheared into unstable filaments and droplets as it exits the tube, creating the aerosol. A range of configurations, flow rates, and baffle types can be employed to achieve the desired performance characteristics from a given jet nebulizer. In an ultrasonic nebulizer, high-frequency electrical energy is used to create vibrational, mechanical energy, typically employing a piezoelectric transducer. This energy is transmitted to the formulation of antibody composition protein either directly or through a coupling fluid, creating an aerosol including the antibody composition protein. Advantageously, particles of antibody composition protein delivered by a nebulizer have a particle size less than about 10  $\mu\text{m}$ , preferably in the range of about 1  $\mu\text{m}$  to about 5  $\mu\text{m}$ , and most preferably about 2  $\mu\text{m}$  to about 3  $\mu\text{m}$ .

Formulations of at least one anti-TNF antibody suitable for use with a nebulizer, either jet or ultrasonic, typically include a concentration of about 0.1 mg to about 100 mg of at least one anti-TNF antibody protein per ml of solution. The formulation can include agents such as an excipient, a buffer, an isotonicity agent, a preservative, a surfactant, and, preferably, zinc. The formulation can also include an excipient or agent for stabilization of the at least one anti-

TNF antibody composition protein, such as a buffer, a reducing agent, a bulk protein, or a carbohydrate. Bulk proteins useful in formulating at least one anti-TNF antibody composition proteins include albumin, protamine, or the like. Typical carbohydrates useful in formulating at least one anti-TNF antibody include sucrose, mannitol, lactose, trehalose, glucose, or the like. The at least one anti-TNF antibody formulation can also include a surfactant, which can reduce or prevent surface-induced aggregation of the at least one anti-TNF antibody caused by atomization of the solution in forming an aerosol. Various conventional surfactants can be employed, such as polyoxyethylene fatty acid esters and alcohols, and polyoxyethylene sorbital fatty acid esters. Amounts will generally range between 0.001 and 4% by weight of the formulation. Especially preferred surfactants for purposes of this invention are polyoxyethylene sorbitan mono-oleate, polysorbate 80, polysorbate 20, or the like. Additional agents known in the art for formulation of a protein such as antibody protein can also be included in the formulation.

#### 15 Administration of TNF antibody compositions By A Metered Dose Inhaler

In a metered dose inhaler (MDI), a propellant, at least one anti-TNF antibody, and any excipients or other additives are contained in a canister as a mixture including a liquefied compressed gas. Actuation of the metering valve releases the mixture as an aerosol, preferably containing particles in the size range of less than about 10  $\mu\text{m}$ , preferably about 1  $\mu\text{m}$  to about 5  $\mu\text{m}$ , and most preferably about 2  $\mu\text{m}$  to about 3  $\mu\text{m}$ . The desired aerosol particle size can be obtained by employing a formulation of antibody composition protein produced by various methods known to those of skill in the art, including jet-milling, spray drying, critical point condensation, or the like. Preferred metered dose inhalers include those manufactured by 3M or Glaxo and employing a hydrofluorocarbon propellant.

25 Formulations of at least one anti-TNF antibody for use with a metered-dose inhaler device will generally include a finely divided powder containing at least one anti-TNF antibody as a suspension in a non-aqueous medium, for example, suspended in a propellant with the aid of a surfactant. The propellant can be any conventional material employed for this purpose, such as chlorofluorocarbon, a hydrochlorofluorocarbon, a hydrofluorocarbon, or a 30 hydrocarbon, including trichlorofluoromethane, dichlorodifluoromethane, dichlorotetrafluoroethanol and 1,1,1,2-tetrafluoroethane, HFA-134a (hydrofluoroalkane-134a), HFA-227 (hydrofluoroalkane-227), or the like. Preferably the propellant is a hydrofluorocarbon. The surfactant can be chosen to stabilize the at least one anti-TNF antibody as a suspension in the propellant, to protect the active agent against chemical 35 degradation, and the like. Suitable surfactants include sorbitan trioleate, soya lecithin, oleic acid, or the like. In some cases solution aerosols are preferred using solvents such as ethanol.

Additional agents known in the art for formulation of a protein such as protein can also be included in the formulation.

One of ordinary skill in the art will recognize that the methods of the current invention can be achieved by pulmonary administration of at least one anti-TNF antibody compositions via devices not described herein.

#### **Oral Formulations and Administration**

Formulations for oral rely on the co-administration of adjuvants (e.g., resorcinols and nonionic surfactants such as polyoxyethylene oleyl ether and n-hexadecylpolyethylene ether) to increase artificially the permeability of the intestinal walls, as well as the co-administration

of enzymatic inhibitors (e.g., pancreatic trypsin inhibitors, diisopropylfluorophosphate (DFF) and trasylol) to inhibit enzymatic degradation. The active constituent compound of the solid-type dosage form for oral administration can be mixed with at least one additive, including sucrose, lactose, cellulose, mannitol, trehalose, raffinose, maltitol, dextran, starches, agar, arginates, chitins, chitosans, pectins, gum tragacanth, gum arabic, gelatin, collagen, casein, albumin, synthetic or semisynthetic polymer, and glyceride. These dosage forms can also contain other type(s) of additives, e.g., inactive diluting agent, lubricant such as magnesium stearate, paraben, preserving agent such as sorbic acid, ascorbic acid,  $\alpha$ -tocopherol, antioxidant such as cysteine, disintegrator, binder, thickener, buffering agent, sweetening agent, flavoring agent, perfuming agent, etc.

Tablets and pills can be further processed into enteric-coated preparations. The liquid preparations for oral administration include emulsion, syrup, elixir, suspension and solution preparations allowable for medical use. These preparations can contain inactive diluting agents ordinarily used in said field, e.g., water. Liposomes have also been described as drug delivery systems for insulin and heparin (U.S. Pat. No. 4,239,754). More recently, microspheres of artificial polymers of mixed amino acids (proteinoids) have been used to deliver pharmaceuticals (U.S. Pat. No. 4,925,673). Furthermore, carrier compounds described in U.S. Pat. No. 5,879,681 and U.S. Pat. No. 5,5,871,753 are used to deliver biologically active agents orally are known in the art.

#### **Mucosal Formulations and Administration**

For absorption through mucosal surfaces, compositions and methods of administering at least one anti-TNF antibody include an emulsion comprising a plurality of submicron particles, a mucoadhesive macromolecule, a bioactive peptide, and an aqueous continuous phase, which promotes absorption through mucosal surfaces by achieving mucoadhesion of the emulsion particles (U.S. Pat. Nos. 5,514,670). Mucous surfaces suitable for application of the emulsions of the present invention can include corneal, conjunctival, buccal, sublingual, nasal, vaginal, pulmonary, stomachic, intestinal, and rectal routes of administration. Formulations

for vaginal or rectal administration, e.g. suppositories, can contain as excipients, for example, polyalkyleneglycols, vaseline, cocoa butter, and the like. Formulations for intranasal administration can be solid and contain as excipients, for example, lactose or can be aqueous or oily solutions of nasal drops. For buccal administration excipients include sugars, calcium stearate, magnesium stearate, pregelatinated starch, and the like (U.S. Pat. Nos. 5,849,695).

#### 5      Transdermal Formulations and Administration

For transdermal administration, the at least one anti-TNF antibody is encapsulated in a delivery device such as a liposome or polymeric nanoparticles, microparticle, microcapsule, or microspheres (referred to collectively as microparticles unless otherwise stated). A number of suitable devices are known, including microparticles made of synthetic polymers such as polyhydroxy acids such as polylactic acid, polyglycolic acid and copolymers thereof, polyorthoesters, polyanhydrides, and polyphosphazenes, and natural polymers such as collagen, polyamino acids, albumin and other proteins, alginate and other polysaccharides, and combinations thereof (U.S. Pat. Nos. 5,814,599).

#### 10     15    Prolonged Administration and Formulations

It can be sometimes desirable to deliver the compounds of the present invention to the subject over prolonged periods of time, for example, for periods of one week to one year from a single administration. Various slow release, depot or implant dosage forms can be utilized. For example, a dosage form can contain a pharmaceutically acceptable non-toxic salt of the compounds that has a low degree of solubility in body fluids, for example, (a) an acid addition salt with a polybasic acid such as phosphoric acid, sulfuric acid, citric acid, tartaric acid, tannic acid, pamoic acid, alginic acid, polyglutamic acid, naphthalene mono- or di-sulfonic acids, polygalacturonic acid, and the like; (b) a salt with a polyvalent metal cation such as zinc, calcium, bismuth, barium, magnesium, aluminum, copper, cobalt, nickel, cadmium and the like, or with an organic cation formed from e.g., N,N'-dibenzyl-ethylenediamine or ethylenediamine; or (c) combinations of (a) and (b) e.g. a zinc tannate salt. Additionally, the compounds of the present invention or, preferably, a relatively insoluble salt such as those just described, can be formulated in a gel, for example, an aluminum monostearate gel with, e.g. sesame oil, suitable for injection. Particularly preferred salts are zinc salts, zinc tannate salts, pamoate salts, and the like. Another type of slow release depot formulation for injection would contain the compound or salt dispersed for encapsulated in a slow degrading, non-toxic, non-antigenic polymer such as a polylactic acid/polyglycolic acid polymer for example as described in U.S. Pat. No. 3,773,919. The compounds or, preferably, relatively insoluble salts such as those described above can also be formulated in cholesterol matrix silastic pellets, particularly for use in animals. Additional slow release, depot or implant formulations, e.g. gas or liquid liposomes are known in the literature (U.S. Pat. Nos. 5,770,222 and "Sustained and

Controlled Release Drug Delivery Systems", J. R. Robinson ed., Marcel Dekker, Inc., N.Y., 1978).

Having generally described the invention, the same will be more readily understood by reference to the following examples, which are provided by way of illustration and are not intended as limiting.

**Example 1: Cloning and Expression of TNF antibody in Mammalian Cells**

A typical mammalian expression vector contains at least one promoter element, which mediates the initiation of transcription of mRNA, the antibody coding sequence, and signals required for the termination of transcription and polyadenylation of the transcript. Additional elements include enhancers, Kozak sequences and intervening sequences flanked by donor and acceptor sites for RNA splicing. Highly efficient transcription can be achieved with the early and late promoters from SV40, the long terminal repeats (LTRS) from Retroviruses, e.g., RSV, HTLV1, HIV1 and the early promoter of the cytomegalovirus (CMV). However, cellular elements can also be used (e.g., the human actin promoter). Suitable expression vectors for use in practicing the present invention include, for example, vectors such as pIRES1neo, pRetro-Off, pRetro-On, PLXSN, or pLNCX (Clonetech Labs, Palo Alto, CA), pcDNA3.1 (+/-), pcDNA/Zeo (+/-) or pcDNA3.1/Hygro (+/-) (Invitrogen), PSVL and PMSG (Pharmacia, Uppsala, Sweden), pRSVcat (ATCC 37152), pSV2dhfr (ATCC 37146) and pBC12MI (ATCC 67109). Mammalian host cells that could be used include human Hela 293, H9 and Jurkat cells, mouse NIH3T3 and C127 cells, Cos 1, Cos 7 and CV 1, quail QC1-3 cells, mouse L cells and Chinese hamster ovary (CHO) cells.

Alternatively, the gene can be expressed in stable cell lines that contain the gene integrated into a chromosome. The co-transfection with a selectable marker such as dhfr, gpt, neomycin, or hygromycin allows the identification and isolation of the transfected cells.

The transfected gene can also be amplified to express large amounts of the encoded antibody. The DHFR (dihydrofolate reductase) marker is useful to develop cell lines that carry several hundred or even several thousand copies of the gene of interest. Another useful selection marker is the enzyme glutamine synthase (GS) (Murphy, et al., Biochem. J. 227:277-279 (1991); Bebbington, et al., Bio/Technology 10:169-175 (1992)). Using these markers, the mammalian cells are grown in selective medium and the cells with the highest resistance are selected. These cell lines contain the amplified gene(s) integrated into a chromosome. Chinese hamster ovary (CHO) and NSO cells are often used for the production of antibodies.

The expression vectors pC1 and pC4 contain the strong promoter (LTR) of the Rous Sarcoma Virus (Cullen, et al., Molec. Cell. Biol. 5:438-447 (1985)) plus a fragment of the

CMV-enhancer (Boshart, et al., Cell 41:521-530 (1985)). Multiple cloning sites, e.g., with the restriction enzyme cleavage sites BamHI, XbaI and Asp718, facilitate the cloning of the gene of interest. The vectors contain in addition the 3' intron, the polyadenylation and termination signal of the rat preproinsulin gene.

## 5 Cloning and Expression in CHO Cells

The vector pC4 is used for the expression of TNF antibody. Plasmid pC4 is a derivative of the plasmid pSV2-dhfr (ATCC Accession No. 37146). The plasmid contains the mouse DHFR gene under control of the SV40 early promoter. Chinese hamster ovary- or other cells lacking dihydrofolate activity that are transfected with these plasmids can be selected by growing the cells in a selective medium (e.g., alpha minus MEM, Life Technologies, Gaithersburg, MD) supplemented with the chemotherapeutic agent methotrexate. The amplification of the DHFR genes in cells resistant to methotrexate (MTX) has been well documented (see, e.g., F. W. Alt, et al., J. Biol. Chem. 253:1357-1370 (1978); J. L. Hamlin and C. Ma, Biochem. et Biophys. Acta 1097:107-143 (1990); and M. J. Page and M. A. Sydenham, Biotechnology 9:64-68 (1991)). Cells grown in increasing concentrations of MTX develop resistance to the drug by overproducing the target enzyme, DHFR, as a result of amplification of the DHFR gene. If a second gene is linked to the DHFR gene, it is usually co-amplified and over-expressed. It is known in the art that this approach can be used to develop cell lines carrying more than 1,000 copies of the amplified gene(s). Subsequently, when the methotrexate is withdrawn, cell lines are obtained that contain the amplified gene integrated into one or more chromosome(s) of the host cell.

Plasmid pC4 contains for expressing the gene of interest the strong promoter of the long terminal repeat (LTR) of the Rous Sarcoma Virus (Cullen, et al., Molec. Cell. Biol. 5:438-447 (1985)) plus a fragment isolated from the enhancer of the immediate early gene of human cytomegalovirus (CMV) (Boshart, et al., Cell 41:521-530 (1985)). Downstream of the promoter are BamHI, XbaI, and Asp718 restriction enzyme cleavage sites that allow integration of the genes. Behind these cloning sites the plasmid contains the 3' intron and polyadenylation site of the rat preproinsulin gene. Other high efficiency promoters can also be used for the expression, e.g., the human b-actin promoter, the SV40 early or late promoters or the long terminal repeats from other retroviruses, e.g., HIV and HTLV. Clontech's Tet-Off and Tet-On gene expression systems and similar systems can be used to express the TNF in a regulated way in mammalian cells (M. Gossen, and H. Bujard, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 89: 5547-5551 (1992)). For the polyadenylation of the mRNA other signals, e.g., from the human growth hormone or globin genes can be used as well. Stable cell lines carrying a gene of interest integrated into the chromosomes can also be selected upon co-transfection with a

selectable marker such as gpt, G418 or hygromycin. It is advantageous to use more than one selectable marker in the beginning, e.g., G418 plus methotrexate.

The plasmid pC4 is digested with restriction enzymes and then dephosphorylated using calf intestinal phosphatase by procedures known in the art. The vector is then isolated from a 1% agarose gel.

The isolated variable and constant region encoding DNA and the dephosphorylated vector are then ligated with T4 DNA ligase. *E. coli* HB101 or XL-1 Blue cells are then transformed and bacteria are identified that contain the fragment inserted into plasmid pC4 using, for instance, restriction enzyme analysis.

- 10 Chinese hamster ovary (CHO) cells lacking an active DHFR gene are used for transfection. 5 µg of the expression plasmid pC4 is cotransfected with 0.5 µg of the plasmid pSV2-neo using lipofectin. The plasmid pSV2neo contains a dominant selectable marker, the neo gene from Tn5 encoding an enzyme that confers resistance to a group of antibiotics including G418. The cells are seeded in alpha minus MEM supplemented with 1 µg/ml G418. After 2 days, the cells are trypsinized and seeded in hybridoma cloning plates (Greiner, Germany) in alpha minus MEM supplemented with 10, 25, or 50 ng/ml of methotrexate plus 1 µg/ml G418. After about 10-14 days single clones are trypsinized and then seeded in 6-well petri dishes or 10 ml flasks using different concentrations of methotrexate (50 nM, 100 nM, 200 nM, 400 nM, 800 nM). Clones growing at the highest concentrations of methotrexate are 20 then transferred to new 6-well plates containing even higher concentrations of methotrexate (1 mM, 2 mM, 5 mM, 10 mM, 20 mM). The same procedure is repeated until clones are obtained that grow at a concentration of 100 - 200 mM. Expression of the desired gene product is analyzed, for instance, by SDS-PAGE and Western blot or by reverse phase HPLC analysis.
- 25 **Example 2: Generation of High Affinity Human IgG Monoclonal Antibodies Reactive With Human TNF Using Transgenic Mice**

### Summary

- Transgenic mice have been used that contain human heavy and light chain immunoglobulin genes to generate high affinity, completely human, monoclonal antibodies that can be used therapeutically to inhibit the action of TNF for the treatment of one or more TNF-mediated disease. (*CBA/J x C57/BL6/J*) F<sub>2</sub> hybrid mice containing human variable and constant region antibody transgenes for both heavy and light chains are immunized with human recombinant TNF (Taylor et al., *Intl. Immunol.* 6:579-591 (1993); Lonberg, et al., 30 *Nature* 368:856-859 (1994); Neuberger, M., *Nature Biotech.* 14:826 (1996); Fishwild, et al., 35 *Nature Biotechnology* 14:845-851 (1996)). Several fusions yielded one or more panels of completely human TNF reactive IgG monoclonal antibodies. The completely human anti-TNF

antibodies are further characterized. All are IgG1 . Such antibodies are found to have affinity constants somewhere between  $1 \times 10^9$  and  $9 \times 10^{12}$ . The unexpectedly high affinities of these fully human monoclonal antibodies make them suitable candidates for therapeutic applications in TNF related diseases, pathologies or disorders.

## 5 Abbreviations

- BSA - bovine serum albumin  
CO<sub>2</sub> - carbon dioxide  
DMSO - dimethyl sulfoxide  
EIA - enzyme immunoassay  
10 FBS - fetal bovine serum  
H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> - hydrogen peroxide  
HRP - horseradish peroxidase  
ID - interadermal  
Ig - immunoglobulin  
15 TNF - tissue necrosis factor alpha  
IP - intraperitoneal  
IV - intravenous  
Mab - monoclonal antibody  
OD - optical density  
20 OPD - o-Phenylenediamine dihydrochloride  
PEG - polyethylene glycol  
PSA - penicillin, streptomycin, amphotericin  
RT - room temperature  
SQ - subcutaneous  
25 v/v - volume per volume  
w/v - weight per volume

## Materials and Methods

### Animals

- 30 Transgenic mice that can express human antibodies are known in the art (and are commercially available (e.g., from GenPharm International, San Jose, CA; Abgenix, Freemont, CA, and others) that express human immunoglobulins but not mouse IgM or Ig . For example, such transgenic mice contain human sequence transgenes that undergo *V(D)J* joining, heavy-chain class switching, and somatic mutation to generate a repertoire of human sequence immunoglobulins (Lonberg, et al., Nature 368:856-859 (1994)). The light chain transgene can be derived, e.g., in part from a yeast artificial chromosome clone that includes nearly half of the germline human V region. In addition, the heavy-chain transgene can encode both human  $\mu$  and human  $\gamma$  (Fishwild, et al., Nature Biotechnology 14:845-851 (1996)) and/or 3 constant regions. Mice derived from appropriate genotypic lineages can be used in the 35 immunization and fusion processes to generate fully human monoclonal antibodies to TNF.
- 40

### Immunization

One or more immunization schedules can be used to generate the anti-TNF human hybridomas. The first several fusions can be performed after the following exemplary

immunization protocol, but other similar known protocols can be used. Several 14-20 week old female and/or surgically castrated transgenic male mice are immunized IP and/or ID with 1-1000 µg of recombinant human TNF emulsified with an equal volume of TITERMAX or complete Freund's adjuvant in a final volume of 100-400µL (e.g., 200). Each mouse can also 5 optionally receive 1-10 µg in 100 µL physiological saline at each of 2 SQ sites. The mice can then be immunized 1-7, 5-12, 10-18, 17-25 and/or 21-34 days later IP (1-400 µg) and SQ (1-400 µg x 2) with TNF emulsified with an equal volume of TITERMAX or incomplete Freund's adjuvant. Mice can be bled 12-25 and 25-40 days later by retro-orbital puncture without anti-coagulant. The blood is then allowed to clot at RT for one hour and the serum is 10 collected and titered using an TNF EIA assay according to known methods. Fusions are performed when repeated injections do not cause titers to increase. At that time, the mice can be given a final IV booster injection of 1-400 µg TNF diluted in 100 µL physiological saline. Three days later, the mice can be euthanized by cervical dislocation and the spleens removed aseptically and immersed in 10 mL of cold phosphate buffered saline (PBS) containing 100 15 U/mL penicillin, 100 µg/mL streptomycin, and 0.25 µg/mL amphotericin B (PSA). The splenocytes are harvested by steriley perfusing the spleen with PSA-PBS. The cells are washed once in cold PSA-PBS, counted using Trypan blue dye exclusion and resuspended in RPMI 1640 media containing 25 mM Hepes.

#### Cell Fusion

20 Fusion can be carried out at a 1:1 to 1:10 ratio of murine myeloma cells to viable spleen cells according to known methods, e.g., as known in the art. As a non-limiting example, spleen cells and myeloma cells can be pelleted together. The pellet can then be slowly resuspended, over 30 seconds, in 1 mL of 50% (w/v) PEG/PBS solution (PEG molecular weight 1,450, Sigma) at 37 C. The fusion can then be stopped by slowly adding 25 10.5 mL of RPMI 1640 medium containing 25 mM Hepes (37 C) over 1 minute. The fused cells are centrifuged for 5 minutes at 500-1500 rpm. The cells are then resuspended in HAT medium (RPMI 1640 medium containing 25 mM Hepes, 10% Fetal Clone I serum (Hyclone), 1 mM sodium pyruvate, 4 mM L-glutamine, 10 µg/mL gentamicin, 2.5% Origen culturing supplement (Fisher), 10% 653-conditioned RPMI 1640/Hepes media, 50 µM 30 2-mercaptoethanol, 100 µM hypoxanthine, 0.4 µM aminopterin, and 16 µM thymidine) and then plated at 200 µL/well in fifteen 96-well flat bottom tissue culture plates. The plates are then placed in a humidified 37 C incubator containing 5% CO<sub>2</sub> and 95% air for 7-10 days.

#### Detection of Human IgG Anti-TNF Antibodies in Mouse Serum

Solid phase EIA's can be used to screen mouse sera for human IgG antibodies specific 35 for human TNF. Briefly, plates can be coated with TNF at 2 µg/mL in PBS overnight. After washing in 0.15M saline containing 0.02% (v/v) Tween 20, the wells can be blocked with 1%

(w/v) BSA in PBS, 200 µL/well for 1 hour at RT. Plates are used immediately or frozen at -20 C for future use. Mouse serum dilutions are incubated on the TNF coated plates at 50 µL/well at RT for 1 hour. The plates are washed and then probed with 50 µL/well HRP-labeled goat anti-human IgG, Fc specific diluted 1:30,000 in 1% BSA-PBS for 1 hour at RT. The plates 5 can again be washed and 100 µL/well of the citrate-phosphate substrate solution (0.1M citric acid and 0.2M sodium phosphate, 0.01% H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> and 1 mg/mL OPD) is added for 15 minutes at RT. Stop solution (4N sulfuric acid) is then added at 25 µL/well and the OD's are read at 490 nm via an automated plate spectrophotometer.

**Detection of Completely Human Immunoglobulins in Hybridoma Supernates**

10 Growth positive hybridomas secreting fully human immunoglobulins can be detected using a suitable EIA. Briefly, 96 well pop-out plates (VWR, 610744) can be coated with 10 µg/mL goat anti-human IgG Fc in sodium carbonate buffer overnight at 4 C. The plates are washed and blocked with 1% BSA-PBS for one hour at 37°C and used immediately or frozen at -20 C. Undiluted hybridoma supernatants are incubated on the plates for one hour at 37°C. 15 The plates are washed and probed with HRP labeled goat anti-human kappa diluted 1:10,000 in 1% BSA-PBS for one hour at 37°C. The plates are then incubated with substrate solution as described above.

**Determination of Fully Human Anti-TNF Reactivity**

Hybridomas, as above, can be simultaneously assayed for reactivity to TNF using a 20 suitable RIA or other assay. For example, supernatants are incubated on goat anti-human IgG Fc plates as above, washed and then probed with radiolabeled TNF with appropriate counts per well for 1 hour at RT. The wells are washed twice with PBS and bound radiolabeled TNF is quantitated using a suitable counter.

Human IgG1 anti-TNF secreting hybridomas can be expanded in cell culture and 25 serially subcloned by limiting dilution. The resulting clonal populations can be expanded and cryopreserved in freezing medium (95% FBS, 5% DMSO) and stored in liquid nitrogen.

**Isotyping**

Isotype determination of the antibodies can be accomplished using an EIA in a format similar to that used to screen the mouse immune sera for specific titers. TNF can be coated on 30 96-well plates as described above and purified antibody at 2 µg/mL can be incubated on the plate for one hour at RT. The plate is washed and probed with HRP labeled goat anti-human IgG<sub>1</sub> or HRP labeled goat anti-human IgG<sub>3</sub> diluted at 1:4000 in 1% BSA-PBS for one hour at RT. The plate is again washed and incubated with substrate solution as described above.

**Binding Kinetics of Human Anti-Human TNF Antibodies With Human TNF**

35 Binding characteristics for antibodies can be suitably assessed using an TNF capture EIA and BIACore technology, for example. Graded concentrations of purified human TNF

antibodies can be assessed for binding to EIA plates coated with 2 µg/mL of TNF in assays as described above. The OD's can be then presented as semi-log plots showing relative binding efficiencies.

Quantitative binding constants can be obtained, e.g., as follows, or by any other known suitable method. A BIACore CM-5 (carboxymethyl) chip is placed in a BIACore 2000 unit. HBS buffer (0.01 M HEPES, 0.15 M NaCl, 3 mM EDTA, 0.005% v/v P20 surfactant, pH 7.4) is flowed over a flow cell of the chip at 5 µL/minute until a stable baseline is obtained. A solution (100 µL) of 15 mg of EDC (N-ethyl-N'-(3-dimethyl-aminopropyl)-carbodiimide hydrochloride) in 200 µL water is added to 100 µL of a solution of 2.3 mg of NHS (N-hydroxysuccinimide) in 200 µL water. Forty (40) µL of the resulting solution is injected onto the chip. Six µL of a solution of human TNF (15 µg/mL in 10 mM sodium acetate, pH 4.8) is injected onto the chip, resulting in an increase of ca. 500 RU. The buffer is changed to TBS/Ca/Mg/BSA running buffer (20 mM Tris, 0.15 M sodium chloride, 2 mM calcium chloride, 2 mM magnesium acetate, 0.5% Triton X-100, 25 µg/mL BSA, pH 7.4) and flowed over the chip overnight to equilibrate it and to hydrolyze or cap any unreacted succinimide esters.

Antibodies are dissolved in the running buffer at 33.33, 16.67, 8.33, and 4.17 nM. The flow rate is adjusted to 30 µL/min and the instrument temperature to 25 °C. Two flow cells are used for the kinetic runs, one on which TNF had been immobilized (sample) and a second, underivatized flow cell (blank). 120 µL of each antibody concentration is injected over the flow cells at 30 µL/min (association phase) followed by an uninterrupted 360 seconds of buffer flow (dissociation phase). The surface of the chip is regenerated (tissue necrosis factor alpha /antibody complex dissociated) by two sequential injections of 30 µL each of 2 M guanidine thiocyanate.

Analysis of the data is done using BIA evaluation 3.0 or CLAMP 2.0, as known in the art. For each antibody concentration the blank sensogram is subtracted from the sample sensogram. A global fit is done for both dissociation ( $k_d$ , sec<sup>-1</sup>) and association ( $k_a$ , mol<sup>-1</sup> sec<sup>-1</sup>) and the dissociation constant ( $K_D$ , mol) calculated ( $k_d/k_a$ ). Where the antibody affinity is high enough that the RUs of antibody captured are >100, additional dilutions of the antibody are run.

### Results and Discussion

#### Generation of Anti-Human TNF Monoclonal Antibodies

Several fusions are performed and each fusion is seeded in 15 plates (1440 wells/fusion) that yield several dozen antibodies specific for human TNF. Of these, some are found to consist of a combination of human and mouse Ig chains. The remaining hybridomas

secret anti-TNF antibodies consisting solely of human heavy and light chains. Of the human hybridomas all are expected to be IgG1.

#### Binding Kinetics of Human Anti-Human TNF Antibodies

ELISA analysis confirms that purified antibody from most or all of these hybridomas bind TNF in a concentration-dependent manner. Figures 1-2 show the results of the relative binding efficiency of these antibodies. In this case, the avidity of the antibody for its cognate antigen (epitope) is measured. It should be noted that binding TNF directly to the EIA plate can cause denaturation of the protein and the apparent binding affinities cannot be reflective of binding to undenatured protein. Fifty percent binding is found over a range of concentrations.

Quantitative binding constants are obtained using BIACore analysis of the human antibodies and reveals that several of the human monoclonal antibodies are very high affinity with  $K_D$  in the range of  $1 \times 10^{-9}$  to  $7 \times 10^{-12}$ .

#### Conclusions

Several fusions are performed utilizing splenocytes from hybrid mice containing human variable and constant region antibody transgenes that are immunized with human TNF. A set of several completely human TNF reactive IgG monoclonal antibodies of the IgG1 isotype are generated. The completely human anti-TNF antibodies are further characterized. Several of generated antibodies have affinity constants between  $1 \times 10^9$  and  $9 \times 10^{12}$ . The unexpectedly high affinities of these fully human monoclonal antibodies make them suitable for therapeutic applications in TNF-dependent diseases, pathologies or related conditions.

#### Example 2: Generation of Human IgG Monoclonal Antibodies Reactive to Human TNF $\alpha$

##### Summary

(CBA/J x C57BL/6J) F<sub>2</sub> hybrid mice (1-4) containing human variable and constant region antibody transgenes for both heavy and light chains were immunized with recombinant human TNF $\alpha$ . One fusion, named GenTNV, yielded eight totally human IgG1 $\kappa$  monoclonal antibodies that bind to immobilized recombinant human TNF $\alpha$ . Shortly after identification, the eight cell lines were transferred to Molecular Biology for further characterization. As these Mabs are totally human in sequence, they are expected to be less immunogenic than cA2 (Remicade) in humans.

30    **Abbreviations**

BSA - bovine serum albumin

CO<sub>2</sub> - carbon dioxide

DMSO - dimethyl sulfoxide

EIA - enzyme immunoassay

FBS - fetal bovine serum

H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> - hydrogen peroxide

HC - heavy chain

5 HRP - horseradish peroxidase

Ig - immunoglobulin

IP - intraperitoneal

IV - intravenous

Mab - monoclonal antibody

10 OD - optical density

OPD - o-Phenylenediamine dihydrochloride

PEG - polyethylene glycol

PSA - penicillin, streptomycin, amphotericin

RT - room temperature

15 SQ - subcutaneous

TNF $\alpha$  - tumor necrosis factor alpha

v/v - volume per volume

w/v - weight per volume

## Introduction

20 Transgenic mice that contain human heavy and light chain immunoglobulin genes were utilized to generate totally human monoclonal antibodies that are specific to recombinant human TNF $\alpha$ . It is hoped that these unique antibodies can be used, as cA2 (Remicade) is used to therapeutically inhibit the inflammatory processes involved in TNF $\alpha$ -mediated disease with the benefit of increased serum half-life and decreased side effects relating to immunogenicity.

## 25 Materials and Methods

### Animals

Transgenic mice that express human immunoglobulins, but not mouse IgM or Ig $\kappa$ , have been developed by GenPharm International. These mice contain functional human antibody transgenes that undergo V(D)J joining, heavy-chain class switching and somatic

mutation to generate a repertoire of antigen-specific human immunoglobulins (1). The light chain transgenes are derived in part from a yeast artificial chromosome clone that includes nearly half of the germline human  $\text{V}_\kappa$  locus. In addition to several VH genes, the heavy-chain (HC) transgene encodes both human  $\mu$  and human  $\gamma 1$  (2) and/or  $\gamma 3$  constant regions. A mouse 5 derived from the HCo12/KCo5 genotypic lineage was used in the immunization and fusion process to generate the monoclonal antibodies described here.

#### Purification of Human TNF $\alpha$

Human TNF $\alpha$  was purified from tissue culture supernatant from C237A cells by affinity chromatography using a column packed with the TNF $\alpha$  receptor-Fc fusion protein 10 (p55-sf2) (5) coupled to Sepharose 4B (Pharmacia). The cell supernatant was mixed with one-ninth its volume of 10x Dulbecco's PBS (D-PBS) and passed through the column at 4 °C at 4 mL/min. The column was then washed with PBS and the TNF $\alpha$  was eluted with 0.1 M sodium citrate, pH 3.5 and neutralized with 2 M Tris-HCl pH 8.5. The purified TNF $\alpha$  was buffer exchanged into 10 mM Tris, 0.12 M sodium chloride pH 7.5 and filtered through a 0.2  $\mu\text{m}$  15 syringe filter.

#### Immunizations

A female GenPharm mouse, approximately 16 weeks old, was immunized IP (200  $\mu\text{L}$ ) and ID (100  $\mu\text{L}$  at the base of the tail) with a total of 100  $\mu\text{g}$  of TNF $\alpha$  (lot JG102298 or JG102098) emulsified with an equal volume of Titermax adjuvant on days 0, 12 and 28. The 20 mouse was bled on days 21 and 35 by retro-orbital puncture without anti-coagulant. The blood was allowed to clot at RT for one hour and the serum was collected and titered using TNF $\alpha$  solid phase EIA assay. The fusion, named GenTNV, was performed after the mouse was allowed to rest for seven weeks following injection on day 28. The mouse, with a specific 25 human IgG titer of 1:160 against TNF $\alpha$ , was then given a final IV booster injection of 50  $\mu\text{g}$  TNF $\alpha$  diluted in 100  $\mu\text{L}$  physiological saline. Three days later, the mouse was euthanized by cervical dislocation and the spleen was removed aseptically and immersed in 10 mL of cold phosphate-buffered saline (PBS) containing 100 U/mL penicillin, 100  $\mu\text{g}/\text{mL}$  streptomycin, and 0.25  $\mu\text{g}/\text{mL}$  amphotericin B (PSA). The splenocytes were harvested by steriley perfusing 30 the spleen with PSA-PBS. The cells were washed once in cold PSA-PBS, counted using a Coulter counter and resuspended in RPMI 1640 media containing 25 mM Hepes.

#### Cell Lines

The non-secreting mouse myeloma fusion partner, 653 was received into Cell Biology Services (CBS) group on 5-14-97 from Centocor's Product Development group. The cell line

was expanded in RPMI medium (JRH Biosciences) supplemented with 10% (v/v) FBS (Cell Culture Labs), 1 mM sodium pyruvate, 0.1 mM NEAA, 2 mM L-glutamine (all from JRH Biosciences) and cryopreserved in 95% FBS and 5% DMSO (Sigma), then stored in a vapor phase liquid nitrogen freezer in CBS. The cell bank was sterile (Quality Control Centocor, 5 Malvern) and free of mycoplasma (Bionique Laboratories). Cells were maintained in log phase culture until fusion. They were washed in PBS, counted, and viability determined (>95%) via trypan blue dye exclusion prior to fusion.

Human TNF $\alpha$  was produced by a recombinant cell line, named C237A, generated in Molecular Biology at Centocor. The cell line was expanded in IMDM medium 10 (JRH Biosciences) supplemented with 5% (v/v) FBS (Cell Culture Labs), 2 mM L-glutamine (all from JRH Biosciences), and 0.5 :g/mL mycophenolic acid, and cryopreserved in 95% FBS and 5% DMSO (Sigma), then stored in a vapor phase liquid nitrogen freezer in CBS (13). The cell bank was sterile (Quality Control Centocor, Malvern) and free of mycoplasma (Bionique Laboratories).

15 **Cell Fusion**

The cell fusion was carried out using a 1:1 ratio of 653 murine myeloma cells and viable murine spleen cells. Briefly, spleen cells and myeloma cells were pelleted together. The pellet was slowly resuspended over a 30 second period in 1 mL of 50% (w/v) PEG/PBS solution (PEG molecular weight of 1,450 g/mole, Sigma) at 37°C. The fusion was stopped by 20 slowly adding 10.5 mL of RPMI media (no additives) (JRH) (37°C) over 1 minute. The fused cells were centrifuged for 5 minutes at 750 rpm. The cells were then resuspended in HAT medium (RPMI/HEPES medium containing 10% Fetal Bovine Serum (JRH), 1 mM sodium pyruvate, 2 mM L-glutamine, 10  $\mu$ g/mL gentamicin, 2.5% Origen culturing supplement (Fisher), 50  $\mu$ M 2-mercaptoethanol, 1% 653-conditioned RPMI media, 100  $\mu$ M hypoxanthine, 25 0.4  $\mu$ M aminopterin, and 16  $\mu$ M thymidine) and then plated at 200  $\mu$ L/well in five 96-well flat bottom tissue culture plates. The plates were then placed in a humidified 37°C incubator containing 5% CO<sub>2</sub> and 95% air for 7-10 days.

**Detection of Human IgG Anti-TNF $\alpha$  Antibodies in Mouse Serum**

30 Solid phase EIAs were used to screen mouse sera for human IgG antibodies specific for human TNF $\alpha$ . Briefly, plates were coated with TNF $\alpha$  at 1  $\mu$ g/mL in PBS overnight. After washing in 0.15 M saline containing 0.02% (v/v) Tween 20, the wells were blocked with 1% (w/v) BSA in PBS, 200  $\mu$ L/well for 1 hour at RT. Plates were either used immediately or frozen at -20 °C for future use. Mouse sera were incubated in two-fold serial dilutions on the

human TNF $\alpha$ -coated plates at 50  $\mu$ L/well at RT for 1 hour. The plates were washed and then probed with 50  $\mu$ L/well HRP-labeled goat anti-human IgG, Fc specific (Accurate) diluted 1:30,000 in 1% BSA-PBS for 1 hour at RT. The plates were again washed and 100  $\mu$ L/well of the citrate-phosphate substrate solution (0.1 M citric acid and 0.2 M sodium phosphate, 0.01% 5  $H_2O_2$  and 1 mg/mL OPD) was added for 15 minutes at RT. Stop solution (4N sulfuric acid) was then added at 25  $\mu$ L/well and the OD's were read at 490 nm using an automated plate spectrophotometer.

#### **Detection of Totally Human Immunoglobulins in Hybridoma Supernatants**

Because the GenPharm mouse is capable of generating both mouse and human 10 immunoglobulin chains, two separate EIA assays were used to test growth-positive hybridoma clones for the presence of both human light chains and human heavy chains. Plates were coated as described above and undiluted hybridoma supernatants were incubated on the plates for one hour at 37°C. The plates were washed and probed with either HRP-conjugated goat anti-human kappa (Southern Biotech) antibody diluted 1:10,000 in 1% BSA-HBSS or HRP- 15 conjugated goat anti-human IgG Fc specific antibody diluted to 1:30,000 in 1% BSA-HBSS for one hour at 37°C. The plates were then incubated with substrate solution as described above. Hybridoma clones that did not give a positive signal in both the anti-human kappa and anti-human IgG Fc EIA formats were discarded.

#### **Isotyping**

20 Isotype determination of the antibodies was accomplished using an EIA in a format similar to that used to screen the mouse immune sera for specific titers. EIA plates were coated with goat anti-human IgG (H+L) at 10  $\mu$ g/mL in sodium carbonate buffer overnight at 4°C and blocked as described above. Neat supernatants from 24 well cultures were incubated on the plate for one hour at RT. The plate was washed and probed with HRP-labeled goat 25 anti-human IgG<sub>1</sub>, IgG<sub>2</sub>, IgG<sub>3</sub> or IgG<sub>4</sub> (Binding Site) diluted at 1:4000 in 1% BSA-PBS for one hour at RT. The plate was again washed and incubated with substrate solution as described above.

#### **Results and Discussion**

##### **Generation of Totally Human Anti-Human TNF $\alpha$ Monoclonal Antibodies**

30 One fusion, named GenTNV, was performed from a GenPharm mouse immunized with recombinant human TNF $\alpha$  protein. From this fusion, 196 growth-positive hybrids were screened. Eight hybridoma cell lines were identified that secreted totally human IgG antibodies reactive with human TNF $\alpha$ . These eight cell lines each secreted immunoglobulins

of the human IgG1κ isotype and all were subcloned twice by limiting dilution to obtain stable cell lines (>90% homogeneous). Cell line names and respective C code designations are listed in Table 1. Each of the cell lines was frozen in 12-vial research cell banks stored in liquid nitrogen.

- 5 Parental cells collected from wells of a 24-well culture dish for each of the eight cell lines were handed over to Molecular Biology group on 2-18-99 for transfection and further characterization.

Table 1: GenTNV Cell Line Designations

| Name            | C Code Designation |
|-----------------|--------------------|
| GenTNV14.17.12  | C414A              |
| GenTNV15.28.11  | C415A              |
| GenTNV32.2.16   | C416A              |
| GenTNV86.14.34  | C417A              |
| GenTNV118.3.36  | C418A              |
| GenTNV122.23.2  | C419A              |
| GenTNV148.26.12 | C420A              |
| GenTNV196.9.1   | C421A              |

## 5 Conclusion

The GenTNV fusion was performed utilizing splenocytes from a hybrid mouse containing human variable and constant region antibody transgenes that was immunized with recombinant human TNF $\alpha$  prepared at Centocor. Eight totally human, TNF $\alpha$ -reactive IgG monoclonal antibodies of the IgG1 $\kappa$  isotype were generated. Parental cell lines were transferred to Molecular Biology group for further characterization and development. One of these new human antibodies may prove useful in anti-inflammatory with the potential benefit of decreased immunogenicity and allergic-type complications as compared with Remicade.

## References

1. Taylor, et al., International Immunology 6:579-591 (1993).
- 15 2. Lonberg, et al., Nature 368:856-859 (1994).
3. Neuberger, M. Nature Biotechnology 14:826 (1996).
4. Fishwild, et al., Nature Biotechnology 14:845-851 (1996).
5. Scallan, et al., Cytokine 7:759-770 (1995).

## Example 3: Cloning and Preparation of Cell lines Expressing Human anti-TNF $\alpha$ antibody

### Summary

A panel of eight human monoclonal antibodies (mAbs) with a TNV designation were found to bind immobilized human TNF $\alpha$  with apparently high avidity. Seven of the eight

mAbs were shown to efficiently block huTNF $\alpha$  binding to a recombinant TNF receptor. Sequence analysis of the DNA encoding the seven mAbs confirmed that all the mAbs had human V regions. The DNA sequences also revealed that three pairs of the mAbs were identical to each other, such that the original panel of eight mAbs contained only four distinct 5 mAbs, represented by TNV14, TNV15, TNV148, and TNV196. Based on analyses of the deduced amino acid sequences of the mAbs and results of *in vitro* TNF $\alpha$  neutralization data, mAb TNV148 and TNV14 were selected for further study.

Because the proline residue at position 75 (framework 3) in the TNV148 heavy chain was not found at that position in other human antibodies of the same subgroup during a 10 database search, site-directed DNA mutagenesis was performed to encode a serine residue at that position in order to have it conform to known germline framework 3 sequences. The serine modified mAb was designated TNV148B. PCR-amplified DNA encoding the heavy and light chain variable regions of TNV148B and TNV14 was cloned into newly prepared expression vectors that were based on the recently cloned heavy and light chain genes of 15 another human mAb (12B75), disclosed in US patent application No. \_\_\_\_\_ filed October 7, 2000, entitled IL-12 Antibodies, Compositions, Methods and Uses, which is entirely incorporated herein by reference.

P3X63Ag8.653 (653) cells or Sp2/0-Ag14 (Sp2/0) mouse myeloma cells were transfected with the respective heavy and light chain expression plasmids and screened 20 through two rounds of subcloning for cell lines producing high levels of recombinant TNV148B and TNV14 (rTNV148B and rTNV14) mAbs. Evaluations of growth curves and stability of mAb production over time indicated that 653-transflectant clones C466D and C466C stably produced approximately 125 :g/ml of rTNV148B mAb in spent cultures whereas Sp2/0 transfectant 1.73-12-122 (C467A) stably produced approximately 25 :g/ml of 25 rTNV148B mAb in spent cultures. Similar analyses indicated that Sp2/0-transflectant clone C476A produced 18 :g/ml of rTNV14 in spent cultures.

### Introduction

A panel of eight mAbs derived from human TNF $\alpha$ -immunized GenPharm/Medarex mice (HCo12/KCo5 genotype) were previously shown to bind human TNF $\alpha$  and to have a 30 totally human IgG1, kappa isotype. A simple binding assay was used to determine whether the exemplary mAbs of the invention were likely to have TNF $\alpha$ -neutralizing activity by evaluating their ability to block TNF $\alpha$  from binding to recombinant TNF receptor. Based on those results, DNA sequence results, and *in vitro* characterizations of several of the mAbs, TNV148 was selected as the mAb to be further characterized.

DNA sequences encoding the TNV148 mAb were cloned, modified to fit into gene expression vectors that encode suitable constant regions, introduced into the well-characterized 653 and Sp2/0 mouse myeloma cells, and resulting transfected cell lines screened until subclones were identified that produced 40-fold more mAb than the original hybridoma cell  
5 line.

#### Materials and Methods

##### Reagents and Cells

TRIZOL reagent was purchased from Gibco BRL. Proteinase K was obtained from Sigma Chemical Company. Reverse Transcriptase was obtained from Life Sciences, Inc. Taq  
10 DNA Polymerase was obtained from either Perkin Elmer Cetus or Gibco BRL. Restriction enzymes were purchased from New England Biolabs. QIAquick PCR Purification Kit was from Qiagen. A QuikChange Site-Directed Mutagenesis Kit was purchased from Stratagene. Wizard plasmid miniprep kits and RNasin were from Promega. Optiplates were obtained from Packard. <sup>125</sup>Iodine was purchased from Amersham. Custom oligonucleotides were purchased  
15 from Keystone/Biosource International. The names, identification numbers, and sequences of the oligonucleotides used in this work are shown in Table 1.

**Table 1. Oligonucleotides used to clone, engineer, or sequence the TNV mAb genes.** The amino acids encoded by oligonucleotide 5'14s and HuH-J6 are shown above the sequence. The 'M' amino acid residue represents the translation start codon. The underlined sequences in oligonucleotides 5'14s and HuH-J6 mark the BsiWI and BstBI restriction sites, respectively. The slash in HuH-J6 corresponds to the exon/intron boundary. Note that oligonucleotides whose sequence corresponds to the minus strand are written in a 3'-5' orientation.

|    | <u>Name</u> | <u>I.D.</u> | <u>Sequence</u>                                      |
|----|-------------|-------------|--|
|    | HG1-4b      | 119         | 3'-TTGGTCCAGTCGGACTGG-5'                             |
|    | HG1-5b      | 354         | 3'-CACCTGCACCTCGGTGCTT-5'                            |
| 5  | HG1hg       | 360         | 3'-CACTGTTTGAGTGTGTACGGGCTTAAGTT-5'                  |
|    | HG1-6       | 35          | 3'-GCCGCACGTGTGGAAGGG-5'                             |
|    | HCK1-3E     | 117         | 3'-AGTCAAGGTCGGACTGGCTTAAGTT-5'                      |
|    | HuK-3'Hd    | 208         | 3'-GTTGTCCCCTCTCACAAATCTTCGAATT-5'                   |
| 10 | HVKRNASeq   | 34          | 3'-GGCGGTAGACTACTCGTC-5'                             |
|    |             |             | BsiWI            M D W T W S I                       |
|    | 5'14s       | 366         | 5'- <u>TTTCGTACGCCACCATGGACTGGACCTGGAGCATC</u> -3'   |
|    | 5'46s       | 367         | 5'-TTTCGTACGCCACCATGGGTTTGGGCTGAGCTG-3'              |
| 15 | 5'47s       | 368         | 5'-TTTCGTACGCCACCATGGAGTTGGGCTGAGCATG-3'             |
|    | 5'63s       | 369         | 5'-TTTCGTACGCCACCATGAAACACCTGTGGTCTTC-3'             |
|    | 5'73s       | 370         | 5'-TTTCGTACGCCACCATGGGTCAACGCCATCCTC-3'              |
|    |             |             | T V T V S S            BstBI                         |
| 20 | HuH-J6      | 388         | 3'-GTGCCAGTGGCAGAGGAGTC/CATT <u>CAAGCTTAAGTT</u> -5' |
|    |             |             | Sall            M D M R V                            |
|    | LK7s        | 362         | 5'- <u>TTTGTGACACCATGGACATGAGGGTCC(TC)C</u> -3'      |
|    | LVgs        | 363         | 5'-TTTGTGACACCATGGAAGCCCCAGCTC-3'                    |
| 25 |             |             | T K V D I K            AfI                           |
|    | HuL-J3      | 380         | 3'-CTGGTTTCACCTATAGTTG/CATT <u>CAGAATTGGCGCC</u> TT  |
|    | V148-QC1    | 399         | 5'-CATCTCCAGAGACAAT <u>tCCAAGAACACGCTGTATC</u> -3'   |
| 30 | V148-QC2    | 400         | 3'-GTAGAGGTCTGTAA <u>GGTTCTGTGCGACATAG</u> -5'       |

A single frozen vial of 653 mouse myeloma cells was obtained . The vial was thawed that day and expanded in T flasks in IMDM, 5% FBS, 2 mM glutamine (media). These cells were maintained in continuous culture until they were transfected 2 to 3 weeks later with the anti-TNF DNA described here. Some of the cultures were harvested 5 days after the thaw

date, pelleted by centrifugation, and resuspended in 95% FBS, 5% DMSO, aliquoted into 30 vials, frozen, and stored for future use. Similarly, a single frozen vial of Sp2/0 mouse myeloma cells was obtained. The vial was thawed, a new freeze-down prepared as described above, and the frozen vials stored in CBC freezer boxes AA and AB. These cells were thawed 5 and used for all Sp2/0 transfections described here.

#### Assay for Inhibition of TNF Binding to Receptor

Hybridoma cell supernatants containing the TNV mAbs were used to assay for the ability of the mAbs to block binding of  $^{125}\text{I}$ -labeled TNF $\alpha$  to the recombinant TNF receptor fusion protein, p55-sf2 (Scallon et al. (1995) *Cytokine* 7:759-770). 50 :1 of p55-sf2 at 0.5 10 :g/ml in PBS was added to Optiplates to coat the wells during a one-hour incubation at 37°C. Serial dilutions of the eight TNV cell supernatants were prepared in 96-well round-bottom plates using PBS/ 0.1% BSA as diluent. Cell supernatant containing anti-IL-18 mAb was included as a negative control and the same anti-IL-18 supernatant spiked with cA2 (anti-TNF chimeric antibody, Remicade, US patent No. 5,770,198, entirely incorporated herein by 15 reference) was included as a positive control.  $^{125}\text{I}$ -labeled TNF $\alpha$  (58 :Ci/:g, D. Shealy) was added to 100 :1 of cell supernatants to have a final TNF $\alpha$  concentration of 5 ng/ml. The mixture was preincubated for one hour at RT. The coated Optiplates were washed to remove unbound p55-sf2 and 50 :1 of the  $^{125}\text{I}$ -TNF $\alpha$ /cell supernatant mixture was transferred to the Optiplates. After 2 hrs at RT, Optiplates were washed three times with PBS-Tween. 100 :1 of 20 Microscint-20 was added and the cpm bound determined using the TopCount gamma counter.

#### Amplification of V Genes and DNA Sequence Analysis

Hybridoma cells were washed once in PBS before addition of TRIZOL reagent for RNA preparation. Between  $7 \times 10^6$  and  $1.7 \times 10^7$  cells were resuspended in 1 ml TRIZOL. Tubes were shaken vigorously after addition of 200  $\mu\text{l}$  of chloroform. Samples were 25 centrifuged at 4°C for 10 minutes. The aqueous phase was transferred to a fresh microfuge tube and an equal volume of isopropanol was added. Tubes were shaken vigorously and allowed to incubate at room temperature for 10 minutes. Samples were then centrifuged at 4°C for 10 minutes. The pellets were washed once with 1 ml of 70% ethanol and dried briefly in a vacuum dryer. The RNA pellets were resuspended with 40  $\mu\text{l}$  of DEPC-treated water. The 30 quality of the RNA preparations was determined by fractionating 0.5  $\mu\text{l}$  in a 1% agarose gel. The RNA was stored in a -80°C freezer until used.

To prepare heavy and light chain cDNAs, mixtures were prepared that included 3  $\mu\text{l}$  of RNA and 1  $\mu\text{g}$  of either oligonucleotide 119 (heavy chain) or oligonucleotide 117 (light chain)

(see Table 1) in a volume of 11.5  $\mu$ l. The mixture was incubated at 70°C for 10 minutes in a water bath and then chilled on ice for 10 minutes. A separate mixture was prepared that was made up of 2.5  $\mu$ l of 10X reverse transcriptase buffer, 10  $\mu$ l of 2.5 mM dNTPs, 1  $\mu$ l of reverse transcriptase (20 units), and 0.4  $\mu$ l of ribonuclease inhibitor RNasin (1 unit). 13.5  $\mu$ l of this 5 mixture was added to the 11.5  $\mu$ l of the chilled RNA/oligonucleotide mixture and the reaction incubated for 40 minutes at 42°C. The cDNA synthesis reaction was then stored in a -20°C freezer until used.

The unpurified heavy and light chain cDNAs were used as templates to PCR-amplify the variable region coding sequences. Five oligonucleotide pairs (366/354, 367/354, 368/354, 10 369/354, and 370/354, Table 1) were simultaneously tested for their ability to prime amplification of the heavy chain DNA. Two oligonucleotide pairs (362/208 and 363/208) were simultaneously tested for their ability to prime amplification of the light chain DNA. PCR reactions were carried out using 2 units of PLATINUM™ high fidelity (HIFI) Taq DNA polymerase in a total volume of 50  $\mu$ l: Each reaction included 2  $\mu$ l of a cDNA reaction, 10 15 pmoles of each oligonucleotide, 0.2 mM dNTPs, 5  $\mu$ l of 10 X HIFI Buffer, and 2 mM magnesium sulfate. The thermal cycler program was 95°C for 5 minutes followed by 30 cycles of (94°C for 30 seconds, 62°C for 30 seconds, 68°C for 1.5 minutes). There was then a final incubation at 68°C for 10 minutes.

To prepare the PCR products for direct DNA sequencing, they were purified using the 20 QIAquick™ PCR Purification Kit according to the manufacturer's protocol. The DNA was eluted from the spin column using 50  $\mu$ l of sterile water and then dried down to a volume of 10  $\mu$ l using a vacuum dryer. DNA sequencing reactions were then set up with 1  $\mu$ l of purified PCR product, 10  $\mu$ M oligonucleotide primer, 4  $\mu$ l BigDye Terminator™ ready reaction mix, and 14  $\mu$ l sterile water for a total volume of 20  $\mu$ l. Heavy chain PCR products made with 25 oligonucleotide pair 367/354 were sequenced with oligonucleotide primers 159 and 360. Light chain PCR products made with oligonucleotide pair 363/208 were sequenced with oligonucleotides 34 and 163. The thermal cycler program for sequencing was 25 cycles of (96°C for 30 seconds, 50°C for 15 seconds, 60°C for 4 minutes) followed by overnight at 4°C. The reaction products were fractionated through a polyacrylamide gel and detected using an 30 ABI 377 DNA Sequencer.

#### Site-directed Mutagenesis to Change an Amino Acid

A single nucleotide in the TNV148 heavy chain variable region DNA sequence was changed in order to replace Pro<sup>75</sup> with a Serine residue in the TNV148 mAb. Complimentary oligonucleotides, 399 and 400 (Table 1), were designed and ordered to make this change using

**MISSING AT THE TIME OF PUBLICATION**

unique BsiWI cloning site just upstream of the translation initiation site, following the manufacturer's protocol. The resulting plasmid was termed p1747. To introduce a BstBI site at the 3' end of the variable region, a 5' oligonucleotide primer was designed with SalI and BstBI sites. This primer was used with the pUC reverse primer to amplify a 2.75 kb fragment 5 from p1747. This fragment was then cloned back into the naturally-occurring SalI site in the 12B75 variable region and a HindIII site, thereby introducing the unique BstB1 site. The resulting intermediate vector, designated p1750, could accept variable region fragments with BsiWI and BstBI ends. To prepare a version of heavy chain vector in which the constant region also derived from the 12B75 gene, the BamHI-HindIII insert in p1750 was transferred 10 to pBR322 in order to have an EcoRI site downstream of the HindIII site. The resulting plasmid, p1768, was then digested with HindIII and EcoRI and ligated to a 5.7 kb HindIII-EcoRI fragment from p1744, a subclone derived by cloning the large BamHI-BamHI fragment from p1560 into pBC. The resulting plasmid, p1784, was then used as vector for the TNV Ab cDNA fragments with BsiWI and BstBI ends. Additional work was done to prepare 15 expression vectors, p1788 and p1798, which include the IgG1 constant region from the 12B75 gene and differ from each other by how much of the 12B75 heavy chain J-C intron they contain.

To modify the 12B75 light chain gene in plasmid p1558, a 5.7 kb SalI/AflII fragment containing the 12B75 promoter and variable region was transferred from p1558 into the 20 XhoI/AflII sites of plasmid L28. This new plasmid, p1745, provided a smaller template for the mutagenesis step. Oligonucleotides (C340salI and C340sal2) were used to introduce a unique SalI restriction site at the 5' end of the variable region by QuikChange™ mutagenesis. The resulting intermediate vector, p1746, had unique SalI and AflII restriction sites into which variable region fragments could be cloned. Any variable region fragment cloned into p1746 25 would preferably be joined with the 3' half of the light chain gene. To prepare a restriction fragment from the 3' half of the 12B75 light chain gene that could be used for this purpose, oligonucleotides BAHN-1 and BAHN-2 were annealed to each other to form a double-stranded linker containing the restriction sites BsiW1, AflII, HindII, and NotI and which contained ends that could be ligated into KpnI and SacI sites. This linker was cloned between the KpnI and 30 SacI sites of pBC to give plasmid p1757. A 7.1 kb fragment containing the 12B75 light chain constant region, generated by digesting p1558 with AflII, then partially digesting with HindIII, was cloned between the AflII and HindII sites of p1757 to yield p1762. This new plasmid contained unique sites for BsiWI and AflII into which the BsiWI/AflII fragment containing the promoter and variable regions could be transferred uniting the two halves of the gene.

35 **cDNA Cloning and Assembly of Expression Plasmids**

All RT-PCR reactions (see above) were treated with Klenow enzyme to further fill in the DNA ends. Heavy chain PCR fragments were digested with restriction enzymes BsiWI and BstBI and then cloned between the BsiWI and BstBI sites of plasmid L28 (L28 used because the 12B75-based intermediate vector p1750 had not been prepared yet). DNA sequence analysis of the cloned inserts showed that the resulting constructs were correct and that there were no errors introduced during PCR amplifications. The assigned identification numbers for these L28 plasmid constructs (for TNV14, TNV15, TNV148, TNV148B, and TNV196) are shown in Table 2.

The BsiWI/BstBI inserts for TNV14, TNV148, and TNV148B heavy chains were transferred from the L28 vector to the newly prepared intermediate vector, p1750. The assigned identification numbers for these intermediate plasmids are shown in Table 2. This cloning step and subsequent steps were not done for TNV15 and TNV196. The variable regions were then transferred into two different human IgG1 expression vectors. Restriction enzymes EcoRI and HindIII were used to transfer the variable regions into Centocor's previously-used IgG1 vector, p104. The resulting expression plasmids, which encode an IgG1 of the Gm(f+) allotype, were designated p1781 (TNV14), p1782 (TNV148), and p1783 (TNV148B) (see Table 2). The variable regions were also cloned upstream of the IgG1 constant region derived from the 12B75 (GenPharm) gene. Those expression plasmids, which encode an IgG1 of the G1m(z) allotype, are also listed in Table 2.

**Table 2. Plasmid identification numbers for various heavy and light chain plasmids.**  
The L28 vector or pBC vector represents the initial Ab cDNA clone. The inserts in those plasmids were transferred to an incomplete 12B75-based vector to make the intermediate plasmids. One additional transfer step resulted in the final expression plasmids that were either introduced into cells after being linearized or used to purify the mAb gene inserts prior to cell transfection. (ND) = not done.

| <u>mAb</u>          | L28 vector | Intermediate      | Gm(f+)            | G1m(z)            |
|---------------------|------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
|                     |            |                   | Expression        | Expression        |
|                     |            | <u>Plasmid ID</u> | <u>Plasmid ID</u> | <u>Plasmid ID</u> |
| <b>Heavy Chains</b> |            |                   |                   |                   |
| TNV14               | p1751      | p1777             | p1781             | p1786             |
| TNV15               | p1752      | (ND)              | (ND)              | (ND)              |
| TNV148 p1753        | p1778      | p1782             | p1787             |                   |
| TNV148B p1760       | p1779      | p1783             | p1788             |                   |
| TNV196 p1754        | (ND)       | (ND)              | (ND)              |                   |

|                     |        | pBC vector<br><u>Plasmid ID</u> | Intermediate<br><u>Plasmid ID</u> | Expression<br><u>Plasmid ID</u> |
|---------------------|--------|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>Light Chains</i> |        |                                 |                                   |                                 |
| 5                   | TNV14  | p1748                           | p1755                             | p1775                           |
|                     | TNV15  | p1748                           | p1755                             | p1775                           |
|                     | TNV148 | p1749                           | p1756                             | p1776                           |
|                     | TNV196 | p1749                           | p1756                             | p1776                           |

- 10 Light chain PCR products were digested with restriction enzymes SalI and SacII and then cloned between the SalI and SacII sites of plasmid pBC. The two different light chain versions, which differed by one amino acid, were designated p1748 and p1749 (Table 2). DNA sequence analysis confirmed that these constructs had the correct sequences. The SalI/AflII fragments in p1748 and p1749 were then cloned between the SalI and AflII sites of
- 15 intermediate vector p1746 to make p1755 and p1756, respectively. These 5' halves of the light chain genes were then joined to the 3' halves of the gene by transferring the BsiWI/AflII fragments from p1755 and p1756 to the newly prepared construct p1762 to make the final expression plasmids p1775 and p1776, respectively (Table 2).

#### **Cell Transfections, Screening, and Subcloning**

- 20 A total of 15 transfections of mouse myeloma cells were performed with the various TNV expression plasmids (see Table 3 in the Results and Discussion section). These transfections were distinguished by whether (1) the host cells were Sp2/0 or 653; (2) the heavy chain constant region was encoded by Centocor's previous IgG1 vector or the 12B75 heavy chain constant region; (3) the mAb was TNV148B, TNV148, TNV14, or a new HC/LC combination; (4) whether the DNA was linearized plasmid or purified Ab gene insert; and (5) the presence or absence of the complete J-C intron sequence in the heavy chain gene. In addition, several of the transfections were repeated to increase the likelihood that a large number of clones could be screened.

- Sp2/0 cells and 653 cells were each transfected with a mixture of heavy and light chain DNA (8-12 :g each) by electroporation under standard conditions as previously described (Knight DM et al. (1993) *Molecular Immunology* 30:1443-1453). For transfection numbers 1, 2, 3, and 16, the appropriate expression plasmids were linearized by digestion with a restriction enzyme prior to transfection. For example, SalI and NotI restriction enzymes were used to linearize TNV148B heavy chain plasmid p1783 and light chain plasmid p1776, respectively.
- 35 For the remaining transfections, DNA inserts that contained only the mAb gene were

separated from the plasmid vector by digesting heavy chain plasmids with BamHI and light chain plasmids with BsiWI and NotI. The mAb gene inserts were then purified by agarose gel electrophoresis and Qiex purification resins. Cells transfected with purified gene inserts were simultaneously transfected with 3-5 :g of PstI-linearized pSV2gpt plasmid (p13) as a source of 5 selectable marker. Following electroporation, cells were seeded in 96-well tissue culture dishes in IMDM, 15% FBS, 2 mM glutamine and incubated at 37°C in a 5% CO<sub>2</sub> incubator. Two days later, an equal volume of IMDM, 5% FBS, 2mM glutamine, 2 X MHX selection (1 X MHX = 0.5 :g/ml mycophenolic acid, 2.5 :g/ml hypoxanthine, 50 :g/ml xanthine) was added and the plates incubated for an additional 2 to 3 weeks while colonies formed.

10

Cell supernatants collected from wells with colonies were assayed for human IgG by ELISA as described. In brief, varying dilutions of the cell supernatants were incubated in 96-well EIA plates coated with polyclonal goat anti-human IgG Fc fragment and then bound human IgG was detected using Alkaline Phosphatase-conjugated goat anti-human IgG(H+L) 15 and the appropriate color substrates. Standard curves, which used as standard the same purified mAb that was being measured in the cell supernatants, were included on each EIA plate to enable quantitation of the human IgG in the supernatants. Cells in those colonies that appeared to be producing the most human IgG were passaged into 24-well plates for additional production determinations in spent cultures and the highest-producing parental clones were 20 subsequently identified.

The highest-producing parental clones were subcloned to identify higher-producing subclones and to prepare a more homogenous cell line. 96-well tissue culture plates were seeded with one cell per well or four cells per well in of IMDM, 5% FBS, 2mM glutamine, 1 X MHX and incubated at 37°C in a 5% CO<sub>2</sub> incubator for 12 to 20 days until colonies were 25 apparent. Cell supernatants were collected from wells that contained one colony per well and analyzed by ELISA as described above. Selected colonies were passaged to 24-well plates and the cultures allowed to go spent before identifying the highest-producing subclones by quantitating the human IgG levels in their supernatants. This process was repeated when selected first-round subclones were subjected to a second round of subcloning. The best 30 second-round subclones were selected as the cell lines for development.

#### Characterization of Cell Subclones

The best second-round subclones were chosen and growth curves performed to evaluate mAb production levels and cell growth characteristics. T75 flasks were seeded with 1 X 10<sup>5</sup> cells/ml in 30 ml IMDM, 5% FBS, 2 mM glutamine, and 1X MHX (or serum-free

media). Aliquots of 300  $\mu$ l were taken at 24 hr intervals and live cell density determined. The analyses continued until the number of live cells was less than 1 X  $10^5$  cells/ml. The collected aliquots of cell supernatants were assayed for the concentration of antibody present. ELISA assays were performed using as standard rTNV148B or rTNV14 JG92399. Samples were 5 incubated for 1 hour on ELISA plates coated with polyclonal goat anti-human IgG Fc and bound mAb detected with Alkaline Phosphatase-conjugated goat anti-human IgG(H+L) at a 1:1000 dilution.

A different growth curve analysis was also done for two cell lines for the purpose of comparing growth rates in the presence of varying amounts of MHX selection. Cell lines 10 C466A and C466B were thawed into MHX-free media (IMDM, 5% FBS, 2 mM glutamine) and cultured for two additional days. Both cell cultures were then divided into three cultures that contained either no MHX, 0.2X MHX, or 1X MHX (1X MHX = 0.5 :g/ml mycophenolic acid, 2.5 :g/ml hypoxanthine, 50 :g/ml xanthine). One day later, fresh T75 flasks were seeded with the cultures at a starting density of 1 X  $10^5$  cells/ml and cells counted at 24 hour intervals 15 for one week. Aliquots for mAb production were not collected. Doubling times were calculated for these samples using the formula provided in SOP PD32.025.

Additional studies were performed to evaluate stability of mAb production over time. Cultures were grown in 24-well plates in IMDM, 5% FBS, 2 mM glutamine, either with or without MHX selection. Cultures were split into fresh cultures whenever they became 20 confluent and the older culture was then allowed to go spent. At this time, an aliquot of supernatant was taken and stored at 4°C. Aliquots were taken over a 55-78 day period. At the end of this period, supernatants were tested for amount of antibody present by the anti-human IgG Fc ELISA as outlined above.

### Results and Discussion

#### 25 Inhibition of TNF binding to Recombinant Receptor

A simple binding assay was done to determine whether the eight TNV mAbs contained in hybridoma cell supernatant were capable of blocking TNF $\alpha$  binding to receptor. The concentrations of the TNV mAbs in their respective cell supernatants were first determined by standard ELISA analysis for human IgG. A recombinant p55 TNF receptor/IgG fusion protein, 30 p55-sf2, was then coated on EIA plates and  $^{125}$ I-labeled TNF $\alpha$  allowed to bind to the p55 receptor in the presence of varying amounts of TNV mAbs. As shown in Figure 1, all but one (TNV122) of the eight TNV mAbs efficiently blocked TNF $\alpha$  binding to p55 receptor. In fact, the TNV mAbs appeared to be more effective at inhibiting TNF $\alpha$  binding than cA2 positive control mAb that had been spiked into negative control hybridoma supernatant. These results

were interpreted as indicating that it was highly likely that the TNV mAbs would block TNF $\alpha$  bioactivity in cell-based assays and *in vivo* and therefore additional analyses were warranted.

#### DNA Sequence Analysis

##### Confirmation that the RNAs Encode Human mAbs

5 As a first step in characterizing the seven TNV mAbs (TNV14, TNV15, TNV32, TNV86, TNV118, TNV148, and TNV196) that showed TNF $\alpha$ -blocking activity in the receptor binding assay, total RNA was isolated from the seven hybridoma cell lines that produce these mAbs. Each RNA sample was then used to prepare human antibody heavy or light chain cDNA that included the complete signal sequence, the complete variable region  
10 sequence, and part of the constant region sequence for each mAb. These cDNA products were then amplified in PCR reactions and the PCR-amplified DNA was directly sequenced without first cloning the fragments. The heavy chain cDNAs sequenced were >90% identical to one of the five human germline genes present in the mice, DP-46 (Figure 2). Similarly, the light chain cDNAs sequenced were either 100% or 98% identical to one of the human germline  
15 genes present in the mice (Figure 3). These sequence results confirmed that the RNA molecules that were transcribed into cDNA and sequenced encoded human antibody heavy chains and human antibody light chains. It should be noted that, because the variable regions were PCR-amplified using oligonucleotides that map to the 5' end of the signal sequence coding sequence, the first few amino acids of the signal sequence may not be the actual  
20 sequence of the original TNV translation products but they do represent the actual sequences of the recombinant TNV mAbs.

##### Unique Neutralizing mAbs

Analyses of the cDNA sequences for the entire variable regions of both heavy and light chains for each mAb revealed that TNV32 is identical to TNV15, TNV118 is identical to  
25 TNV14, and TNV86 is identical to TNV148. The results of the receptor binding assay were consistent with the DNA sequence analyses, i.e. both TNV86 and TNV148 were approximately 4-fold better than both TNV118 and TNV14 at blocking TNF binding. Subsequent work was therefore focused on only the four unique TNV mAbs, TNV14, TNV15, TNV148, and TNV196.

##### 30 Relatedness of the Four mAbs

The DNA sequence results revealed that the genes encoding the heavy chains of the four TNV mAbs were all highly homologous to each other and appear to have all derived from the same germline gene, DP-46 (Figure 2). In addition, because each of the heavy chain CDR3 sequences are so similar and of the same length, and because they all use the J6 exon, they

apparently arose from a single VDJ gene rearrangement event that was then followed by somatic changes that made each mAb unique. DNA sequence analyses revealed that there were only two distinct light chain genes among the four mAbs (Figure 3). The light chain variable region coding sequences in TNV14 and TNV15 are identical to each other and to a 5 representative germline sequence of the Vg/38K family of human kappa chains. The TNV148 and TNV196 light chain coding sequences are identical to each other but differ from the germline sequence at two nucleotide positions (Figure 3).

The deduced amino acid sequences of the four mAbs revealed the relatedness of the actual mAbs. The four mAbs contain four distinct heavy chains (Figure 4) but only two 10 distinct light chains (Figure 5). Differences between the TNV mAb sequences and the germline sequences were mostly confined to CDR domains but three of the mAb heavy chains also differed from the germline sequence in the framework regions (Figure 4). Compared to the DP-46 germline-encoded Ab framework regions, TNV14 was identical, TNV15 differed by one amino acid, TNV148 differed by two amino acids, and TNV196 differed by three amino 15 acids.

#### **Cloning of cDNAs, Site-specific Mutagenesis, and Assembly of Final Expression Plasmids**

##### **Cloning of cDNAs**

Based on the DNA sequence of the PCR-amplified variable regions, new oligonucleotides were ordered to perform another round of PCR amplification for the purpose 20 of adapting the coding sequence to be cloned into expression vectors. In the case of the heavy chains, the products of this second round of PCR were digested with restriction enzymes BsiWI and BstBI and cloned into plasmid vector L28 (plasmid identification numbers shown in Table 2). In the case of the light chains, the second-round PCR products were digested with SalI and AflII and cloned into plasmid vector pBC. Individual clones were then sequenced to 25 confirm that their sequences were identical to the previous sequence obtained from direct sequencing of PCR products, which reveals the most abundant nucleotide at each position in a potentially heterogeneous population of molecules.

##### **Site-specific Mutagenesis to Change TNV148**

mAbs TNV148 and TNV196 were being consistently observed to be four-fold more 30 potent than the next best mAb (TNV14) at neutralizing TNF $\alpha$  bioactivity. However, as described above, the TNV148 and TNV196 heavy chain framework sequences differed from the germline framework sequences. A comparison of the TNV148 heavy chain sequence to other human antibodies indicated that numerous other human mAbs contained an Ile residue at

position 28 in framework 1 (counting mature sequence only) whereas the Pro residue at position 75' in framework 3 was an unusual amino acid at that position.

A similar comparison of the TNV196 heavy chain suggested that the three amino acids by which it differs from the germline sequence in framework 3 may be rare in human mAbs.

- 5 There was a possibility that these differences may render TNV148 and TNV196 immunogenic if administered to humans. Because TNV148 had only one amino acid residue of concern and this residue was believed to be unimportant for TNF $\alpha$  binding, a site-specific mutagenesis technique was used to change a single nucleotide in the TNV148 heavy chain coding sequence (in plasmid p1753) so that a germline Ser residue would be encoded in place of the Pro residue  
10 at position 75. The resulting plasmid was termed p1760 (see Table 2). The resulting gene and mAb were termed TNV148B to distinguish it from the original TNV148 gene and mAb (see Figure 5).

#### Assembly of Final Expression Plasmids

New antibody expression vectors were prepared that were based on the 12B75 heavy chain and light chain genes previously cloned as genomic fragments. Although different TNV expression plasmids were prepared (see Table 2), in each case the 5' flanking sequences, promoter, and intron enhancer derived from the respective 12B75 genes. For the light chain expression plasmids, the complete J-C intron, constant region coding sequence and 3' flanking sequence were also derived from the 12B75 light chain gene. For the heavy chain expression  
20 plasmids that resulted in the final production cell lines (p1781 and p1783, see below), the human IgG1 constant region coding sequences derived from Centocor's previously-used expression vector (p104). Importantly, the final production cell lines reported here express a different allotype (Gm(f+)) of the TNV mAbs than the original, hybridoma-derived TNV mAbs (G1m(z)). This is because the 12B75 heavy chain gene derived from the GenPharm  
25 mice encodes an Arg residue at the C-terminal end of the CH1 domain whereas Centocor's IgG1 expression vector p104 encodes a Lys residue at that position. Other heavy chain expression plasmids (e.g. p1786 and p1788) were prepared in which the J-C intron, complete constant region coding sequence and 3' flanking sequence were derived from the 12B75 heavy chain gene, but cell lines transfected with those genes were not selected as the production cell  
30 lines. Vectors were carefully designed to permit one-step cloning of future PCR-amplified V regions that would result in final expression plasmids.

PCR-amplified variable region cDNAs were transferred from L28 or pBC vectors to intermediate-stage, 12B75-based vectors that provided the promoter region and part of the J-C intron (see Table 2 for plasmid identification numbers). Restriction fragments that contained  
35 the 5' half of the antibody genes were then transferred from these intermediate-stage vectors to

the final expression vectors that provided the 3' half of the respective genes to form the final expression plasmids (see Table 2 for plasmid identification numbers).

### **Cell Transfections and Subcloning**

Expression plasmids were either linearized by restriction digest or the antibody gene inserts in each plasmid were purified away from the plasmid backbones. Sp2/0 and 653 mouse myeloma cells were transfected with the heavy and light chain DNA by electroporation. Fifteen different transfections were done, most of which were unique as defined by the Ab, specific characteristics of the Ab genes, whether the genes were on linearized whole plasmids or purified gene inserts, and the host cell line (summarized in Table 3). Cell supernatants from clones resistant to mycophenolic acid were assayed for the presence of human IgG by ELISA and quantitated using purified rTNV148B as a reference standard curve.

### **Highest-producing rTNV148B Cell Lines**

Ten of the best-producing 653 parental lines from rTNV148B transfection 2 (produced 5-10 :g/ml in spent 24-well cultures) were subcloned to screen for higher-producing cell lines and to prepare a more homogeneous cell population. Two of the subclones of the parental line 2.320, 2.320-17 and 2.320-20, produced approximately 50 :g/ml in spent 24-well cultures, which was a 5-fold increase over their parental line. A second round of subcloning of subcloned lines 2.320-17 and 2.320-20 led

**Table 3. Summary of Cell Transfections.** The identification numbers of the heavy and light chain plasmids that encode each mAb are shown. In the case of transfections done with purified mAb gene inserts, plasmid p13 (pSV2gpt) was included as a source of the gpt selectable marker. The heavy chain constant regions were encoded either by the same human IgG1 expression vector used to encode Remicade ('old') or by the constant regions contained within the 12B75 (GenPharm/Medarex) heavy chain gene ('new'). H1/L2 refers to a "novel" mAb made up of the TNV14 heavy chain and the TNV148 light chain. Plasmids p1783 and p1801 differ only by how much of the J-C intron their heavy chain genes contain. The transfection numbers, which define the first number of the generic names for cell clones, are shown on the right. The rTNV148B-producing cell lines C466 (A, B, C, D) and C467A described here derived from transfection number 2 and 1, respectively. The rTNV14-producing cell line C476A derived from transfection number 3.

| <u>mAb</u> | <u>Plasmids</u>  |               | <u>HC</u>     | <u>DNA</u> | <u>Transfection no.</u> |            |
|------------|------------------|---------------|---------------|------------|-------------------------|------------|
|            | <u>HC/LC/gpt</u> | <u>vector</u> | <u>format</u> |            | <u>Sp2/0</u>            | <u>653</u> |
| rTNV148B   | 1783/1776        | old           | linear        |            | 1                       | 2          |
| rTNV14     | 1781/1775        | old           | linear        |            | 3                       | -          |

**MISSING AT THE TIME OF PUBLICATION**

rTNV14      3.27-1      C476A      Sp2/0      19 :g/ml

---

## 5 Characterization of Subcloned Cell Lines

To more carefully characterize cell line growth characteristics and determine mAb-production levels on a larger scale, growth curves analyses were performed using T75 cultures. The results showed that each of the four C466 series of cell lines reached peak cell density between  $1.0 \times 10^6$  and  $1.25 \times 10^6$  cells/ml and maximal mAb accumulation levels of between 10 110 and 140 :g/ml (Figure 7). In contrast, the best-producing Sp2/0 subclone, C467A, reached peak cell density of  $2.0 \times 10^6$  cells/ml and maximal mAb accumulation levels of 25 :g/ml (Figure 7). A growth curve analysis was not done on the rTNV14-producing cell line, C476A.

An additional growth curve analysis was done to compare the growth rates in different concentrations of MHX selection. This comparison was prompted by recent observations that 15 C466 cells cultured in the absence of MHX seemed to be growing faster than the same cells cultured in the normal amount of MHX (1X). Because the cytotoxic concentrations of compounds such as mycophenolic acid tend

To be measured over orders of magnitude, it was considered possible that the use of a lower concentration of MHX might result in significantly faster cell doubling times without 20 sacrificing stability of mAb production. Cell lines C466A and C466B were cultured either in: no MHX, 0.2X MHX, or 1X MHX. Live cell counts were taken at 24-hour intervals for 7 days. The results did reveal an MHX concentration-dependent rate of cell growth (Figure 8). Cell line C466A showed a doubling time of 25.0 hours in 1X MHX but only 20.7 hours in no MHX. Similarly, cell line C466B showed a doubling time of 32.4 hours in 1X MHX but only 25 22.9 hours in no MHX. Importantly, the doubling times for both cell lines in 0.2X MHX were more similar to what was observed in no MHX than in 1X MHX (Figure 8). This observation raises the possibility than enhanced cell performance in bioreactors, for which doubling times are an important parameter, could be realized by using less MHX. However, although stability test results (see below) suggest that cell line C466D is capable of stably producing rTNV148B 30 for at least 60 days even with no MHX present, the stability test also showed higher mAb production levels when the cells were cultured in the presence of MHX compared to the absence of MHX.

To evaluate mAb production from the various cell lines over a period of approximately 60 days, stability tests were performed on cultures that either contained, or did not contain,

MHX selection. Not all of the cell lines maintained high mAb production. After just two weeks of culture, clone C466A was producing approximately 45% less than at the beginning of the study. Production from clone C466B also appeared to drop significantly. However, clones C466C and C466D maintained fairly stable production, with C466D showing the highest absolute production levels (Figure 9).

### 5 Conclusion

From an initial panel of eight human mAbs against human TNF $\alpha$ , TNV148B was selected as preferred based on several criteria that included protein sequence and TNF neutralization potency, as well as TNV14. Cell lines were prepared that produce greater than 10 100 :g/ml of rTNV148B and 19 :g/ml rTNV14.

### 10 Example 4: Arthritic Mice Study using Anti-TNF Antibodies and Controls Using Single Bolus Injection

At approximately 4 weeks of age the Tg197 study mice were assigned, based on gender and body weight, to one of 9 treatment groups and treated with a single intraperitoneal 15 bolus dose of Dulbecco's PBS (D-PBS) or an anti-TNF antibody of the present invention (TNV14, TNV148 or TNV196) at either 1 mg/kg or 10 mg/kg.

RESULTS: When the weights were analyzed as a change from pre-dose, the animals treated with 10 mg/kg cA2 showed consistently higher weight gain than the D-PBS-treated animals throughout the study. This weight gain was significant at weeks 3-7. The animals 20 treated with 10 mg/kg TNV148 also achieved significant weight gain at week 7 of the study. (See Figure 10).

Figures 11A-C represent the progression of disease severity based on the arthritic index. The 10 mg/kg cA2-treated group's arthritic index was lower than the D-PBS control group starting at week 3 and continuing throughout the remainder of the study (week 7). The 25 animals treated with 1 mg/kg TNV14 and the animals treated with 1 mg/kg cA2 failed to show significant reduction in AI after week 3 when compared to the D-PBS-treated Group. There were no significant differences between the 10 mg/kg treatment groups when each was compared to the others of similar dose (10 mg/kg cA2 compared to 10 mg/kg TNV14, 148 and 196). When the 1 mg/kg treatment groups were compared, the 1 mg/kg TNV148 showed a 30 significantly lower AI than 1 mg/kg cA2 at 3, 4 and 7 weeks. The 1 mg/kg TNV148 was also significantly lower than the 1 mg/kg TNV14-treated Group at 3 and 4 weeks. Although TNV196 showed significant reduction in AI up to week 6 of the study (when compared to the D-PBS-treated Group), TNV148 was the only 1 mg/kg treatment that remained significant at the conclusion of the study.

**Example 5: Arthritic Mice Study using Anti-TNF Antibodies and Controls as Multiple Bolus Doses**

At approximately 4 weeks of age the Tg197 study mice were assigned, based on body weight, to one of 8 treatment groups and treated with a intraperitoneal bolus dose of control article (D-PBS) or antibody (TNV14, TNV148) at 3 mg/kg (week 0). Injections were repeated in all animals at weeks 1, 2, 3, and 4. Groups 1-6 were evaluated for test article efficacy. Serum samples, obtained from animals in Groups 7 and 8 were evaluated for immune response induction and pharmacokinetic clearance of TNV14 or TNV148 at weeks 2, 3 and 4.

**RESULTS:** No significant differences were noted when the weights were analyzed as a change from pre-dose. The animals treated with 10 mg/kg cA2 showed consistently higher weight gain than the D-PBS-treated animals throughout the study. (See Figure 12).

Figures 13A-C represent the progression of disease severity based on the arthritic index. The 10 mg/kg cA2-treated group's arthritic index was significantly lower than the D-PBS control group starting at week 2 and continuing throughout the remainder of the study (week 5). The animals treated with 1 mg/kg or 3 mg/kg of cA2 and the animals treated with 3 mg/kg TNV14 failed to achieve any significant reduction in AI at any time throughout the study when compared to the d-PBS control group. The animals treated with 3 mg/kg TNV148 showed a significant reduction when compared to the d-PBS-treated group starting at week 3 and continuing through week 5. The 10 mg/kg cA2-treated animals showed a significant reduction in AI when compared to both the lower doses (1 mg/kg and 3 mg/kg) of cA2 at weeks 4 and 5 of the study and was also significantly lower than the TNV14-treated animals at weeks 3-5. Although there appeared to be no significant differences between any of the 3mg/kg treatment groups, the AI for the animals treated with 3 mg/kg TNV14 were significantly higher at some time points than the 10 mg/kg whereas the animals treated with TNV148 were not significantly different from the animals treated with 10 mg/kg of cA2.

**Example 6: Arthritic Mice Study using Anti-TNF Antibodies and Controls as Single Intraperitoneal Bolus Dose**

At approximately 4 weeks of age the Tg197 study mice were assigned, based on gender and body weight, to one of 6 treatment groups and treated with a single intraperitoneal bolus dose of antibody (cA2, or TNV148) at either 3 mg/kg or 5 mg/kg. This study utilized the D-PBS and 10 mg/kg cA2 control Groups.

When the weights were analyzed as a change from pre-dose, all treatments achieved similar weight gains. The animals treated with either 3 or 5 mg/kg TNV148 or 5 mg/kg cA2 gained a significant amount of weight early in the study (at weeks 2 and 3). Only the animals

treated with TNV148 maintained significant weight gain in the later time points. Both the 3 and 5 mg/kg TNV148-treated animals showed significance at 7 weeks and the 3 mg/kg TNV148 animals were still significantly elevated at 8 weeks post injection. (See Figure 14).

- Figure 15 represents the progression of disease severity based on the arthritic index.
- 5 All treatment groups showed some protection at the earlier time points, with the 5 mg/kg cA2 and the 5 mg/kg TNV148 showing significant reductions in AI at weeks 1-3 and all treatment groups showing a significant reduction at week 2. Later in the study the animals treated with 5 mg/kg cA2 showed some protection, with significant reductions at weeks 4, 6 and 7. The low dose (3 mg/kg) of both the cA2 and the TNV148 showed significant reductions at 6 and all  
10 treatment groups showed significant reductions at week 7. None of the treatment groups were able to maintain a significant reduction at the conclusion of the study (week 8). There were no significant differences between any of the treatment groups (excluding the saline control group) at any time point.

**Example 7: Arthritic Mice Study using Anti-TNF Antibodies and Controls as  
15 Single Intraperitoneal Bolus Dose Between Anti-TNF Antibody and Modified Anti-TNF  
Antibody**

To compare the efficacy of a single intraperitoneal dose of TNV148 (derived from hybridoma cells) and rTNV148B (derived from transfected cells). At approximately 4 weeks of age the Tg197 study mice were assigned, based on gender and body weight, to one of 9  
20 treatment groups and treated with a single intraperitoneal bolus dose of Dulbecco S PBS (D-PBS) or antibody (TNV148, rTNV148B) at 1 mg/kg.

When the weights were analyzed as a change from pre-dose, the animals treated with 10 mg/kg cA2 showed a consistently higher weight gain than the D-PBS-treated animals throughout the study. This weight gain was significant at weeks 1 and weeks 3-8. The animals  
25 treated with 1 mg/kg TNV148 also achieved significant weight gain at weeks 5, 6 and 8 of the study. (See Figure 16).

Figure 17 represents the progression of disease severity based on the arthritic index. The 10 mg/kg cA2-treated group's arthritic index was lower than the D-PBS control group starting at week 4 and continuing throughout the remainder of the study (week 8). Both of the  
30 TNV148-treated Groups and the 1 mg/kg cA2-treated Group showed a significant reduction in AI at week 4. Although a previous study (P-099-017) showed that TNV148 was slightly more effective at reducing the Arthritic Index following a single 1 mg/kg intraperitoneal bolus, this study showed that the AI from both versions of the TNV antibody-treated groups was slightly higher. Although (with the exception of week 6) the 1 mg/kg cA2-treated Group was not

significantly increased when compared to the 10 mg/kg cA2 group and the TNV148-treated Groups were significantly higher at weeks 7 and 8, there were no significant differences in AI between the 1 mg/kg cA2, 1 mg/kg TNV148 and 1 mg/kg TNV148B at any point in the study.

5

It will be clear that the invention can be practiced otherwise than as particularly described in the foregoing description and examples.

Numerous modifications and variations of the present invention are possible in light of the above teachings and, therefore, are within the scope of the appended claims.

10

## WHAT IS CLAIMED IS:

- 1 . At least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody, comprising at least one variable region comprising SEQ ID NO:7 or 8.
- 2 . An TNF antibody according to claim 1, wherein said antibody binds TNF with an affinity of at least one selected from at least  $10^{-9}$  M, at least  $10^{-10}$  M, at least  $10^{-11}$  M, or at least  $10^{-12}$  M.
- 3 . An TNF antibody according to claim 1, wherein said antibody substantially neutralizes at least one activity of at least one TNF protein.
- 4 . An isolated nucleic acid encoding at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody having at least one variable region comprising SEQ ID NO:7 or 8.
- 5 . An isolated nucleic acid vector comprising an isolated nucleic acid according to claim 4.
- 6 . A prokaryotic or eukaryotic host cell comprising an isolated nucleic acid according to claim 5.
- 7 . A host cell according to claim 6, wherein said host cell is at least one selected from COS-1, COS-7, HEK293, BHK21, CHO, BSC-1, Hep G2, 653, SP2/0, 293, HeLa, myeloma, or lymphoma cells, or any derivative, immortalized or transformed cell thereof.
- 8 . A method for producing at least one anti-TNF antibody, comprising translating a nucleic acid according to claim 4 under conditions in vitro, in vivo or in situ, such that the TNF antibody is expressed in detectable or recoverable amounts.
- 9 . A composition comprising at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody having at least one variable region comprising SEQ ID NO:7 or 8, and at least one pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or diluent.
- 10 . A composition according to claim 9, further comprising at least one composition comprising an effective amount of at least one compound or protein selected from at least one of a detectable label or reporter, a TNF antagonist, an antirheumatic, a muscle relaxant, a narcotic, a non-steroid anti-inflammatory drug (NSAID), an analgesic, an anesthetic, a sedative, a local anesthetic, a neuromuscular blocker, an antimicrobial, an antipsoriatic, a corticosteroid, an anabolic steroid, an erythropoietin, an immunization, an immunoglobulin, an immunosuppressive, a growth hormone, a hormone replacement drug, a radiopharmaceutical, an antidepressant, an antipsychotic, a stimulant, an asthma medication, a beta agonist, an inhaled steroid, an epinephrine or analog, a cytokine, or a cytokine antagonist.
- 11 . An anti-idiotype antibody or fragment that specifically binds at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody having at least one variable region comprising SEQ ID NO:7 or 8.

12. A method for diagnosing or treating a TNF related condition in a cell, tissue, organ or animal, comprising

(a) contacting or administering a composition comprising an effective amount of at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody having at least one variable region

5 comprising SEQ ID NO:7 or 8, with, or to, said cell, tissue, organ or animal.

13. A method according to claim 12, wherein said effective amount is 0.001-50 mg/kilogram of said cells, tissue, organ or animal.

14. A method according to claim 12, wherein said contacting or said administrating is by at least one mode selected from parenteral, subcutaneous, intramuscular, 10 intravenous, intrarticular, intrabronchial, intraabdominal, intracapsular, intracartilaginous, intracavitory, intracelial, intracelebellar, intracerebroventricular, intracolic, intracervical, intragastric, intrahepatic, intramyocardial, intraosteal, intrapelvic, intrapericardiac, intraperitoneal, intrapleural, intraprostatic, intrapulmonary, intrarectal, intrarenal, intraretinal, 15 intraspinal, intrasynovial, intrathoracic, intrauterine, intravesical, bolus, vaginal, rectal, buccal, sublingual, intranasal, or transdermal.

15. A method according to claim 12, further comprising administering, prior, concurrently or after said (a) contacting or administering, at least one composition comprising an effective amount of at least one compound or protein selected from at least one of a detectable label or reporter, a TNF antagonist, an antirheumatic, a muscle relaxant, a 20 narcotic, a non-steroid anti-inflammatory drug (NSAID), an analgesic, an anesthetic, a sedative, a local anesthetic, a neuromuscular blocker, an antimicrobial, an antipsoriatic, a corticosteriod, an anabolic steroid, an erythropoietin, an immunization, an immunoglobulin, an immuno suppressive, a growth hormone, a hormone replacement drug, a radiopharmaceutical, an antidepressant, an antipsychotic, a stimulant, an asthma medication, a beta agonist, an 25 inhaled steroid, an epinephrine or analog, a cytokine, or a cytokine antagonist.

16. A medical device, comprising at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody having at least one variable region comprising SEQ ID NO:7 or 8, wherein said device is suitable to contacting or administering said at least one anti-TNF antibody by at least one mode selected from parenteral, subcutaneous, intramuscular, intravenous, intrarticular, 30 intrabronchial, intraabdominal, intracapsular, intracartilaginous, intracavitory, intracelial, intracelebellar, intracerebroventricular, intracolic, intracervical, intragastric, intrahepatic, intramyocardial, intraosteal, intrapelvic, intrapericardiac, intraperitoneal, intrapleural, intraprostatic, intrapulmonary, intrarectal, intrarenal, intraretinal, intraspinal, intrasynovial, intrathoracic, intrauterine, intravesical, bolus, vaginal, rectal, buccal, sublingual, intranasal, or 35 transdermal.

17. An article of manufacture for human pharmaceutical or diagnostic use, comprising packaging material and a container comprising a solution or a lyophilized form of at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody having at least one variable region comprising SEQ ID NO:7 or 8.

5 18. The article of manufacture of claim 17, wherein said container is a component of a parenteral, subcutaneous, intramuscular, intravenous, intrarticular, intrabronchial, intraabdominal, intracapsular, intracartilaginous, intracavitory, intracelial, intracelebellar, intracerebroventricular, intracolic, intracervical, intragastric, intrahepatic, intramyocardial, intraosteal, intrapelvic, intrapericardiac, intraperitoneal, intrapleural, 10 intraprostatic, intrapulmonary, intrarectal, intrarenal, intraretinal, intraspinal, intrasynovial, intrathoracic, intrauterine, intravesical, bolus, vaginal, rectal, buccal, sublingual, intranasal, or transdermal delivery device or system.

15 19. A method for producing at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody having at least one variable region comprising SEQ ID NO:7 or 8, comprising providing a host cell or transgenic animal or transgenic plant or plant cell capable of expressing in recoverable amounts said antibody.

20. At least one anti-TNF antibody produced by a method according to claim 19.

21. At least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody, comprising either (i) all of the heavy chain complementarity determining regions (CDR) amino acid sequences of SEQ ID NOS:1, 2, and 3; or (ii) all of the light chain CDR amino acids sequences of SEQ ID NOS:4, 5, and 6.

25 22. An TNF antibody according to claim 21, wherein said antibody binds TNF with an affinity of at least one selected from at least  $10^{-9}$  M, at least  $10^{-10}$  M, at least  $10^{-11}$  M, or at least  $10^{-12}$  M.

23. An TNF antibody according to claim 21, wherein said antibody substantially neutralizes at least one activity of at least one TNF protein.

30 24. An isolated nucleic acid encoding at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody either (i) all of the heavy chain CDR amino acid sequences of SEQ ID NOS:1, 2, and 3; or (ii) all of the light chain CDR amino acids sequences of SEQ ID NOS:4, 5, and 6.

25. An isolated nucleic acid vector comprising an isolated nucleic acid according to claim 4.

35 26. A prokaryotic or eukaryotic host cell comprising an isolated nucleic acid according to claim 25.

27. A host cell according to claim 26, wherein said host cell is at least one selected from COS-1, COS-7, HEK293, BHK21, CHO, BSC-1, Hep G2, 653, SP2/0, 293, HeLa, myeloma, or lymphoma cells, or any derivative, immortalized or transformed cell thereof.

5 28. A method for producing at least one anti-TNF antibody, comprising translating a nucleic acid according to claim 24 under conditions in vitro, in vivo or in situ, such that the TNF antibody is expressed in detectable or recoverable amounts.

10 29. A composition comprising at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody having either (i) all of the heavy chain CDR amino acid sequences of SEQ ID NOS:1, 2, and 3; or (ii) all of the light chain CDR amino acids sequences of SEQ ID NOS:4, 5, and 6, and at least one pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or diluent.

15 30. A composition according to claim 29, further comprising at least one composition comprising an effective amount of at least one compound or protein selected from at least one of a detectable label or reporter, a TNF antagonist, an antirheumatic, a muscle relaxant, a narcotic, a non-steroid anti-inflammatory drug (NSAID), an analgesic, an anesthetic, a sedative, a local anesthetic, a neuromuscular blocker, an antimicrobial, an antipsoriatic, a corticosteroid, an anabolic steroid, an erythropoietin, an immunization, an immunoglobulin, an immunosuppressive, a growth hormone, a hormone replacement drug, a 20 radiopharmaceutical, an antidepressant, an antipsychotic, a stimulant, an asthma medication, a beta agonist, an inhaled steroid, an epinephrine or analog, a cytokine, or a cytokine antagonist.

25 31. An anti-idiotype antibody or fragment that specifically binds at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody having either (i) all of the heavy chain CDR amino acid sequences of SEQ ID NOS:1, 2, and 3; or (ii) all of the light chain CDR amino acids sequences of SEQ ID NOS:4, 5, and 6.

32. A method for diagnosing or treating a TNF related condition in a cell, tissue, organ or animal, comprising

30 (a) contacting or administering a composition comprising an effective amount of at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody having either (i) all of the heavy chain CDR amino acid sequences of SEQ ID NOS:1, 2, and 3; or (ii) all of the light chain CDR amino acids sequences of SEQ ID NOS:4, 5, and 6, with, or to, said cell, tissue, organ or animal.

33. A method according to claim 32, wherein said effective amount is 0.001-50 mg/kilogram of said cells, tissue, organ or animal.

35 34. A method according to claim 32, wherein said contacting or said administrating is by at least one mode selected from parenteral, subcutaneous, intramuscular,

intravenous, intrarticular, intrabronchial, intraabdominal, intracapsular, intracartilaginous, intracavitory, intracelial, intracelebellar, intracerebroventricular, intracolic, intracervical, intragastric, intrahepatic, intramyocardial, intraosteal, intrapelvic, intrapericardiac, intraperitoneal, intrapleural, intraprostatic, intrapulmonary, intrarectal, intrarenal, intraretinal, 5 intraspinal, intrasynovial, intrathoracic, intrauterine, intravesical, bolus, vaginal, rectal, buccal, sublingual, intranasal, or transdermal.

35. A method according to claim 32, further comprising administering, prior, concurrently or after said (a) contacting or administering, at least one composition comprising an effective amount of at least one compound or protein selected from at least one 10 of a detectable label or reporter, a TNF antagonist, an antirheumatic, a muscle relaxant, a narcotic, a non-steroid anti-inflammatory drug (NSAID), an analgesic, an anesthetic, a sedative, a local anesthetic, a neuromuscular blocker, an antimicrobial, an antipsoriatic, a corticosteriod, an anabolic steroid, an erythropoietin, an immunization, an immunoglobulin, an immunosuppressive, a growth hormone, a hormone replacement drug, a radiopharmaceutical, 15 an antidepressant, an antipsychotic, a stimulant, an asthma medication, a beta agonist, an inhaled steroid, an epinephrine or analog, a cytokine, or a cytokine antagonist.

36. A medical device, comprising at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody having either (i) all of the heavy chain CDR amino acid sequences of SEQ ID NOS:1, 2, and 3; or (ii) all of the light chain CDR amino acids sequences of SEQ ID NOS:4, 5, 20 and 6, wherein said device is suitable to contacting or administerting said at least one anti-TNF antibody by at least one mode selected from parenteral, subcutaneous, intramuscular, intravenous, intrarticular, intrabronchial, intraabdominal, intracapsular, intracartilaginous, intracavitory, intracelial, intracelebellar, intracerebroventricular, intracolic, intracervical, intragastric, intrahepatic, intramyocardial, intraosteal, intrapelvic, intrapericardiac, 25 intraperitoneal, intrapleural, intraprostatic, intrapulmonary, intrarectal, intrarenal, intraretinal, intraspinal, intrasynovial, intrathoracic, intrauterine, intravesical, bolus, vaginal, rectal, buccal, sublingual, intranasal, or transdermal.

37. An article of manufacture for human pharmaceutical or diagnostic use, comprising packaging material and a container comprising a solution or a lyophilized form of 30 at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody having either (i) all of the heavy chain CDR amino acid sequences of SEQ ID NOS:1, 2, and 3; or (ii) all of the light chain CDR amino acids sequences of SEQ ID NOS:4, 5, and 6.

38. The article of manufacture of claim 37, wherein said container is a component of a parenteral, subcutaneous, intramuscular, intravenous, intrarticular, 35 intrabronchial, intraabdominal, intracapsular, intracartilaginous, intracavitory, intracelial, intracelebellar, intracerebroventricular, intracolic, intracervical, intragastric, intrahepatic,

intramyocardial, intraosteal, intrapelvic, intrapericardiac, intraperitoneal, intrapleural, intraprostatic, intrapulmonary, intrarectal, intrarenal, intraretinal, intraspinal, intrasynovial, intrathoracic, intrauterine, intravesical, bolus, vaginal, rectal, buccal, sublingual, intranasal, or transdermal delivery device or system.

5        39. A method for producing at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody having either (i) all of the heavy chain CDR amino acid sequences of SEQ ID NOS:1, 2, and 3; or (ii) all of the light chain CDR amino acids sequences of SEQ ID NOS:4, 5, and 6, comprising providing a host cell or transgenic animal or transgenic plant or plant cell capable of expressing in recoverable amounts said antibody.

10      40. At least one anti-TNF antibody produced by a method according to claim 39.

41. At least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody, comprising at least one heavy chain or light chain CDR having the amino acid sequence of at least one of SEQ ID NOS: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6.

15      42. An TNF antibody according to claim 41, wherein said antibody binds TNF with an affinity of at least one selected from at least  $10^9$  M, at least  $10^{10}$  M, at least  $10^{11}$  M, or at least  $10^{12}$  M.

43. An TNF antibody according to claim 41, wherein said antibody substantially neutralizes at least one activity of at least one TNF protein.

20      44. An isolated nucleic acid encoding at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody having at least one heavy chain or light chain CDR having the amino acid sequence of at least one of SEQ ID NOS: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6.

45. An isolated nucleic acid vector comprising an isolated nucleic acid according to claim 44.

25      46. A prokaryotic or eukaryotic host cell comprising an isolated nucleic acid according to claim 45.

47. A host cell according to claim 46, wherein said host cell is at least one selected from COS-1, COS-7, HEK293, BHK21, CHO, BSC-1, Hep G2, 653, SP2/0, 293, HeLa, myeloma, or lymphoma cells, or any derivative, immortalized or transformed cell thereof.

30      48. A method for producing at least one anti-TNF antibody, comprising translating a nucleic acid according to claim 44 under conditions in vitro, in vivo or in situ, such that the TNF antibody is expressed in detectable or recoverable amounts.

49. A composition comprising at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody having at least one heavy chain or light chain CDR having the amino acid sequence

of at least one of SEQ ID NOS: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6, and at least one pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or diluent.

50. A composition according to claim 49, further comprising at least one composition comprising an effective amount of at least one compound or protein selected from  
5 at least one of a detectable label or reporter, a TNF antagonist, an antirheumatic, a muscle relaxant, a narcotic, a non-steroid anti-inflammatory drug (NSAID), an analgesic, an anesthetic, a sedative, a local anesthetic, a neuromuscular blocker, an antimicrobial, an antipsoriatic, a corticosteroid, an anabolic steroid, an erythropoietin, an immunization, an immunoglobulin, an immunosuppressive, a growth hormone, a hormone replacement drug, a  
10 radiopharmaceutical, an antidepressant, an antipsychotic, a stimulant, an asthma medication, a beta agonist, an inhaled steroid, an epinephrine or analog, a cytokine, or a cytokine antagonist.

51. An anti-idiotype antibody or fragment that specifically binds at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody having at least one heavy chain or light chain CDR having the amino acid sequence of at least one of SEQ ID NOS: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6.

52. A method for diagnosing or treating a TNF related condition in a cell, tissue, organ or animal, comprising

(a) contacting or administering a composition comprising an effective amount of at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody having at least one heavy chain or light chain CDR having the amino acid sequence of at least one of SEQ ID NOS: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6, with,  
20 or to, said cell, tissue, organ or animal.

53. A method according to claim 52, wherein said effective amount is 0.001-50 mg/kilogram of said cells, tissue, organ or animal.

54. A method according to claim 52, wherein said contacting or said administrating is by at least one mode selected from parenteral, subcutaneous, intramuscular, 25 intravenous, intrarticular, intrabronchial, intraabdominal, intracapsular, intracartilaginous, intracavitory, intracelial, intracelebellar, intracerebroventricular, intracolic, intracervical, intragastric, intrahepatic, intramyocardial, intraosteal, intrapelvic, intrapericardiac, intraperitoneal, intrapleural, intraprostatic, intrapulmonary, intrarectal, intrarenal, intraretinal, intraspinal, intrasynovial, intrathoracic, intrauterine, intravesical, bolus, vaginal, rectal, buccal, 30 sublingual, intranasal, or transdermal.

55. A method according to claim 52, further comprising administering, prior, concurrently or after said (a) contacting or administering, at least one composition comprising an effective amount of at least one compound or protein selected from at least one of a detectable label or reporter, a TNF antagonist, an antirheumatic, a muscle relaxant, a narcotic, a non-steroid anti-inflammatory drug (NSAID), an analgesic, an anesthetic, a 35 sedative, a local anesthetic, a neuromuscular blocker, an antimicrobial, an antipsoriatic, a

corticosteroid, an anabolic steroid, an erythropoietin, an immunization, an immunoglobulin, an immunosuppressive, a growth hormone, a hormone replacement drug, a radiopharmaceutical, an antidepressant, an antipsychotic, a stimulant, an asthma medication, a beta agonist, an inhaled steroid, an epinephrine or analog, a cytokine, or a cytokine antagonist.

5        56 . A medical device, comprising at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody having at least one heavy chain or light chain CDR having the amino acid sequence of at least one of SEQ ID NOS: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6, wherein said device is suitable to contacting or administering said at least one anti-TNF antibody by at least one mode selected from parenteral, subcutaneous, intramuscular, intravenous, intrarticular, intrabronchial, 10 intraabdominal, intracapsular, intracartilaginous, intracavitory, intracelial, intracelebellar, intracerebroventricular, intracolic, intracervical, intragastric, intrahepatic, intramyocardial, intraosteal, intrapelvic, intrapericardiac, intraperitoneal, intrapleural, intraprostatic, intrapulmonary, intrarectal, intrarenal, intraretinal, intraspinal, intrasynovial, intrathoracic, intrauterine, intravesical, bolus, vaginal, rectal, buccal, sublingual, intranasal, or transdermal.

15        57 . An article of manufacture for human pharmaceutical or diagnostic use, comprising packaging material and a container comprising a solution or a lyophilized form of at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody having at least one heavy chain or light chain CDR having the amino acid sequence of at least one of SEQ ID NOS: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6.

20        58 . The article of manufacture of claim 57, wherein said container is a component of a parenteral, subcutaneous, intramuscular, intravenous, intrarticular, intrabronchial, intraabdominal, intracapsular, intracartilaginous, intracavitory, intracelial, intracelebellar, intracerebroventricular, intracolic, intracervical, intragastric, intrahepatic, intramyocardial, intraosteal, intrapelvic, intrapericardiac, intraperitoneal, intrapleural, intraprostatic, intrapulmonary, intrarectal, intrarenal, intraretinal, intraspinal, intrasynovial, 25 intrathoracic, intrauterine, intravesical, bolus, vaginal, rectal, buccal, sublingual, intranasal, or transdermal delivery device or system.

30        59 . A method for producing at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody having at least one heavy chain or light chain CDR having the amino acid sequence of at least one of SEQ ID NOS: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6, comprising providing a host cell or transgenic animal or transgenic plant or plant cell capable of expressing in recoverable amounts said antibody.

60 . At least one anti-TNF antibody produced by a method according to claim 59.

35        61 . At least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody that binds to the same region of a TNF protein as an antibody comprising at least one heavy chain or light chain CDR having the amino acid sequence of at least one of SEQ ID NOS: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6.

62. An TNF antibody according to claim 61, wherein said antibody binds TNF with an affinity of at least one selected from at least  $10^{-9}$  M, at least  $10^{-10}$  M, at least  $10^{-11}$  M, or at least  $10^{-12}$  M.

5 63. An TNF antibody according to claim 61, wherein said antibody substantially neutralizes at least one activity of at least one TNF protein.

64. An isolated nucleic acid encoding at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody that binds to the same region of a TNF protein as an antibody comprising at least one heavy chain or light chain CDR having the amino acid sequence of at least one of SEQ ID NOS: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6.

10 65. An isolated nucleic acid vector comprising an isolated nucleic acid according to claim 64.

66. A prokaryotic or eukaryotic host cell comprising an isolated nucleic acid according to claim 65.

15 67. A host cell according to claim 66, wherein said host cell is at least one selected from COS-1, COS-7, HEK293, BHK21, CHO, BSC-1, Hep G2, 653, SP2/0, 293, HeLa, myeloma, or lymphoma cells, or any derivative, immortalized or transformed cell thereof.

68. A method for producing at least one anti-TNF antibody, comprising translating a nucleic acid according to claim 64 under conditions in vitro, in vivo or in situ, such that the TNF antibody is expressed in detectable or recoverable amounts.

20 69. A composition comprising at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody that binds to the same region of a TNF protein as an antibody comprising at least one heavy chain or light chain CDR having the amino acid sequence of at least one of SEQ ID NOS: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6, and at least one pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or diluent.

70. A composition according to claim 69, further comprising at least one composition comprising an effective amount of at least one compound or protein selected from at least one of a detectable label or reporter, a TNF antagonist, an antirheumatic, a muscle relaxant, a narcotic, a non-steroid anti-inflammatory drug (NSAID), an analgesic, an anesthetic, a sedative, a local anesthetic, a neuromuscular blocker, an antimicrobial, an antipsoriatic, a corticosteroid, an anabolic steroid, an erythropoietin, an immunization, an 30 immunoglobulin, an immunosuppressive, a growth hormone, a hormone replacement drug, a radiopharmaceutical, an antidepressant, an antipsychotic, a stimulant, an asthma medication, a beta agonist, an inhaled steroid, an epinephrine or analog, a cytokine, or a cytokine antagonist.

71. An anti-idiotype antibody or fragment that specifically binds at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody that binds to the same region of a TNF protein as an antibody comprising at least one heavy chain or light chain CDR having the amino acid sequence of at least one of SEQ ID NOS: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6.

72 . A method for diagnosing or treating a TNF related condition in a cell, tissue, organ or animal, comprising

- (a) contacting or administering a composition comprising an effective amount of at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody that binds to the same region of a TNF protein as an antibody comprising at least one heavy chain or light chain CDR having the amino acid sequence of at least one of SEQ ID NOS: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6, with, or to, said cell, tissue, organ or animal.

73 . A method according to claim 72, wherein said effective amount is 0.001-50 mg/kilogram of said cells, tissue, organ or animal.

- 10 74 . A method according to claim 72, wherein said contacting or said administrating is by at least one mode selected from parenteral, subcutaneous, intramuscular, intravenous, intrarticular, intrabronchial, intraabdominal, intracapsular, intracartilaginous, intracavitory, intracelial, intracelebellar, intracerebroventricular, intracolic, intracervical, intragastric, intrahepatic, intramyocardial, intraosteal, intrapelvic, intrapericardiac, 15 intraperitoneal, intrapleural, intraprostatic, intrapulmonary, intrarectal, intrarenal, intraretinal, intraspinal, intrasynovial, intrathoracic, intrauterine, intravesical, bolus, vaginal, rectal, buccal, sublingual, intranasal, or transdermal.

- 20 75 . A method according to claim 72, further comprising administering, prior, concurrently or after said (a) contacting or administering, at least one composition comprising an effective amount of at least one compound or protein selected from at least one of a detectable label or reporter, a TNF antagonist, an antirheumatic, a muscle relaxant, a narcotic, a non-steroid anti-inflammatory drug (NSAID), an analgesic, an anesthetic, a sedative, a local anesthetic, a neuromuscular blocker, an antimicrobial, an antipsoriatic, a corticosteriod, an anabolic steroid, an erythropoietin, an immunization, an immunoglobulin, an 25 immunosuppressive, a growth hormone, a hormone replacement drug, a radiopharmaceutical, an antidepressant, an antipsychotic, a stimulant, an asthma medication, a beta agonist, an inhaled steroid, an epinephrine or analog, a cytokine, or a cytokine antagonist.

- 30 76 . A medical device, comprising at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody that binds to the same region of a TNF protein as an antibody comprising at least one heavy chain or light chain CDR having the amino acid sequence of at least one of SEQ ID NOS: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6, wherein said device is suitable to contacting or administering said at least one anti-TNF antibody by at least one mode selected from parenteral, subcutaneous, intramuscular, intravenous, intrarticular, intrabronchial, intraabdominal, intracapsular, intracartilaginous, intracavitory, intracelial, intracelebellar, intracerebroventricular, intracolic, intracervical, intragastric, intrahepatic, intramyocardial, intraosteal, intrapelvic, intrapericardiac, intraperitoneal, intrapleural, intraprostatic,

intrapulmonary, intrarectal, intrarenal, intraretinal, intraspinal, intrasynovial, intrathoracic, intrauterine, intravesical, bolus, vaginal, rectal, buccal, sublingual, intranasal, or transdermal.

77. An article of manufacture for human pharmaceutical or diagnostic use, comprising packaging material and a container comprising a solution or a lyophilized form of  
5 at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody that binds to the same region of a TNF protein as an antibody comprising at least one heavy chain or light chain CDR having the amino acid sequence of at least one of SEQ ID NOS: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6.

78. The article of manufacture of claim 77, wherein said container is a component of a parenteral, subcutaneous, intramuscular, intravenous, intrarticular,  
10 intrabronchial, intraabdominal, intracapsular, intracartilaginous, intracavitory, intracelial, intracelebellar, intracerebroventricular, intracolic, intracervical, intragastric, intrahepatic, intramyocardial, intraosteal, intrapelvic, intrapericardiac, intraperitoneal, intrapleural, intraprostatic, intrapulmonary, intrarectal, intrarenal, intraretinal, intraspinal, intrasynovial, intrathoracic, intrauterine, intravesical, bolus, vaginal, rectal, buccal, sublingual, intranasal, or  
15 transdermal delivery device or system.

79. A method for producing at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody that binds to the same region of a TNF protein as an antibody comprising at least one heavy chain or light chain CDR having the amino acid sequence of at least one of SEQ ID NOS: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6, comprising providing a host cell or transgenic animal or transgenic  
20 plant or plant cell capable of expressing in recoverable amounts said antibody.

80. At least one anti-TNF antibody produced by a method according to claim 79.

81. At least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody, comprising at least one human CDR, wherein said antibody specifically binds at least one epitope comprising  
25 at least 1-3, to the entire amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO: 9.

82. An TNF antibody according to claim 81, wherein said antibody binds TNF with an affinity of at least one selected from at least  $10^{-9}$  M, at least  $10^{-10}$  M, at least  $10^{-11}$  M, or at least  $10^{-12}$  M.

83. An TNF antibody according to claim 81, wherein said antibody substantially neutralizes at least one activity of at least one TNF protein.  
30

84. An isolated nucleic acid encoding at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody having at least one human CDR, wherein said antibody specifically binds at least one epitope comprising at least 1-3, to the entire amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:  
9.

35 85. An isolated nucleic acid vector comprising an isolated nucleic acid according to claim 84.

86. A prokaryotic or eukaryotic host cell comprising an isolated nucleic acid according to claim 85.

87. A host cell according to claim 86, wherein said host cell is at least one selected from COS-1, COS-7, HEK293, BHK21, CHO, BSC-1, Hep G2, 653, SP2/0, 293, HeLa, 5 myeloma, or lymphoma cells, or any derivative, immortalized or transformed cell thereof.

88. A method for producing at least one anti-TNF antibody, comprising translating a nucleic acid according to claim 84 under conditions *in vitro*, *in vivo* or *in situ*, such that the TNF antibody is expressed in detectable or recoverable amounts.

89. A composition comprising at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF 10 antibody having at least one human CDR, wherein said antibody specifically binds at least one epitope comprising at least 1-3, to the entire amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO: 9, and at least one pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or diluent.

90. A composition according to claim 89, further comprising at least one composition comprising an effective amount of at least one compound or protein selected from 15 at least one of a detectable label or reporter, a TNF antagonist, an antirheumatic, a muscle relaxant, a narcotic, a non-steroid anti-inflammatory drug (NSAID), an analgesic, an anesthetic, a sedative, a local anesthetic, a neuromuscular blocker, an antimicrobial, an antipsoriatic, a corticosteroid, an anabolic steroid, an erythropoietin, an immunization, an immunoglobulin, an immunosuppressive, a growth hormone, a hormone replacement drug, a 20 radiopharmaceutical, an antidepressant, an antipsychotic, a stimulant, an asthma medication, a beta agonist, an inhaled steroid, an epinephrine or analog, a cytokine, or a cytokine antagonist.

91. An anti-idiotype antibody or fragment that specifically binds at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody having at least one human CDR, wherein said 25 antibody specifically binds at least one epitope comprising at least 1-3, to the entire amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO: 9.

92. A method for diagnosing or treating a TNF related condition in a cell, tissue, organ or animal, comprising

(a) contacting or administering a composition comprising an effective amount of at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody having at least one human CDR, wherein 30 said antibody specifically binds at least one epitope comprising at least 1-3, to the entire amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO: 9, with, or to, said cell, tissue, organ or animal.

93. A method according to claim 92, wherein said effective amount is 0.001-50 mg/kilogram of said cells, tissue, organ or animal.

94. A method according to claim 92, wherein said contacting or said 35 administrating is by at least one mode selected from parenteral, subcutaneous, intramuscular, intravenous, intrarticular, intrabronchial, intraabdominal, intracapsular, intracartilaginous,

intracavitory, intracelial, intracelebellar, intracerebroventricular, intracolic, intracervical, intragastric, intrahepatic, intramyocardial, intraosteal, intrapelvic, intrapericardiac, intraperitoneal, intrapleural, intraprostatic, intrapulmonary, intrarectal, intrarenal, intraretinal, intraspinal, intrasynovial, intrathoracic, intrauterine, intravesical, bolus, vaginal, rectal, buccal, 5 sublingual, intranasal, or transdermal.

95. A method according to claim 92, further comprising administering, prior, concurrently or after said (a) contacting or administering, at least one composition comprising an effective amount of at least one compound or protein selected from at least one of a detectable label or reporter, a TNF antagonist, an antirheumatic, a muscle relaxant, a 10 narcotic, a non-steroid anti-inflammatory drug (NSAID), an analgesic, an anesthetic, a sedative, a local anesthetic, a neuromuscular blocker, an antimicrobial, an antipsoriatic, a corticosteriod, an anabolic steroid, an erythropoietin, an immunization, an immunoglobulin, an immunosuppressive, a growth hormone, a hormone replacement drug, a radiopharmaceutical, an antidepressant, an antipsychotic, a stimulant, an asthma medication, a beta agonist, an 15 inhaled steroid, an epinephrine or analog, a cytokine, or a cytokine antagonist.

96. A medical device, comprising at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody having at least one human CDR, wherein said antibody specifically binds at least one epitope comprising at least 1-3, to the entire amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO: 9, wherein said device is suitable to contacting or administering said at least one anti-TNF 20 antibody by at least one mode selected from parenteral, subcutaneous, intramuscular, intravenous, intrarticular, intrabronchial, intraabdominal, intracapsular, intracartilaginous, intracavitory, intracelial, intracelebellar, intracerebroventricular, intracolic, intracervical, intragastric, intrahepatic, intramyocardial, intraosteal, intrapelvic, intrapericardiac, intraperitoneal, intrapleural, intraprostatic, intrapulmonary, intrarectal, intrarenal, intraretinal, 25 intraspinal, intrasynovial, intrathoracic, intrauterine, intravesical, bolus, vaginal, rectal, buccal, sublingual, intranasal, or transdermal.

97. An article of manufacture for human pharmaceutical or diagnostic use, comprising packaging material and a container comprising a solution or a lyophilized form of at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody having at least one human CDR, wherein 30 said antibody specifically binds at least one epitope comprising at least 1-3, to the entire amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO: 9.

98. The article of manufacture of claim 97, wherein said container is a component of a parenteral, subcutaneous, intramuscular, intravenous, intrarticular, intrabronchial, intraabdominal, intracapsular, intracartilaginous, intracavitory, intracelial, 35 intracelebellar, intracerebroventricular, intracolic, intracervical, intragastric, intrahepatic, intramyocardial, intraosteal, intrapelvic, intrapericardiac, intraperitoneal, intrapleural,

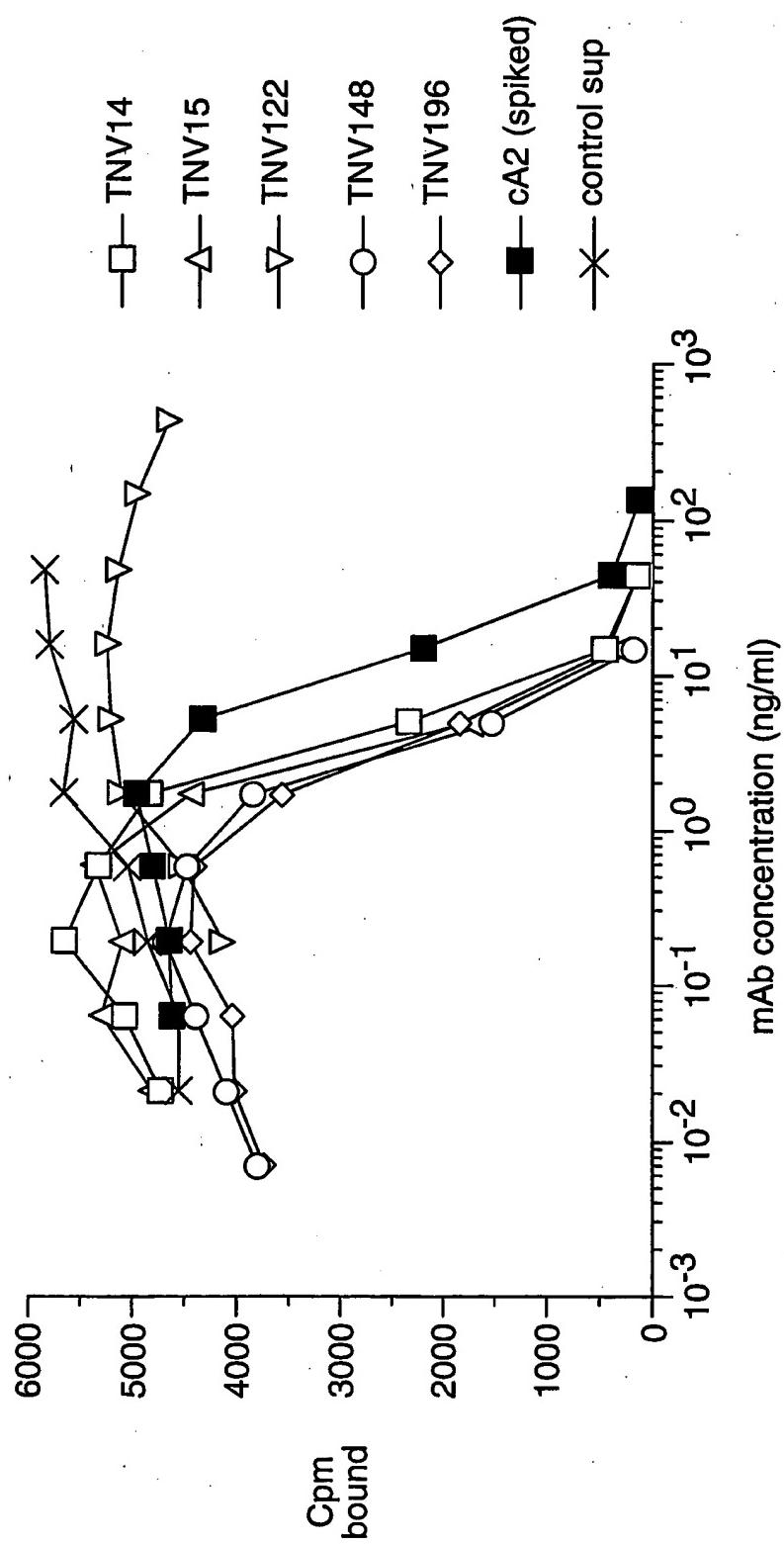
intraprostatic, intrapulmonary, intrarectal, intrarenal, intraretinal, intraspinal, intrasynovial, intrathoracic, intrauterine, intravesical, bolus, vaginal, rectal, buccal, sublingual, intranasal, or transdermal delivery device or system.

99. A method for producing at least one isolated mammalian anti-TNF antibody having at least one human CDR, wherein said antibody specifically binds at least one epitope comprising at least 1-3, to the entire amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO: 9, comprising providing a host cell or transgenic animal or transgenic plant or plant cell capable of expressing in recoverable amounts said antibody.

100. At least one anti-TNF antibody produced by a method according to  
10 claim 99.

101. Any invention described herein.

1/26

**FIG. 1**

2/26

**FIG. 2A**

TNVs            ATGGGGTTGGGCTGAGCTGGGTTTCCTCGTTGCTCTTTAAGA

|            |  |
|------------|--|
| germline   | Q V Q L V E S G G G V<br>CAGGTGCAGCTGGTGGAGTCTGGGGGAGGCCTG |
| TNVs       | GGTGTCCAGTGT.....  |
| TNV148 (B) | GGTGTCCAGTGT.....A.....                                    |

|          |  |
|----------|--|
| germline | V Q P G R S L R L S C A A S G<br>GTCCAGCCTGGGAGGTCCCTGAGACTCTCCTGTGCAGCCTCTGGA |
| TNVs     | .....  |

|            |   |
|------------|---|
| germline   | F T F S <b>S Y A M H</b> W V R Q A P<br>TTCACCTTCAGTAGCTATGCTATGCACTGGGTCCGCCAGGCTCCA |
| TNV14, 15  | .....   |
| TNV148 (B) | ....T.....  |
| TNV196     | .....C.....   |

|            |   |
|------------|---|
| germline   | G K G L E W V A <b>V I S Y D G S</b><br>GGCAAGGGGCTGGAGTGGGTGGCAGTTATCATATGATGGAAGC |
| TNV14      | .....A.....C.T.....T  |
| TNV15      | .....T.....T.....T  |
| TNV148 (B) | ....C.....T.....G   |
| TNV196     | .....T.....   |

|            |   |
|------------|---|
| germline   | <u>N K Y Y A D S V K G R F T I S</u><br>AATAAAATACTACGCAGACTCCGTGAAGGGCCGATTCAACCATCTCC |
| TNV14      | .GC...A.G.....G.....A.....  |
| TNV15      | ..C...A.G.....C.....  |
| TNV148 (B) | .....A.G.....   |
| TNV196     | .....A.G.C.....G.....   |

3/26

**FIG. 2B**

germline      R D N S K N T L Y L Q M N S L  
 TNV14      AGAGACAATTCCAAGAACACGCTGTATCTGCAAATGAACAGCCTG  
 TNV15      .....  
 TNV148      ..... G .....

TNV148(B)    ..... C .....

TNV196      ..... T .....

germline      R A E D T A V Y Y C A R  
 TNV14,15     AGAGCTGAGGACACGGCTGTGTATTACTGTGCGAGA  
 TNV148(B)    ..... GATCGAGGT  
 TNV196      ..... A .....

germline      Y Y Y Y G M D V W  
 TNV14      TACTACTACTACGGTATGGACGTCTGG

TNV15      ATATCAGCAGGTGGAA .....

G.C..... A.T.. T .....

TNV148(B) ... G..... A .....

TNV196 .. TGG..... A .....

germline      G Q G T T V T V S S  
 TNV14      GGGCAAGGGACCACGGTCACCGTCTCCTCAG .. C ..  
 TNV15      ..... C ..  
 TNV148(B) .. C ..  
 TNV196 .. C .. G ..

4/26

**FIG. 3**

|                                    |  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| TNVs                               | <u>ATGGAAGCCCCAGCTCAGCTTCTCTTCCTCCTGCTACTCTGGCTC</u>   |
| germline<br>TNVs                   | E I V L T Q S P A T<br>GAAATTGTGTTGACACAGTCTCCAGGCCACC<br>CCAGATAACCACCGGA.....                      |
| germline<br>TNVs                   | L S L S P G E R A T L S C <u>R A</u><br>CTGTCTTGTCCTCCAGGGAAAGAGGCCACCCCTCTCCTGCAGGGCC<br>.....      |
| germline<br>TNV14,15<br>TNV148,196 | <u>S O S V S S Y L A</u> W Y Q Q K P<br>AGTCAGAGTGTAGCAGCTACTTAGCCTGGTACCAACAGAAACCT<br>.....TA..... |
| germline<br>TNVs                   | G Q A P R L L I Y <u>D A S N R A</u><br>GCCAGGCTCCCAGGCTCCTCATCTATGATGCATCCAACAGGGCC<br>.....        |
| germline<br>TNVs                   | <u>T</u> G I P A R F S G S G S G T D<br>ACTGGCATCCCAGCCAGGTCAGTGGCAGTGGTCTGGGACAGAC<br>.....         |
| germline<br>TNVs                   | F T L T I S S L E P E D F A V<br>TTCACTCTCACCATCAGCAGCCTAGAGCCTGAAGATTTGCAGTT<br>.....               |
| Germline<br>TNVs                   | Y Y C <u>Q Q R S N W P P F T F G</u><br>TATTACTGTCAGCAGCGTAGCAACTGGCCTCCATTCACTTTCGGC<br>.....       |
| gerline<br>TNVs                    | P G T K V D I K R<br>CCTGGGACCAAAGTGGATATCAAACGT<br>.....  |

5/26

**FIG. 4**

|            |  |             |
|------------|--|-------------|
| TNVs       | germline <u>MGFGLSWVFLVALLRGVQC</u>          | signal      |
| TNVs       | .....  |             |
| TNV148 (B) | germline    QVQLVESGGVVQPGRLRLSCAASGFTFS     | <b>FR1</b>  |
| TNVs       | .....  |             |
| TNV148 (B) | .....I..                                     |             |
| TNVs       | germline    SYAMH                            | <b>CDR1</b> |
| TNVs       | .....  |             |
| TNV148 (B) | germline    WVRQAPGKGLEWVA                   | <b>FR2</b>  |
| TNVs       | .....  |             |
| TNV148 (B) | .....N.....                                  |             |
| TNV14      | germline    VISYDGDSNKYYADSVKG               | <b>CDR2</b> |
| TNV15      | I.L....S.K.....D                             |             |
| TNV148 (B) | F.M.....K.....                               |             |
| TNV196     | F.....KS.....                                |             |
| TNV14      | germline    RFTISRDNSKNTLYLQMNSLRAEDTAVYYCAR | <b>FR3</b>  |
| TNV15      | .....  |             |
| TNV148     | .....A.....                                  |             |
| TNV148B    | .....P.....                                  |             |
| TNV196     | ...V.....F.....F....                         |             |
| TNV14      | germline    -----YYYYYGMDV                   | <b>CDR3</b> |
| TNV15      | DRGISAGGN.....                               |             |
| TNV148 (B) | ...V....N.....                               |             |
| TNV196     | ....A...N.....                               |             |
| TNVs       | ....G...N.....                               |             |
| TNVs       | germline    WGQGTTVTVSS                      | <b>J6</b>   |
| TNVs       | .....  |             |

6/26

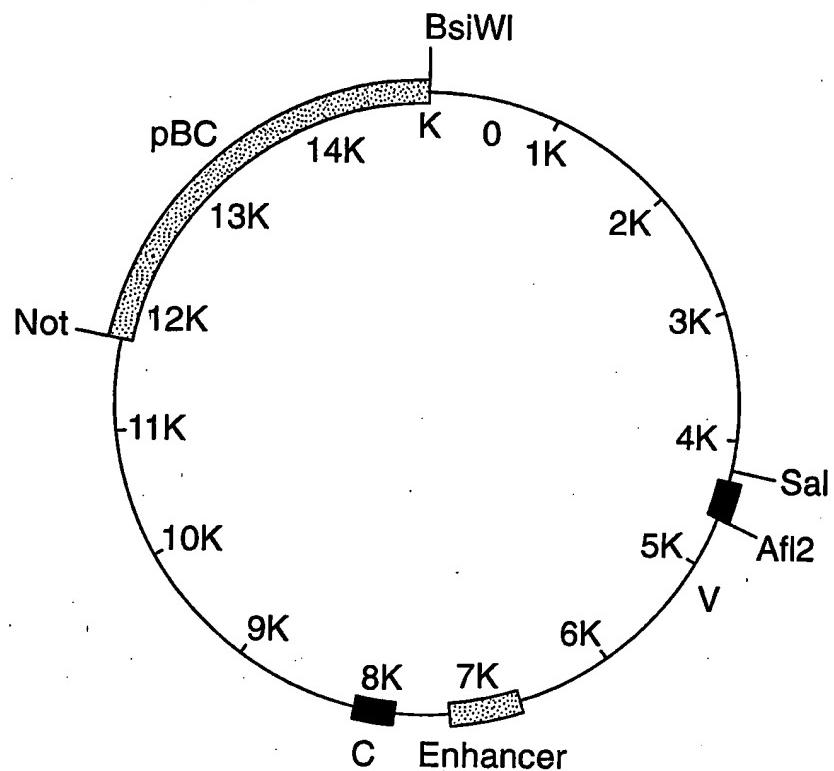
**FIG. 5**

|            |  |             |
|------------|--|-------------|
| TNVs       | MEAPPAQLLFL <del>LLL</del> WL <del>PDTTG</del> | signal      |
| germline   | EIVLTQSPATLSLSPGERATLSC                        | <b>FR1</b>  |
| TNVs       | .....  |             |
| germline   | RASQSVSSYLA                                    | <b>CDR1</b> |
| TNV14      | .....  |             |
| TNV15      | .....  |             |
| TNV148 (B) | ....Y....                                      |             |
| TNV196     | ....Y....                                      |             |
| germline   | WYQQKPGQAPRLLIY                                | <b>FR2</b>  |
| TNVs       | .....  |             |
| germline   | DASNRAT  | <b>CDR2</b> |
| TNVs       | .....  |             |
| germline   | GIPARFSGSGSGTDFTLT <del>ISSLEPEDFAVYYC</del>   | <b>FR3</b>  |
| TNVs       | .....  |             |
| germline   | QQRSNWPPFT                                     | <b>CDR3</b> |
| TNVs       | .....  |             |
| germline   | FGPGTKVDIK                                     | <b>J3</b>   |
| TNVs       | .....  |             |

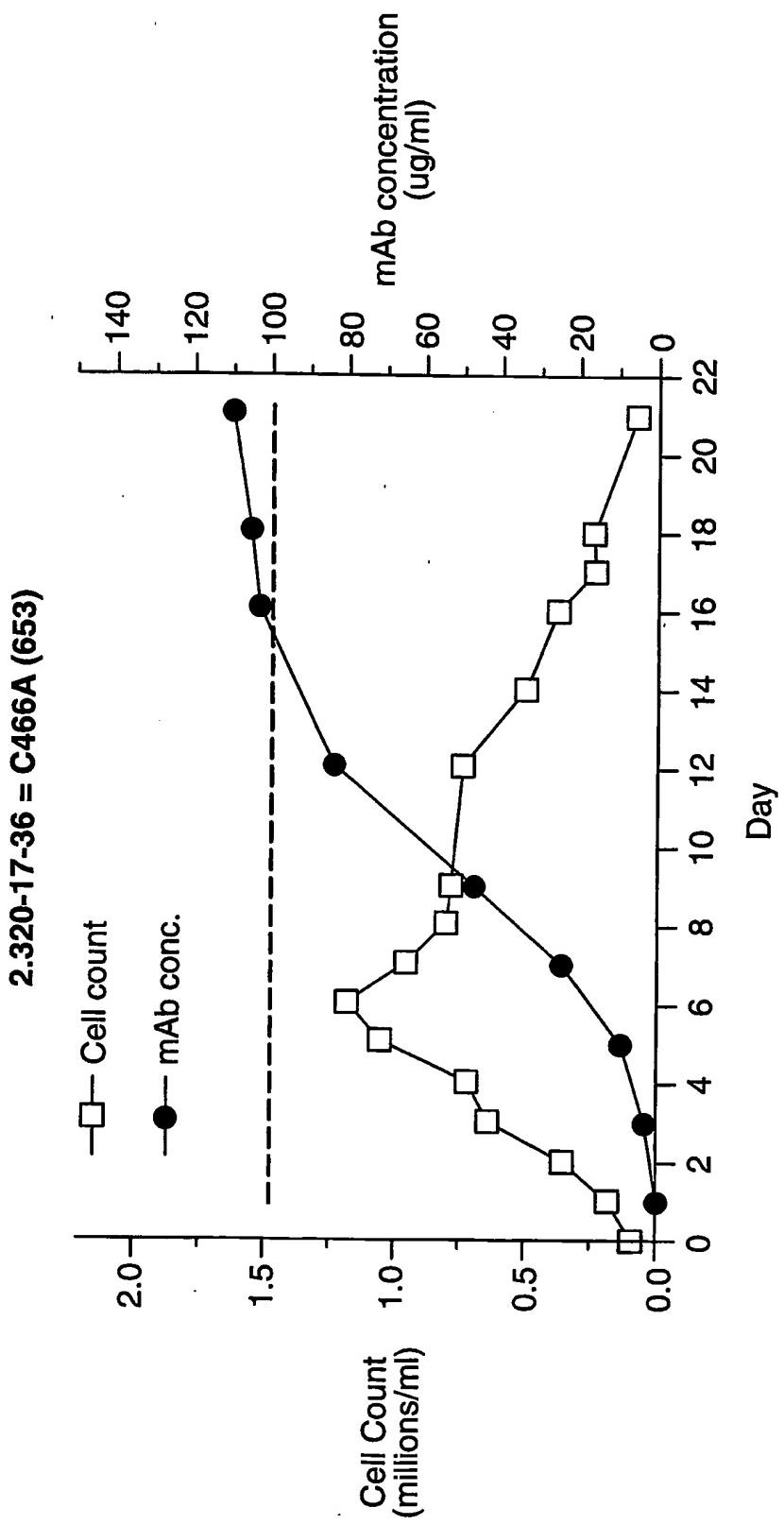
7/26

**FIG. 6**

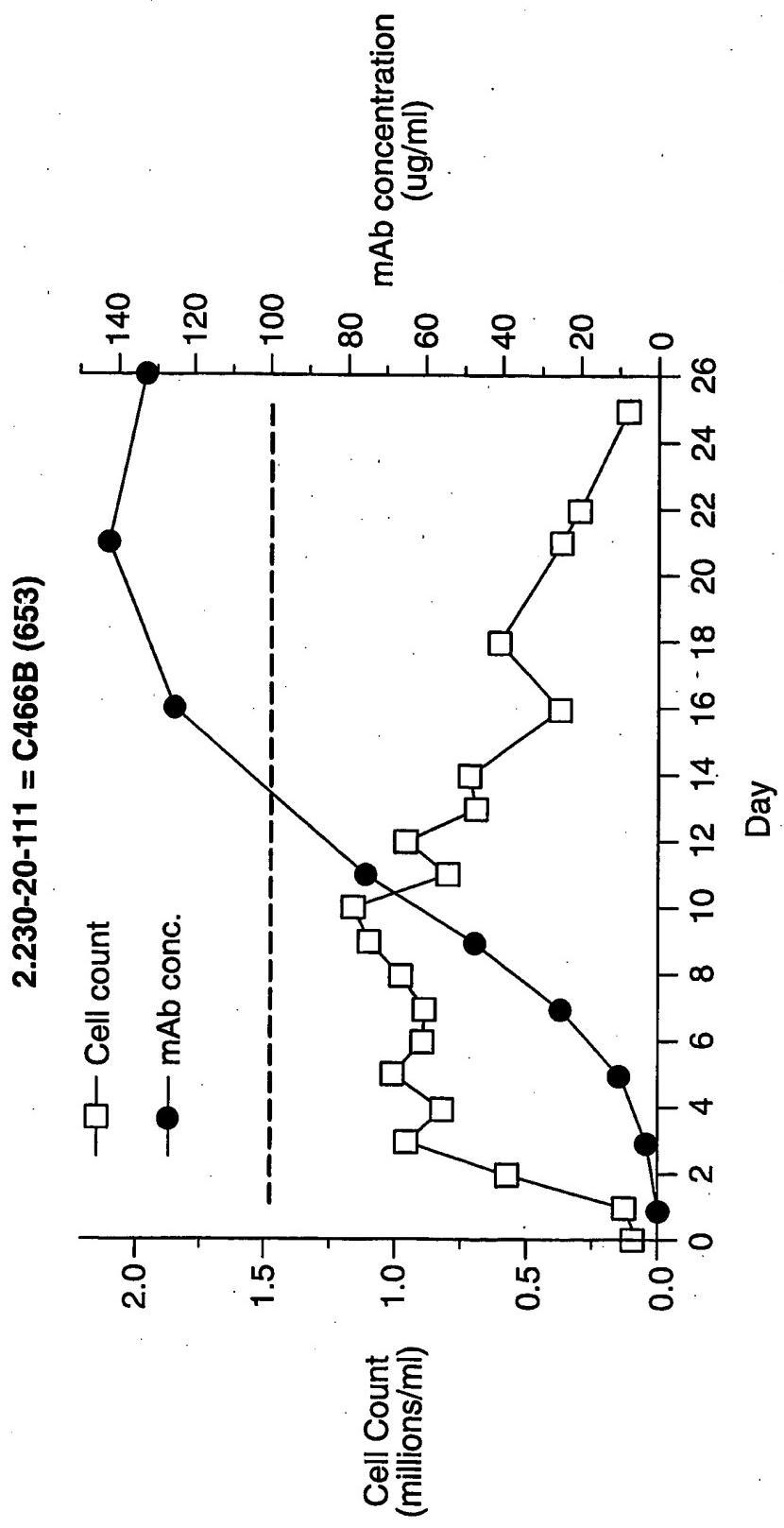
p1776



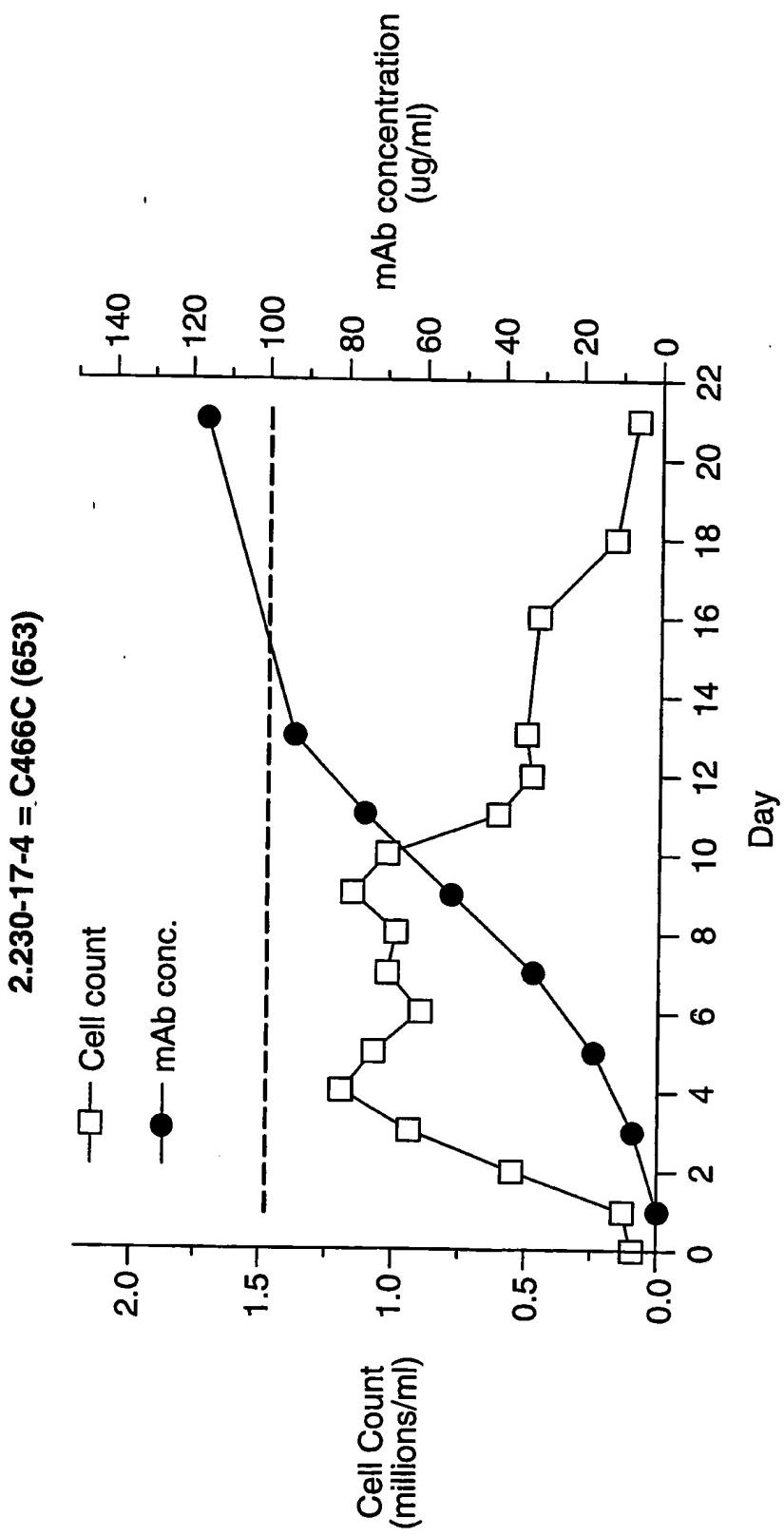
8/26

**FIG. 7A**

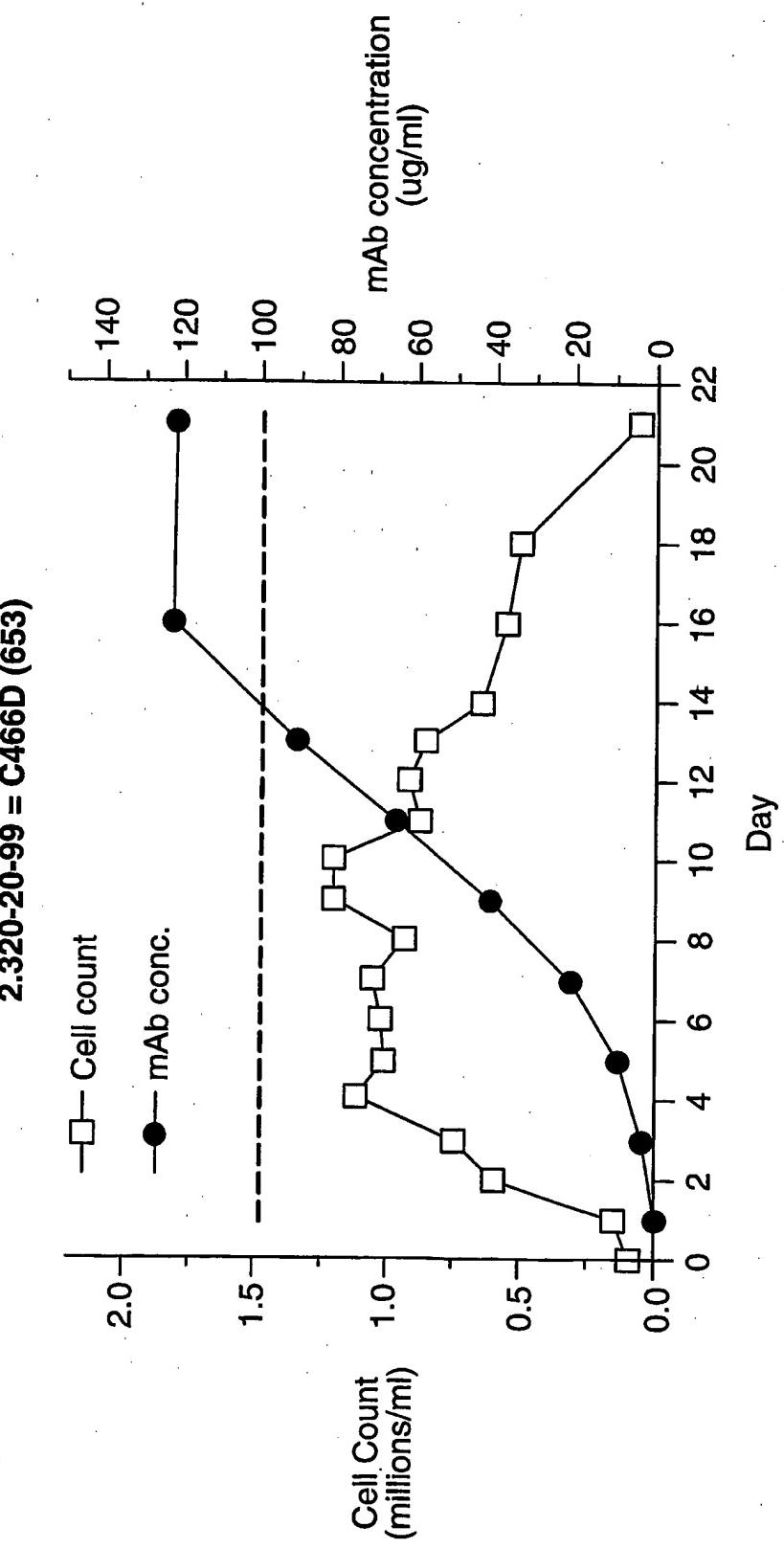
9/26

**FIG. 7B**

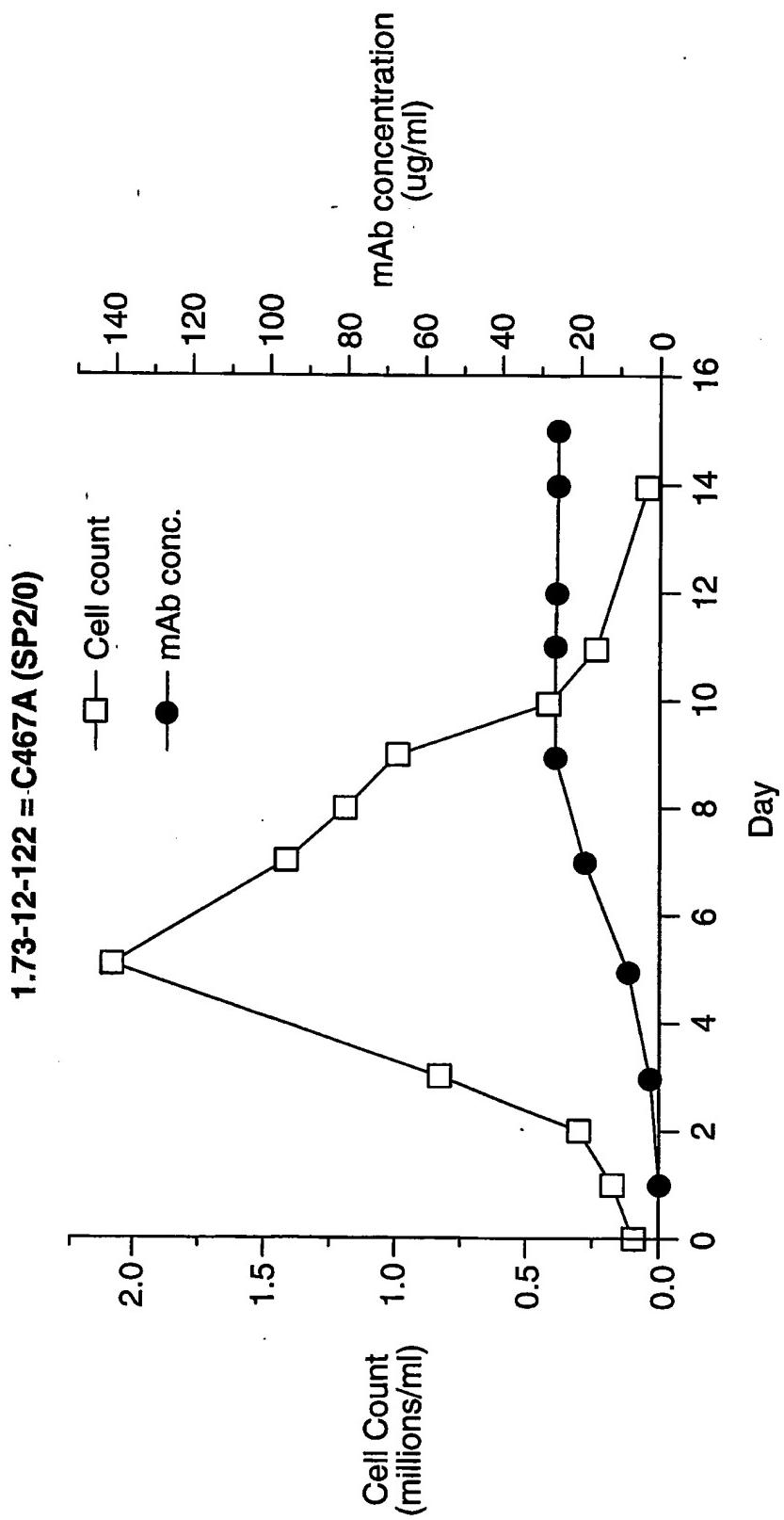
10/26

**FIG. 7C**

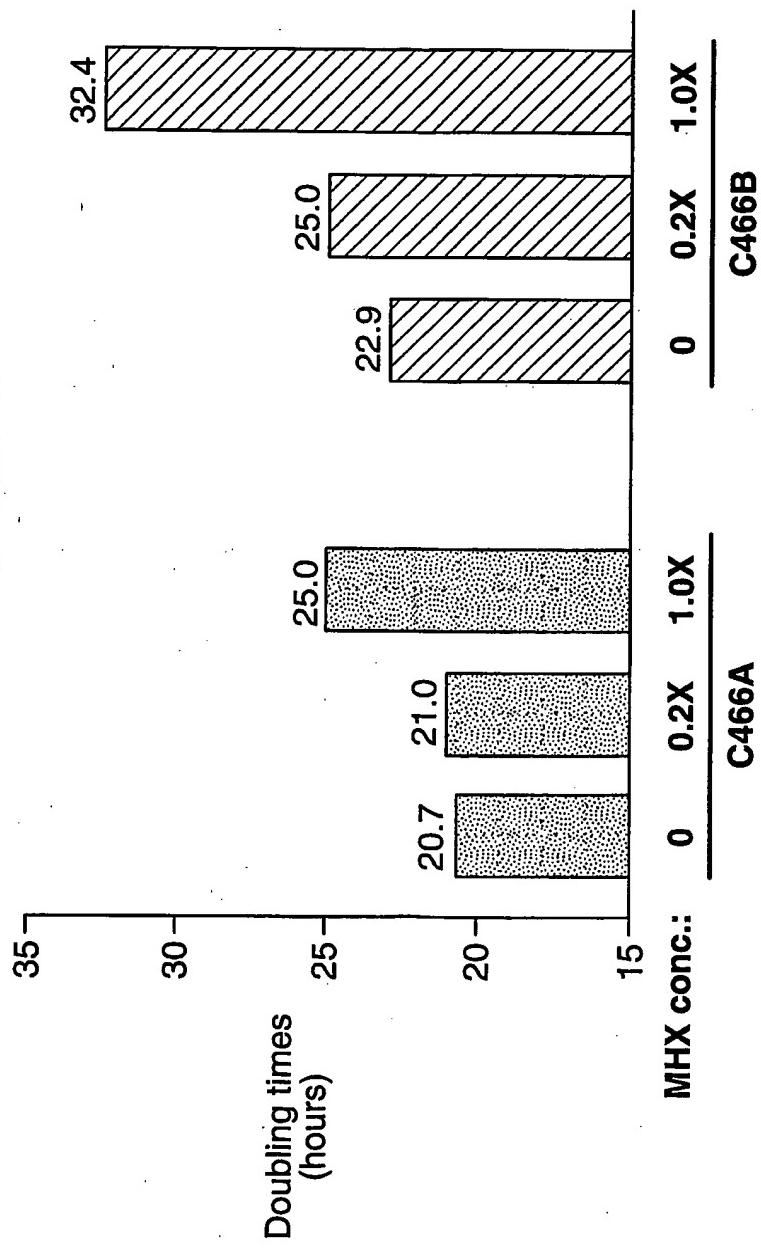
11/26

**FIG. 7D**

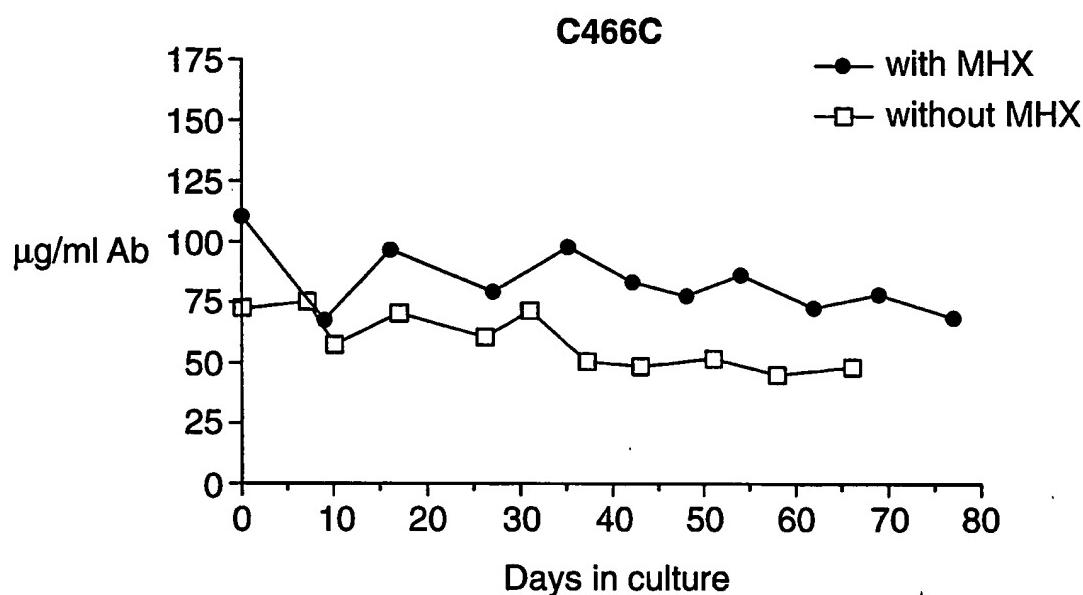
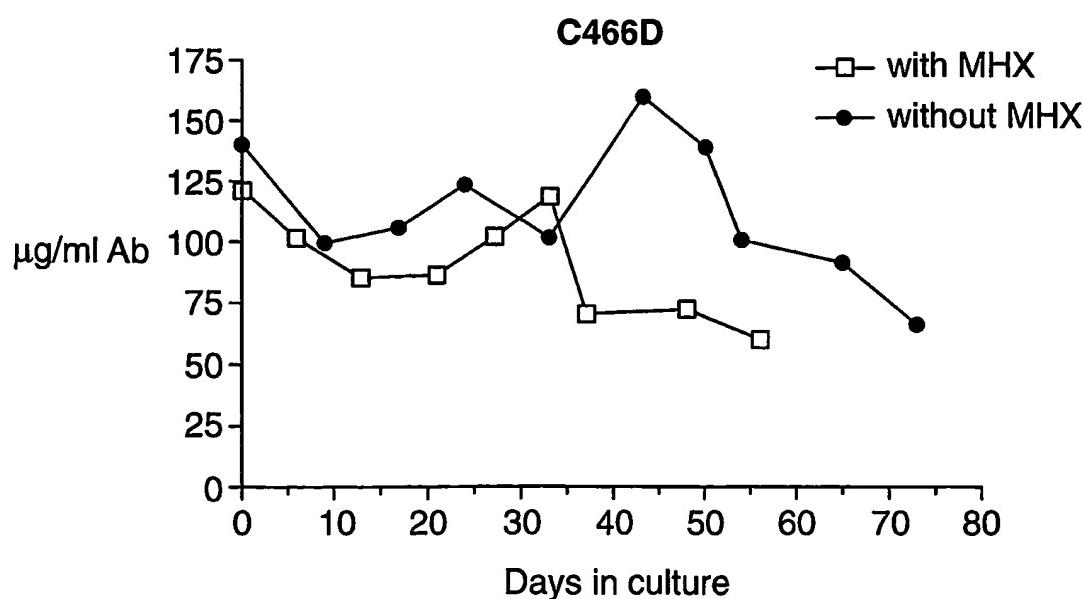
12/26

**FIG. 7E**

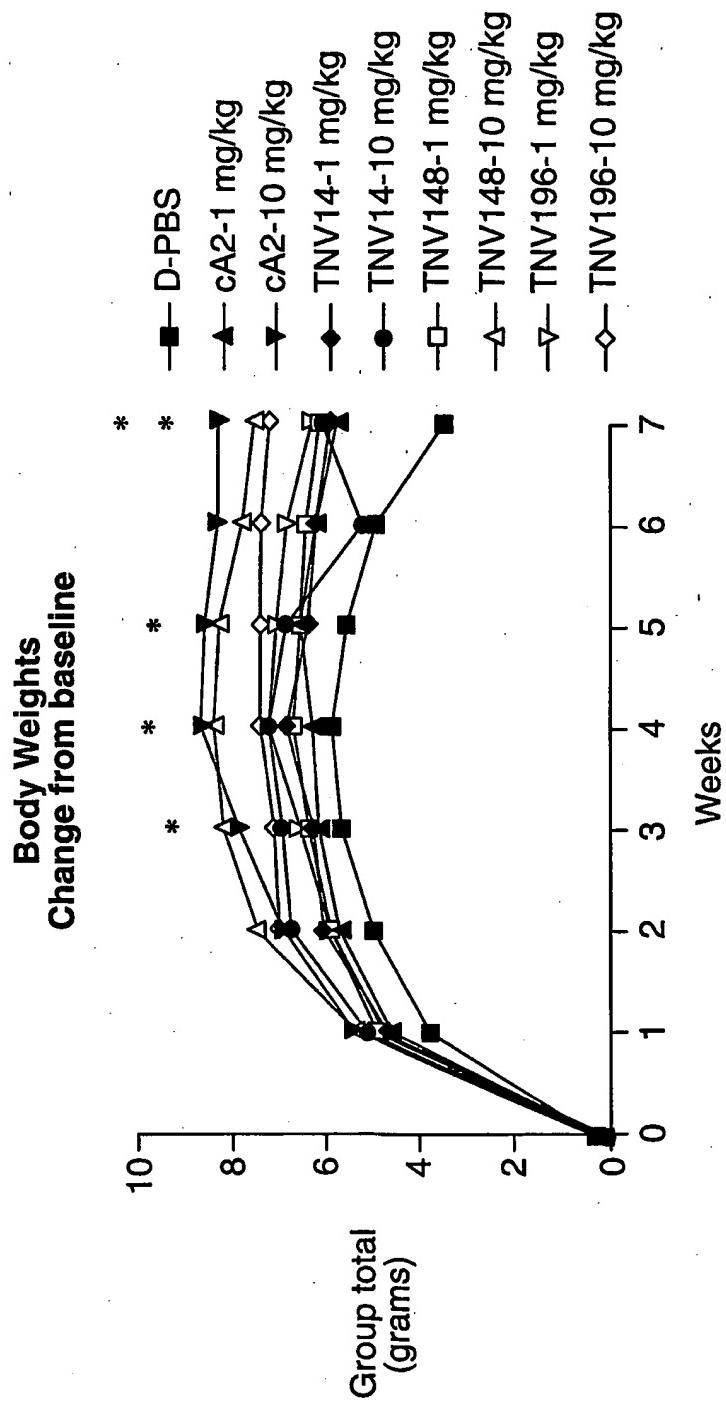
13/26

**FIG. 8**

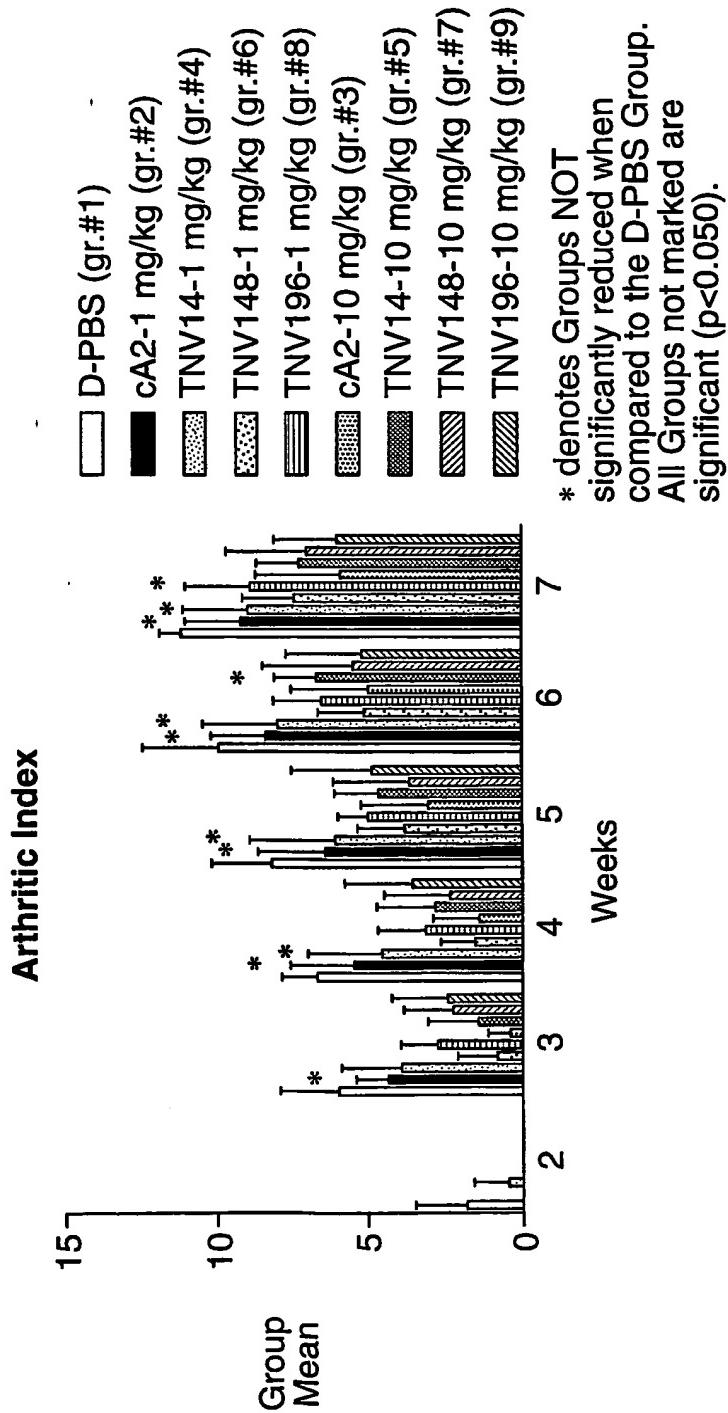
14/26

**FIG. 9A****FIG. 9B**

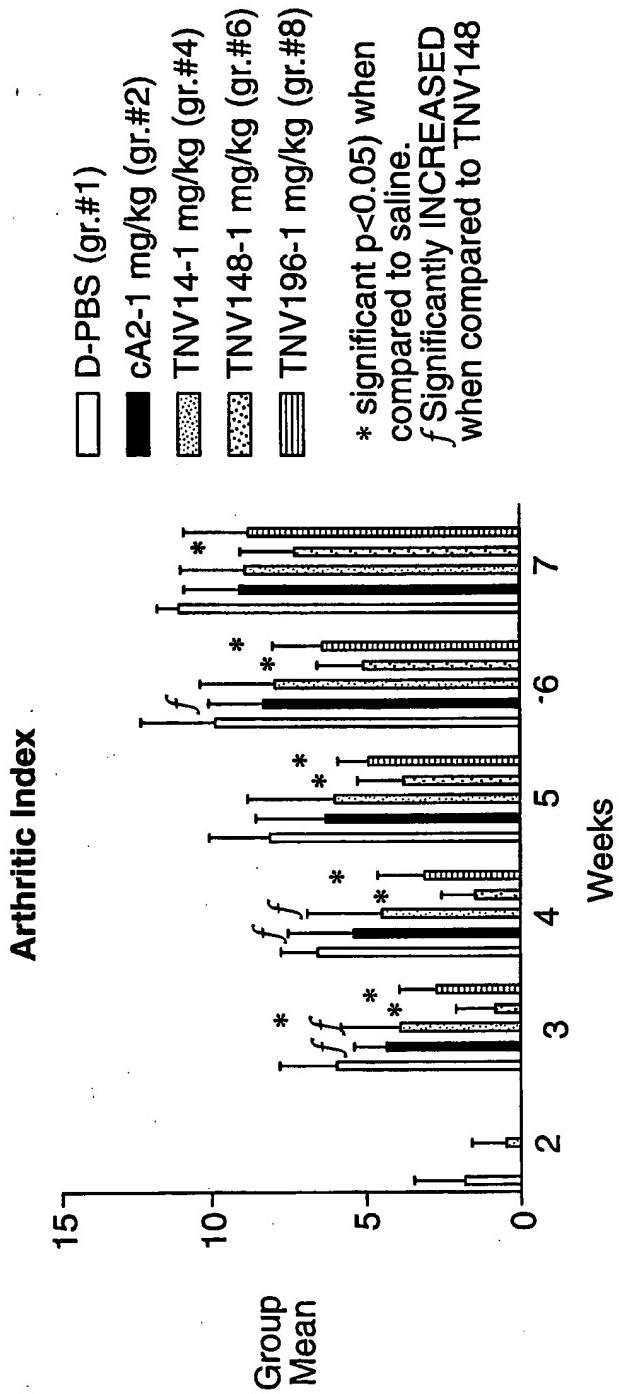
15/26

**FIG. 10**

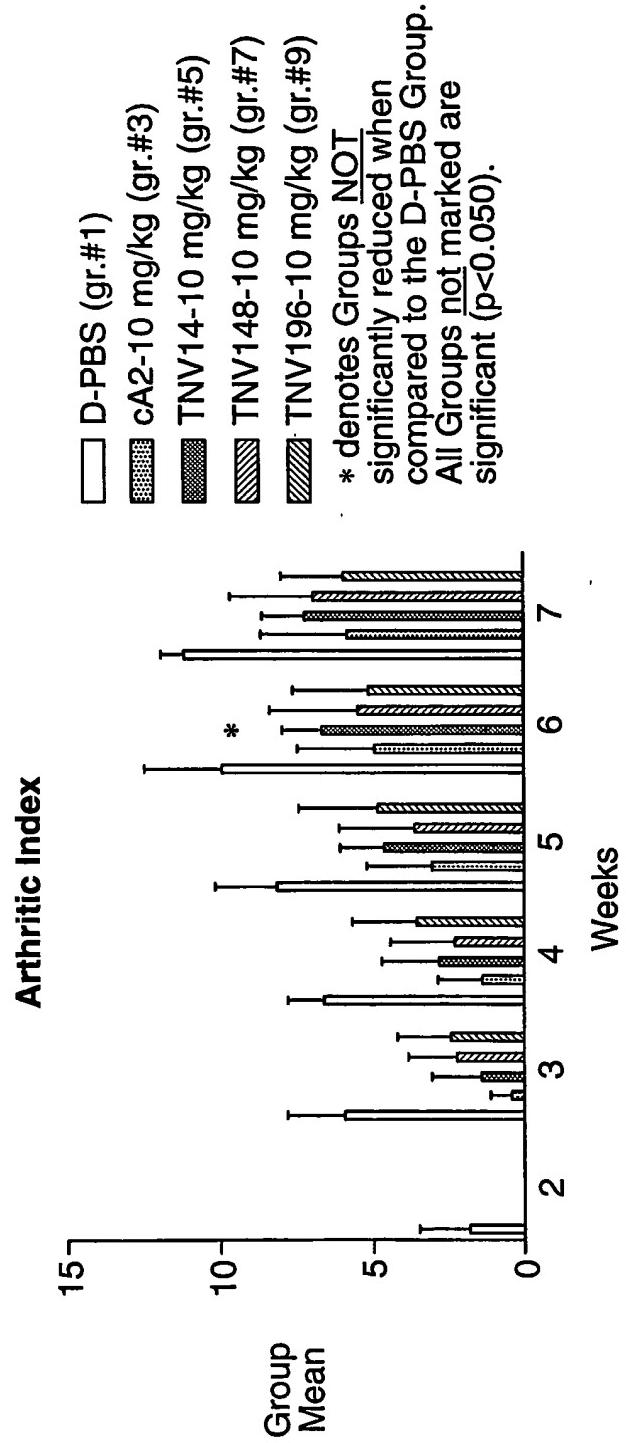
16/26

**FIG. 11A**

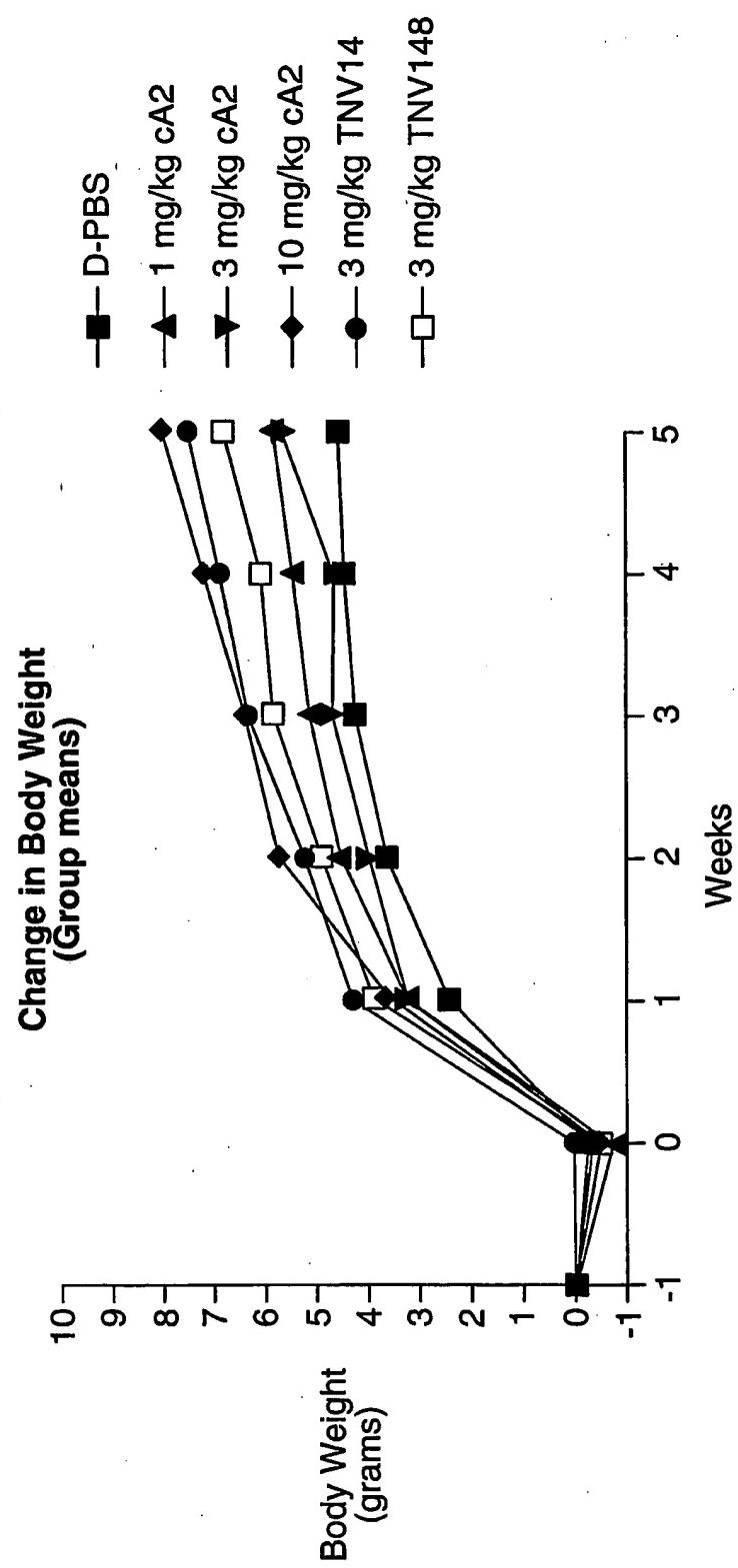
17/26

**FIG. 11B**

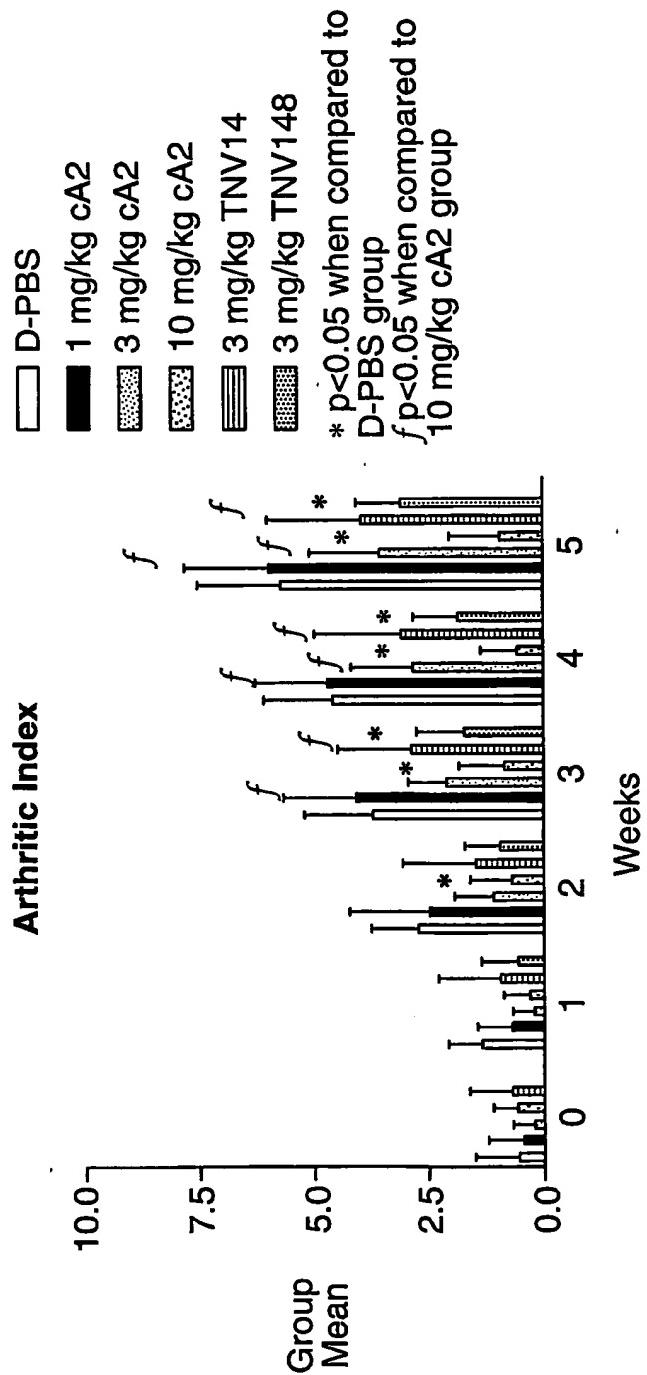
18/26

**FIG. 11C**

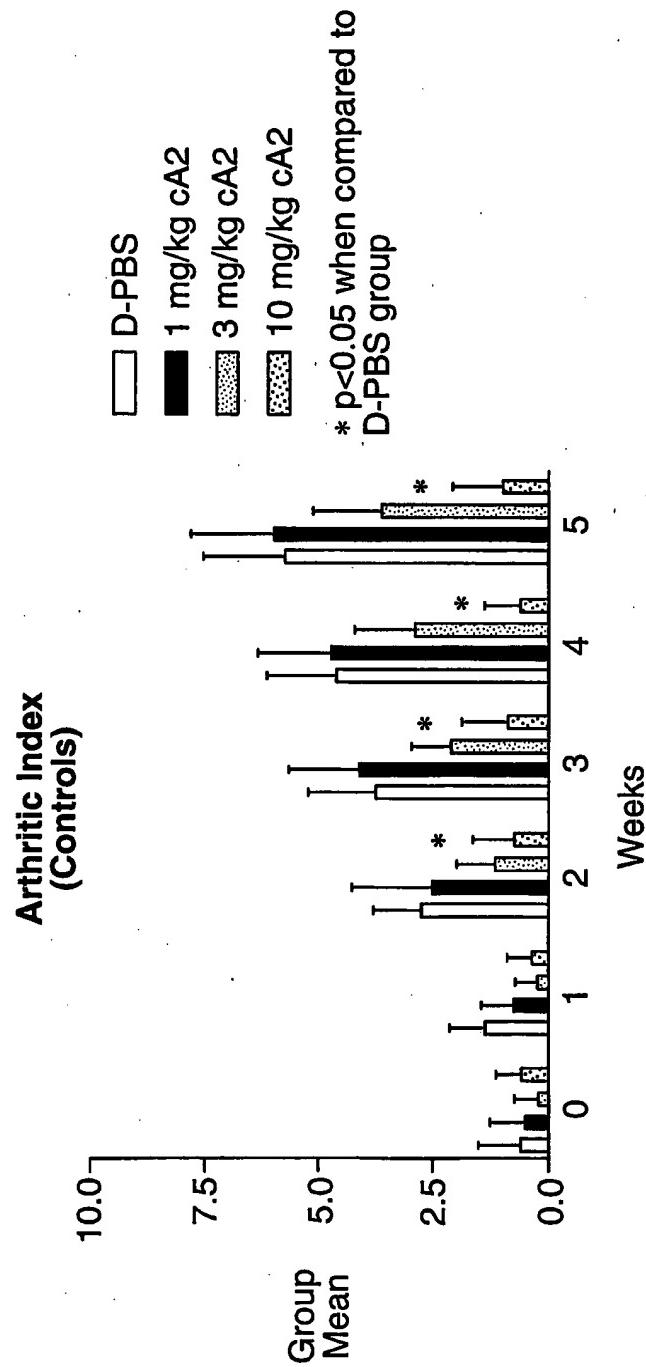
19/26

**FIG. 12**

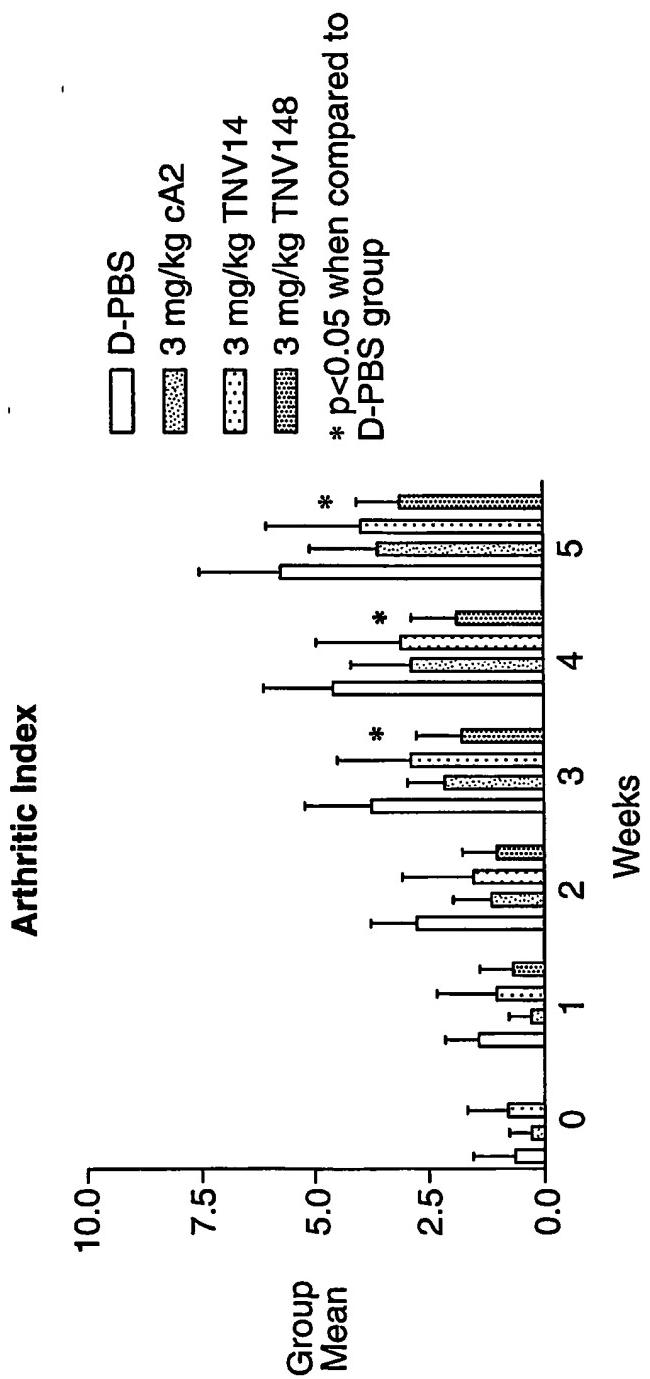
20/26

**FIG. 13A**

21/26

**FIG. 13B**

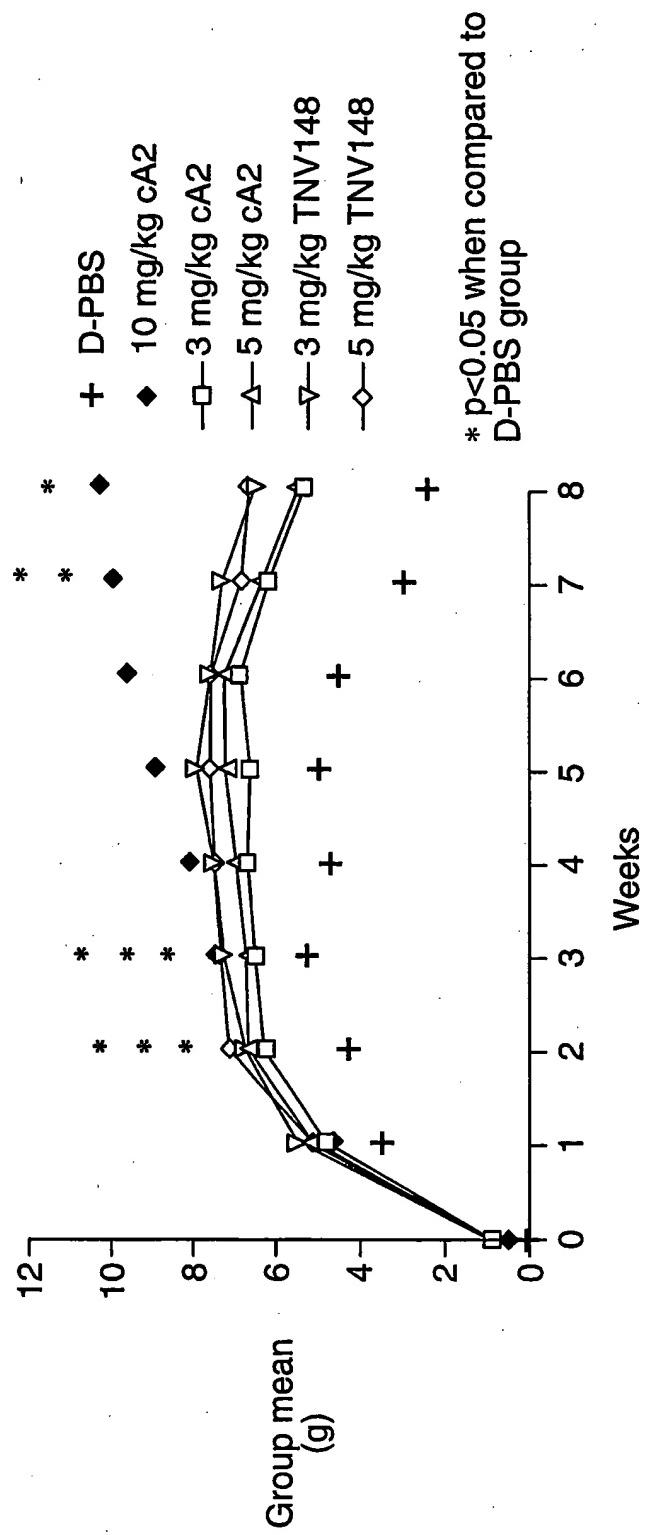
22/26

**FIG. 13C**

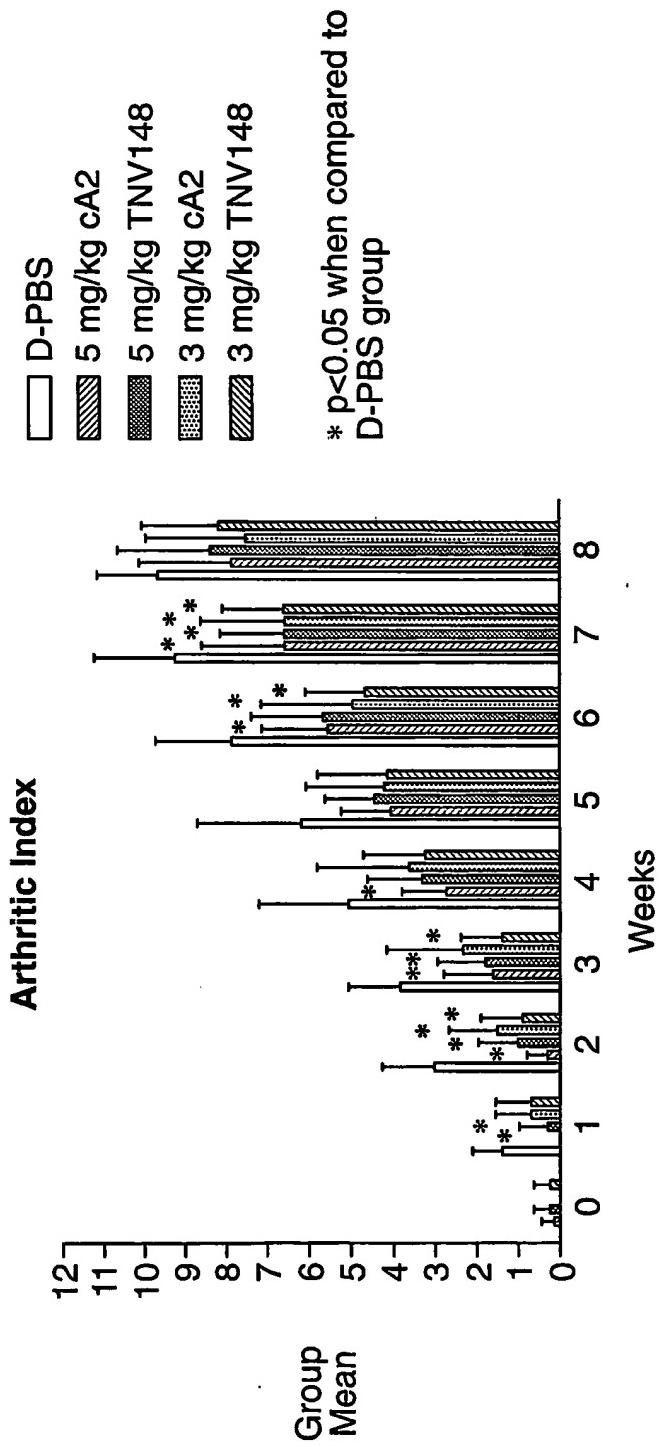
23/26

**FIG. 14**

Change in Body Weight

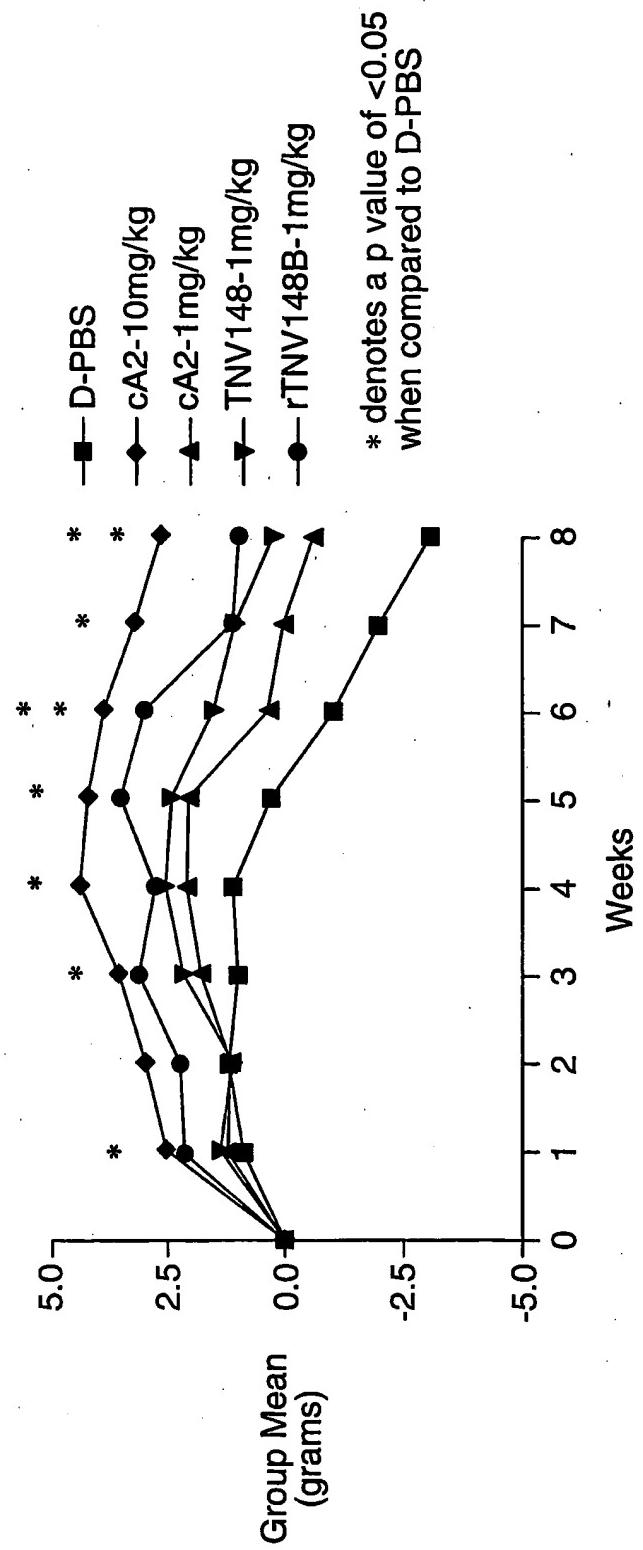


24/26

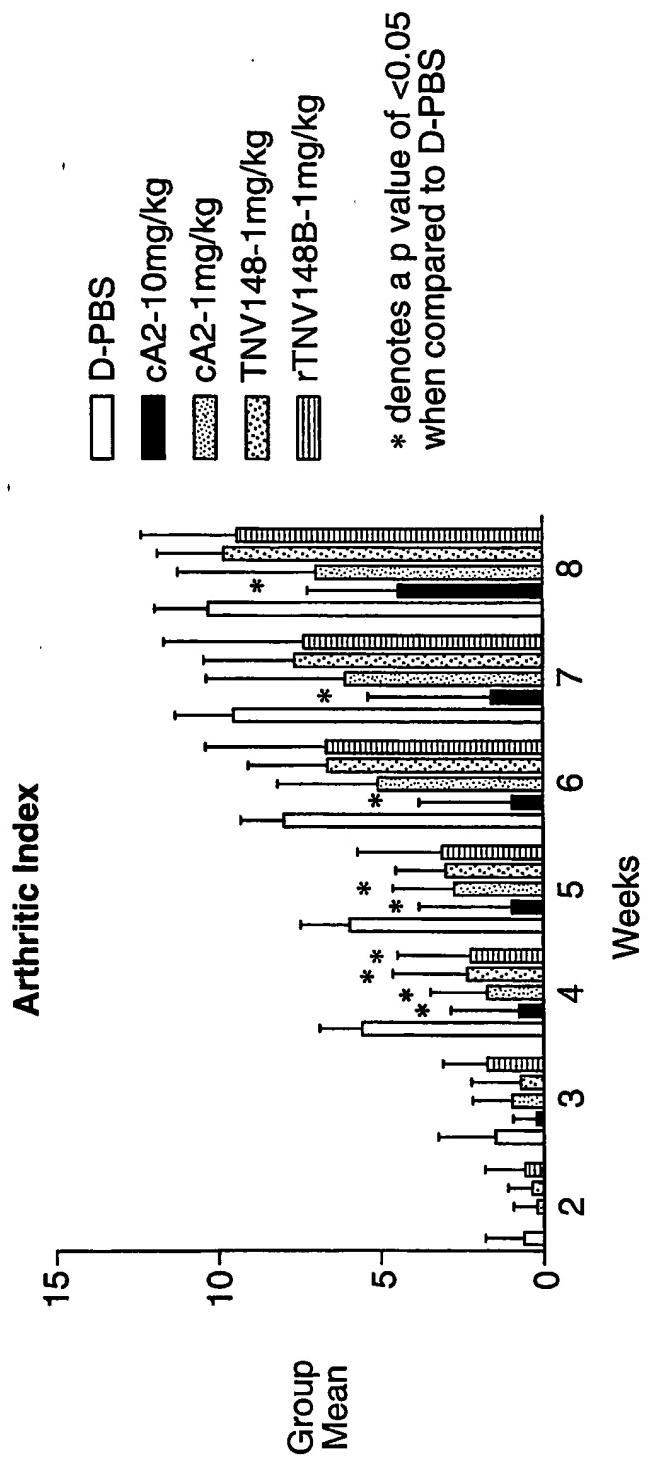
**FIG. 15**

25/26

**FIG. 16**



26/26

**FIG. 17**

## SEQUENCE LISTING

<110> Giles-Komar, Jill;  
David Shealy;  
David Knight;  
Bernie Scallon;  
George Heavner

<120> ANTI- TNF ANTIBODIES, COMPOSITIONS, METHODS AND USES

<130> CEN250

<160> 15

<170> PatentIn Ver 2.0

<210> 1

<211> 5

<212> PRT

<213> Homo sapiens

<400> 1

Arg Tyr Thr Met His  
5

<210> 2

<211> 17

<212> PRT

<213> Homo sapiens

<400> 2

Val Ile Ser Phe Asp Gly Ser Asn Lys Tyr Tyr Val Asp Ser Val Lys  
1 5 10 15

<210> 3

<211> 17

<212> PRT

<213> Homo sapiens

<400> 3

Glu Ala Arg Gly Ser Tyr Ala Phe Asp Ile  
1 5 10

<210> 4

<211> 11

<212> PRT

<213> Homo sapiens

<400> 4

Arg Ala Ser Gln Gly Ile Ser Ser Trp Leu Ala  
1 5 10

<210> 5

<211> 7

<212> PRT

<213> Homo sapiens

<400> 5

Ala Ala Ser Ser Leu Gln Ser  
1 5

<210> 6

<211> 10  
<212> PRT  
<213> Homo sapiens  
<400> 6  
Gln Gln Arg Ser Asn Trp Pro Pro Phe Thr  
1 5 10

<210> 7  
<211> 115  
<212> PRT  
<213> Homo sapiens  
<400> 7  
Gln Val Gln Leu Val Glu Ser Gly Gly Val Val Gln Pro Gly Arg  
1 5 10 15

Ser Leu Arg Leu Ser Cys Ala Ala Ser Gly Phe Thr Phe Ser Ser Tyr  
20 25 30

Ala Met His Trp Val Arg Gln Ala Pro Gly Lys Gly Leu Glu Trp Val  
35 40 45

Ala Val Ile Ser Tyr Asp Gly Ser Asn Lys Tyr Tyr Ala Asp Ser Val  
50 55 60

Lys Gly Arg Phe Thr Ile Ser Arg Asp Asn Ser Lys Asn Thr Leu Tyr  
65 70 75 80

Leu Gln Met Asn Ser Leu Arg Ala Glu Asp Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys  
85 90 95

Ala Arg Asp Arg Gly Ile Ser Ala Gly Asn Tyr Tyr Tyr Gly  
100 105 110

Met Asp Val  
115

<210> 8  
<211> 109  
<212> PRT  
<213> Homo sapiens  
<400> 8  
Glu Ile Val Leu Thr Gln Ser Pro Ala Thr Leu Ser Leu Ser Pro Gly  
1 5 10 15

Glu Arg Ala Thr Leu Ser Cys Arg Ala Ser Gln Ser Val Ser Ser Tyr

20

25

30

Leu Ala Trp Tyr Gln Gln Lys Pro Gly Gln Ala Pro Arg Leu Leu Ile  
 35                          40                          45

Tyr Asp Ala Ser Asn Arg Ala Thr Gly Ile Pro Ala Arg Phe Ser Gly  
 50                          55                          60

Ser Gly Ser Gly Thr Asp Phe Thr Leu Thr Ile Ser Ser Leu Glu Pro  
 65                          70                          75                          80

Glu Asp Phe Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys Gln Gln Arg Ser Asn Trp Pro Pro  
 85                          90                          95

Phe Thr Phe Gly Pro Gly Thr Lys Val Asp Ile Lys  
 100                        105

&lt;210&gt; 9

&lt;211&gt; 157

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Homo sapiens

&lt;400&gt; 9

Val Arg Ser Ser Ser Arg Thr Pro Ser Asp Lys Pro Val Ala His Val  
 1                          5                          10                          15

Val Ala Asn Pro Gln Ala Glu Gly Gln Leu Gln Trp Leu Asn Arg Arg  
 20                        25                        30

Ala Asn Ala Leu Leu Ala Asn Gly Val Glu Leu Arg Asp Asn Gln Leu  
 35                        40                        45

Val Val Pro Ser Glu Gly Leu Tyr Leu Ile Tyr Ser Gln Val Leu Phe  
 50                        55                        60

Lys Gly Gln Gly Cys Pro Ser Thr His Val Leu Leu Thr His Thr Ile  
 65                        70                        75                        80

Ser Arg Ile Ala Val Ser Tyr Gln Thr Lys Val Asn Leu Leu Ser Ala  
 85                        90                        95

Ile Lys Ser Pro Cys Gln Arg Glu Thr Pro Glu Gly Ala Glu Ala Lys  
 100                      105                      110

Pro Trp Tyr Glu Pro Ile Tyr Leu Gly Gly Val Phe Gln Leu Glu Lys  
 115                      120                      125

Gly Asp Arg Leu Ser Ala Glu Ile Asn Arg Pro Asp Tyr Leu Asp Phe  
 130                      135                      140

Ala Glu Ser Gly Gln Val Tyr Phe Gly Ile Ile Ala Leu  
145                           150                           155

<210> 10  
<211> 15  
<212> DNA  
<213> Homo sapiens  
<400> 10  
agatatacta tgcac   15

<210> 11  
<211> 51  
<212> DNA  
<213> Homo sapiens  
<400> 11  
gttatatatcat ttgatggaag caataaatac tacgttagact ccgtgaaggg c       51

<210> 12  
<211> 51  
<212> DNA  
<213> Homo sapiens  
<400> 12  
gaggccccggg gatcgatgc ttttgatatc                                     30

<210> 13  
<211> 33  
<212> DNA  
<213> Homo sapiens  
<400> 13  
ctctcctgca gggccagtca gagtgtttagc agctacttag cc                     33

<210> 14  
<211> 21  
<212> DNA  
<213> Homo sapiens  
<400> 14  
gatgcattcca acagggcc                                     18

<210> 15  
<211> 30  
<212> DNA  
<213> Homo sapiens  
<400> 15  
cagcagcgta gcaactggcc t                                     21

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No  
PCT/US 01/24785

| A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER |           |           |            |           |
|-------------------------------------|-----------|-----------|------------|-----------|
| IPC 7                               | C12N15/13 | C07K16/24 | C12N15/79  | C12N5/10  |
|                                     | C07K16/42 | G01N33/50 | G01N33/577 | A61P37/00 |

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

**B. FIELDS SEARCHED**

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

IPC 7 C07K

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

BIOSIS, EMBASE, CHEM ABS Data, WPI Data, PAJ, EPO-Internal, SEQUENCE SEARCH

**C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT**

| Category | Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages   | Relevant to claim No. |
|----------|--|-----------------------|
| X        | WO 97 29131 A (BASF AG)<br>14 August 1997 (1997-08-14)<br>the whole document   | 1-101                 |
| X        | US 5 654 407 A (BOYLE ET AL.)<br>5 August 1997 (1997-08-05)<br>the whole document  | 1-101                 |
| X        | M. MENDEZ ET AL.: "Functional transplant<br>of megabase human immunoglobulin loci<br>recapitulates human antibody response in<br>mice."<br>NATURE GENETICS,<br>vol. 15, no. 2, February 1997 (1997-02),<br>pages 146-156, XP002067603<br>New York, NY, USA<br>the whole document | 1-101                 |

Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C.

Patent family members are listed in annex.

\* Special categories of cited documents :

- \*A\* document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance
- \*E\* earlier document but published on or after the International filing date
- \*L\* document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)
- \*O\* document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means
- \*P\* document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

\*T\* later document published after the International filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention

\*X\* document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone

\*Y\* document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.

\*&\* document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search

Date of mailing of the international search report

28 June 2002

05/07/2002

Name and mailing address of the ISA

European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2  
NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk  
Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 651 epo nl.  
Fax: (+31-70) 340-3016

Authorized officer

Nooij, F

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

|                 |                |
|-----------------|----------------|
| Int'l           | Application No |
| PCT/US 01/24785 |                |

| C.(Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT |   |                       |
|--|---|-----------------------|
| Category *   | Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages  | Relevant to claim No. |
| X  | WO 96 33735 A (CELL GENESYS INC.)<br>31 October 1996 (1996-10-31)<br>example 2<br>figure 4; table 2<br>claims<br>---  | 1-101                 |
| X  | S. STEPHENS ET AL.: "Comprehensive pharmacokinetics of a humanized antibody and analysis of residual anti-idiotypic responses."<br>IMMUNOLOGY,<br>vol. 85, no. 4, August 1995 (1995-08),<br>pages 668-674, XP000881488<br>Oxford, GB<br>abstract<br>discussion<br>---         | 1-101                 |
| X  | S. SIEGEL ET AL.: "The mouse/human chimeric monoclonal antibody cA2 neutralizes TNF in vitro and protects transgenic mice from cachexia and TNF lethality in vivo."<br>CYTOKINE,<br>vol. 7, no. 1, January 1995 (1995-01),<br>pages 15-25, XP000990566<br>abstract<br>---     | 1-80,101              |
| X  | E. RANKIN ET AL.: "The therapeutic effects of an engineered human anti-tumour necrosis factor alpha antibody (CDP571) in rheumatoid arthritis."<br>BRITISH JOURNAL OF RHEUMATOLOGY,<br>vol. 34, no. 4, April 1995 (1995-04),<br>pages 334-342, XP000674590<br>abstract<br>--- | 1-80,101              |
| X  | WO 91 09967 A (CELLTECH LTD.)<br>11 July 1991 (1991-07-11)<br>example 5<br>---  | 1-80,101              |
| X  | US 5 698 419 A (WOLPE ET AL.)<br>16 December 1997 (1997-12-16)<br>example<br>claims<br>---  | 1-80,101              |
| X  | EP 0 525 570 A (MILES INC.)<br>3 February 1993 (1993-02-03)<br>example<br>claims<br>---   | 11,31,<br>51,71       |

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.  
PCT/US 01/24785

## Box I Observations where certain claims were found unsearchable (Continuation of item 1 of first sheet)

This International Search Report has not been established in respect of certain claims under Article 17(2)(a) for the following reasons:

1.  Claims Nos.: because they relate to subject matter not required to be searched by this Authority, namely:  
see FURTHER INFORMATION sheet PCT/ISA/210
2.  Claims Nos.: because they relate to parts of the International Application that do not comply with the prescribed requirements to such an extent that no meaningful International Search can be carried out, specifically:
3.  Claims Nos.: because they are dependent claims and are not drafted in accordance with the second and third sentences of Rule 6.4(a).

## Box II Observations where unity of invention is lacking (Continuation of item 2 of first sheet)

This International Searching Authority found multiple inventions in this international application, as follows:

1.  As all required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this International Search Report covers all searchable claims.
2.  As all searchable claims could be searched without effort justifying an additional fee, this Authority did not invite payment of any additional fee.
3.  As only some of the required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this International Search Report covers only those claims for which fees were paid, specifically claims Nos.:
4.  No required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant. Consequently, this International Search Report is restricted to the invention first mentioned in the claims; it is covered by claims Nos.:

### Remark on Protest

- The additional search fees were accompanied by the applicant's protest.
- No protest accompanied the payment of additional search fees.

FURTHER INFORMATION CONTINUED FROM PCT/ISA/ 210

Continuation of Box I.1

Although claims 12-15, 32-35, 52-55, 72-75, 92-95 (all partially, as far as an *in vivo* method is concerned) are directed to a diagnostic method practised on the human/animal body or to a method of treatment of the human/animal body, the search has been carried out and based on the alleged effects of the compound/composition.

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

Inte.....rial Application No

PCT/US 01/24785

| Patent document cited in search report |   | Publication date | Patent family member(s)  | Publication date   |
|--|---|------------------|--|--|
| WO 9729131                             | A | 14-08-1997       | US 6090382 A<br>AU 722077 B2<br>AU 2122997 A<br>BG 102755 A<br>BR 9707379 A<br>CA 2243459 A1<br>CN 1215407 A<br>CZ 9802476 A3<br>EP 0929578 A1<br>HU 9901874 A2<br>JP 2000507810 T<br>NO 983627 A<br>NZ 331579 A<br>PL 328411 A1<br>SI 9720020 A ,B<br>SK 106298 A3<br>TR 9801532 T2<br>WO 9729131 A1<br>US 6258562 B1           | 18-07-2000<br>20-07-2000<br>28-08-1997<br>31-05-1999<br>13-04-1999<br>14-08-1997<br>28-04-1999<br>11-11-1998<br>21-07-1999<br>28-09-1999<br>27-06-2000<br>07-10-1998<br>29-06-2001<br>18-01-1999<br>31-10-1999<br>10-03-1999<br>23-11-1998<br>14-08-1997<br>10-07-2001               |
| US 5654407                             | A | 05-08-1997       | AT 204299 T<br>CA 2116888 A1<br>DE 69427928 D1<br>DE 69427928 T2<br>DK 614984 T3<br>EP 0614984 A2<br>ES 2159529 T3<br>JP 6319587 A<br>PT 614984 T  | 15-09-2001<br>06-09-1994<br>20-09-2001<br>29-11-2001<br>05-11-2001<br>14-09-1994<br>16-10-2001<br>22-11-1994<br>28-12-2001   |
| WO 9633735                             | A | 31-10-1996       | AU 5632296 A<br>CA 2219361 A1<br>EP 0822830 A1<br>JP 11505523 T<br>WO 9633735 A1<br>US 6075181 A<br>US 6150584 A   | 18-11-1996<br>31-10-1996<br>11-02-1998<br>21-05-1999<br>31-10-1996<br>13-06-2000<br>21-11-2000   |
| WO 9109967                             | A | 11-07-1991       | AT 129017 T<br>AT 124459 T<br>AT 159299 T<br>AT 208794 T<br>AU 664801 B2<br>AU 6461294 A<br>AU 646009 B2<br>AU 6974091 A<br>AU 649645 B2<br>AU 7033091 A<br>AU 631481 B2<br>AU 7048691 A<br>BG 60462 B1<br>BR 9007197 A<br>CA 2037607 A1<br>CA 2046904 A1<br>CA 2050479 A1<br>DE 69020544 D1<br>DE 69020544 T2<br>DE 69022982 D1 | 15-10-1995<br>15-07-1995<br>15-11-1997<br>15-11-2001<br>30-11-1995<br>22-12-1994<br>03-02-1994<br>24-07-1991<br>02-06-1994<br>24-07-1991<br>26-11-1992<br>24-07-1991<br>28-04-1995<br>28-01-1992<br>07-09-1992<br>22-06-1991<br>22-06-1991<br>03-08-1995<br>18-01-1996<br>16-11-1995 |

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

|    |                 |
|----|-----------------|
| In | Application No  |
|    | PCT/US 01/24785 |

| Patent document cited in search report | Publication date | Patent family member(s) | Publication date |
|--|------------------|-------------------------|------------------|
| WO 9109967                             | A                | DE 69022982 T2          | 28-03-1996       |
|  |                  | DE 69031591 D1          | 20-11-1997       |
|  |                  | DE 69031591 T2          | 12-03-1998       |
|  |                  | DE 69033857 D1          | 20-12-2001       |
|  |                  | DK 460167 T3            | 20-11-1995       |
|  |                  | DK 460171 T3            | 28-08-1995       |
|  |                  | DK 460178 T3            | 22-12-1997       |
|  |                  | DK 626390 T3            | 11-03-2002       |
|  |                  | EP 0460167 A1           | 11-12-1991       |
|  |                  | EP 0460171 A1           | 11-12-1991       |
|  |                  | EP 0460178 A1           | 11-12-1991       |
|  |                  | EP 0620276 A1           | 19-10-1994       |
|  |                  | EP 0626390 A1           | 30-11-1994       |
|  |                  | ES 2079638 T3           | 16-01-1996       |
|  |                  | ES 2074701 T3           | 16-09-1995       |
|  |                  | ES 2112270 T3           | 01-04-1998       |
|  |                  | ES 2165864 T3           | 01-04-2002       |
|  |                  | FI 108777 B1            | 28-03-2002       |
|  |                  | FI 108776 B1            | 28-03-2002       |
|  |                  | FI 108917 B1            | 30-04-2002       |
|  |                  | FI 990875 A             | 19-04-1999       |
|  |                  | WO 9109966 A1           | 11-07-1991       |
|  |                  | WO 9109967 A1           | 11-07-1991       |
|  |                  | WO 9109968 A1           | 11-07-1991       |
|  |                  | GB 2246781 A ,B         | 12-02-1992       |
|  |                  | GB 2246570 A ,B         | 05-02-1992       |
|  |                  | GB 2268744 A ,B         | 19-01-1994       |
|  |                  | GB 2268745 A ,B         | 19-01-1994       |
|  |                  | GR 3017734 T3           | 31-01-1996       |
|  |                  | GR 3025781 T3           | 31-03-1998       |
| US 5698419                             | A 16-12-1997     | US 5700466 A            | 23-12-1997       |
|  |                  | US 4603106 A            | 29-07-1986       |
|  |                  | AT 114673 T             | 15-12-1994       |
|  |                  | AU 6151186 A            | 19-02-1987       |
|  |                  | AU 649019 B2            | 12-05-1994       |
|  |                  | AU 7262691 A            | 30-05-1991       |
|  |                  | DE 3650150 D1           | 12-01-1995       |
|  |                  | DE 3650150 T2           | 27-04-1995       |
|  |                  | EP 0212489 A2           | 04-03-1987       |
|  |                  | EP 0613006 A1           | 31-08-1994       |
|  |                  | JP 2506340 B2           | 12-06-1996       |
|  |                  | JP 62116599 A           | 28-05-1987       |
|  |                  | US 5650147 A            | 22-07-1997       |
|  |                  | US 5616688 A            | 01-04-1997       |
|  |                  | US 5703206 A            | 30-12-1997       |
|  |                  | US 5989836 A            | 23-11-1999       |
|  |                  | US 6019969 A            | 01-02-2000       |
|  |                  | US 5863535 A            | 26-01-1999       |
|  |                  | US 5942222 A            | 24-08-1999       |
|  |                  | US 6046309 A            | 04-04-2000       |
|  |                  | US 5760186 A            | 02-06-1998       |
|  |                  | US 5817763 A            | 06-10-1998       |
|  |                  | US 5145676 A            | 08-09-1992       |
|  |                  | US 6309640 B1           | 30-10-2001       |
|  |                  | US 5849873 A            | 15-12-1998       |
|  |                  | US 5741484 A            | 21-04-1998       |
|  |                  | US 4822776 A            | 18-04-1989       |

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

| Int'l Application No                   | Information on patent family members |                  |   |  |
|--|--------------------------------------|------------------|---|--|
| Patent document cited in search report |                                      | Publication date | Patent family member(s)   | Publication date   |
| US 5698419                             | A                                    |                  | AT 115411 T<br>AU 560087 B2<br>AU 8990282 A<br>CA 1208546 A1<br>DE 3280462 D1<br>DE 3280462 T2<br>EP 0101681 A1<br>EP 0609722 A1<br>JP 11228445 A<br>JP 9291042 A<br>JP 58501544 T<br>WO 8300930 A1 | 15-12-1994<br>26-03-1987<br>28-03-1983<br>29-07-1986<br>26-01-1995<br>20-04-1995<br>07-03-1984<br>10-08-1994<br>24-08-1999<br>11-11-1997<br>16-09-1983<br>17-03-1983 |
| EP 525570                              | A                                    | 03-02-1993       | CA 2074662 A1<br>EP 0525570 A2<br>JP 5301900 A  | 01-02-1993<br>03-02-1993<br>16-11-1993   |

This Page Blank (uspto)